This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

ents of Histology

LANE MEDICAL LIBRARY STANFORD
E555 .K64 1898 STOR
Elements of histology / by E. Klein and
24503383224

E. Klein, M.D., F.R.S.

LANE

MEDICAL LIBRARY

SEAL OF THE LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY
SEMPER VIRENS
1885

LEVI COOPER LANE FUND

NG J. PENTLAN
SMITHFIELD LONDON, E.

MANUALS

FOR

STUDENTS OF MEDICINE

LA BELLE SAUVAGE

ELEMENTS
OF
HISTOLOGY

BY

E. KLEIN, M.D., F.R.S.
LECTURER ON GENERAL ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY

AND

J. S. EDKINS, M.A., M.B.
JOINT LECTURER AND DEMONSTRATOR OF PHYSIOLOGY IN THE MEDICAL SCHOOL OF ST. BARTHOLOMEW'S HOSPITAL, LONDON

WITH 296 ILLUSTRATIONS

REVISED AND ENLARGED EDITION

CASSELL AND COMPANY, LIMITED
LONDON, PARIS, NEW YORK & MELBOURNE
1898
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

First Edition *April* 1883.
Reprinted July 1883, *January* 1884, *August* 1884,
1885, 1887, *New Edition March* 1889, *Reprinted October* 1889, 1891, 1892
1893, 1895, *New and Enlarged Edition* 1898.

76T
1898

𝔗𝔬 𝔱𝔥𝔢 𝔐𝔢𝔪𝔬𝔯𝔶

OF

SIR WILLIAM BOWMAN, LL.D., F.R.S.,

THIS BOOK IS DEDICATED,

IN ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF HIS MANY AND GREAT DISCOVERIES

IN ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY.

74940

PREFACE TO THE REVISED AND ENLARGED EDITION.

SINCE the last edition of this book in 1889, considerable additions have been made to the knowledge of minute structural anatomy. The progress in the knowledge of the structure and life of the cell and nucleus, the remarkable discoveries in the structure of the central nervous system and sense organs —introduced by the method of Golgi, and followed up by the brilliant work of Ramón y Cajal, Kölliker, Lenhossek, Retzius, and others—have made it necessary to revise and to make considerable additions to the chapters dealing with these organs. While care has been taken to correct and amplify other parts of the book, the chapters on the central nervous system have been practically rewritten.

The task of rewriting and re-editing the chapters on the brain and medulla and on the alimentary canal has devolved upon my colleague Dr. Edkins, who is now associated with me as joint-author.

While a large number of the illustrations of the former edition have been retained, a considerable number has been added; these are either original photograms prepared by Mr. Norman from Dr. Edkins's and my own specimens, or they are copied from Kölliker's "Handbuch," from Ramón y Cajal, from Schäfer (Quain's "Anatomy"), from Halliburton (Kirke's "Physiology"), and from Klein and Noble Smith's "Atlas of Histology." To our colleague Dr. Tooth our special thanks are due for the loan of some of the lantern slides illustrating the medulla.

E. KLEIN.

ST. BARTHOLOMEW'S HOSPITAL,
LONDON.—1898.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER PAGE

I.—Cells 1

II.—Blood 19

III.—Epithelium 30

IV.—Endothelium 40

V.—Fibrous Connective Tissues 46

VI.—Cartilage 63

VII.—Bone 68

VIII.—Non-striped Muscular Tissue 86

IX.—Striped Muscular Tissue 90

X.—The Heart and Blood-Vessels 105

XI.—The Lymphatic Vessels 117

XII.—Follicles or Simple Lymph Glands 126

XIII.—Compound Lymphatic Glands 134

XIV.—Nerve Fibres 140

XV.—Peripheral Nerve-Endings 155

XVI.—The Spinal Cord 170

XVII.—The Medulla Oblongata or Spinal Bulb 202

XVIII.—Continuation of the Medulla Oblongata through the Pons Varolii and the Region of the Crura . . 216

XIX.—The Cerebrum and Cerebellum 235

XX.—The Cerebro-Spinal Ganglia 253

XXI.—The Sympathetic System 258

XXII.—General Considerations as to the Anatomical Constitution and Nature of the Nervous System . 268

XXIII.—The Teeth 275

XXIV.—The Salivary Glands 286

XXV.—The Mouth, Pharynx, and Tongue 298

XXVI.—The Œsophagus and Stomach 307

CHAPTER PAGE

XXVII.—The Small and Large Intestine 317
XXVIII.—The Glands of Brunner and the Pancreas . . 328
XXIX.—The Liver 333
XXX.—The Organs of Respiration 339
XXXI.—The Spleen 351
XXXII.—The Kidney, Ureter and Bladder . . . 356
XXXIII.—The Male Genital Organs 372
XXXIV.—The Female Genital Organs 386
XXXV.—The Mammary Gland 400
XXXVI.—The Skin 404
XXXVII.—The Conjunctiva and its Glands 424
XXXVIII.—Cornea, Sclerotic, Ligamentum Pectinatum and Ciliary Muscle 429
XXXIX.—Iris, Ciliary Processes and Choroid . . . 436
XL.—The Lens and Vitreous Body 442
XLI.—The Retina 445
XLII.—The Outer and Middle Ear 458
XLIII.—The Internal Ear 460
XLIV.—The Nasal Mucous Membrane 475
XLV.—The Ductless Glands 484

ELEMENTS OF HISTOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

CELLS.

1. The ripe **ovum** (Fig. 1) of man and mammals is a minute spherical mass of a soft, gelatinous, transparent, granular-looking substance, containing numerous minute particles—yolk globules. It is invested by a radially striated delicate membrane called the zona pellucida. Inside this mass, and situated more or less excentrically, is a vesicle—the *germinal vesicle* — and inside this, one or more solid spots — the *germinal spot or spots.* The gelatinous transparent substance of the ovum, containing a very large percentage of proteid material, is called *protoplasm.* Before and immediately after fertilisation, the protoplasm of the ovum shows distinct movement, consisting in contraction and expansion. These movements are spontaneous—*i.e.* not caused by any directly visible external influence.

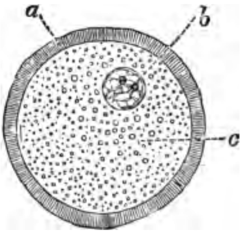


Fig. 1.—Ripe Ovum of Cat.
a, Zona pellucida; *b*, germinal vesicle; *c*, protoplasm.

The diameter of the ripe ovum in man and domestic animals varies between $\frac{1}{200}$ and $\frac{1}{120}$ of an inch. But before it ripens the ovum is considerably smaller—in fact, its size is in proportion to its state of development.

2. **Fertilisation** causes marked changes in the contractions of the protoplasm of the ovum; these lead to *cleavage* or *division* of its body into two parts, the germinal vesicle having previously split up into two bodies or nuclei; so that we now find the ovum has originated two new elements, each of which consists of protoplasm, of the same substance as that of the original ovum, and each contains one nucleus or kernel. The investment of the ovum takes no

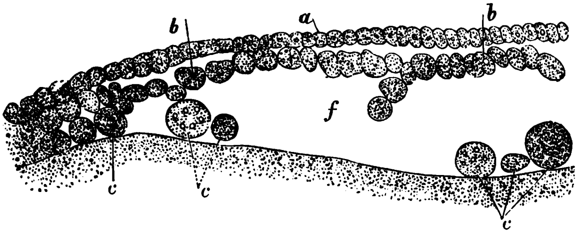


Fig. 2.—From a Section through the Blastoderm of Chick, unincubated. *a*, Cells forming the ectoderm; *b*, cells forming the endoderm; *c*, large formative cells; *f*, segmentation cavity. (*Handbook.*)

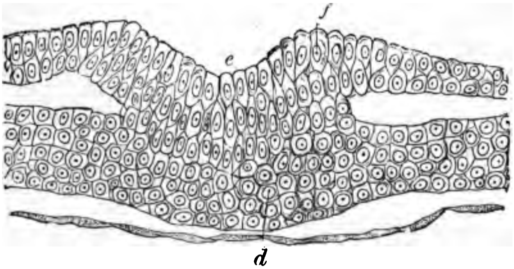


Fig. 3.—From a Section through the Rudiment of the Embryo Chick. *e*, Primitive groove; *f*, dorsal laminæ of epiblast; *d*, mesoblast. The thin layer of spindle-shaped cells is the hypoblast. (*Handbook.*)

part in this process of division. Not long afterwards, each of the two daughter elements undergoes cleavage or division into two new elements, the nucleus having previously divided into two, so that each new offspring possesses its own nucleus. This process of division is continued in the same manner for

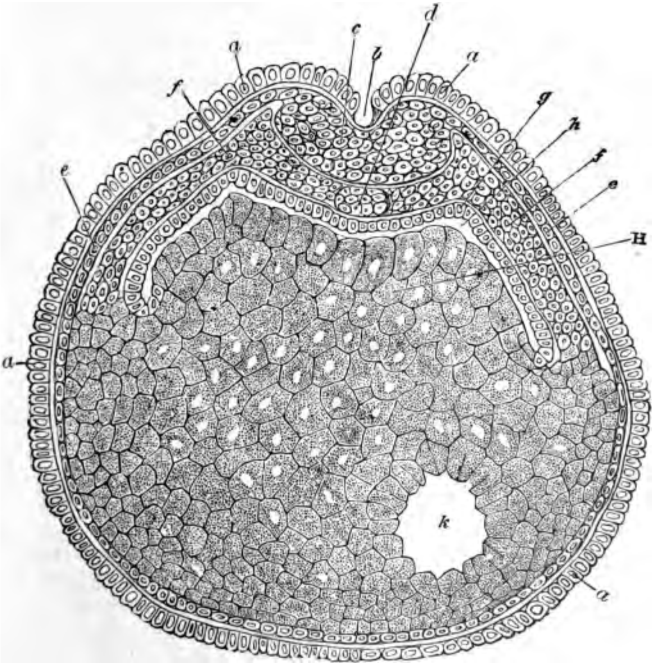


Fig. 4.—Vertical Section through the Ovum of Bufo Cinereus, in the early stage of the Embryo Development.

a, Tegmental layer of epiblast; *b*, dorsal groove; *c*, rudiment of central nervous system; *d*, notochord; *e*, deep layer of epiblast; *f*, mesoblast; *g*, hypoblast; *h*, cavity of alimentary canal—Rusconi's cavity; H, central yolk; *k*, remainder of von Baer's or segmentation cavity. (*Handbook.*)

many generations (Figs. 2, 3, 4), so that after a few days we find within the original investment of the ovum a large number of minute elements, each consisting of protoplasm, and each containing a nucleus.

3. From these elements, which become smaller as the process of cleavage progresses, all parts and organs of the embryo and its membranes are formed. It can be easily shown that the individual elements possess the power of contractility. Either spontaneously or under the influence of moderate heat, electricity, mechanical or chemical stimulation, they throw out processes and withdraw them again, their substance flowing slowly but perceptibly along. Hence they can change their position. In this respect they completely resemble those lowest organisms which are known as amœbæ, each of these being likewise a nucleated mass of protoplasm. Wherefore this movement is termed *amœboid movement.* It can be further shown that they, like amœbæ, grow in size and divide —that is to say, the individuals of a generation grow in size before each gives rise to two new daughter individuals.

4. Although for some time during embryonic life the elements constituting the organs of the embryo are possessed of these characters, a time arrives when only a limited number of them retain the power of contractility in any marked degree. At birth only the white corpuscles of the blood and lymph, many of the elements of the lymphatic organs, and the muscular tissues, possess this power; while the others lose it, or at any rate do not show it except when dividing into two new elements. Some of these elements retain their protoplasmic basis; as a rule, each contains one nucleus (but some two or more), and is capable of giving origin by division to a new generation. Others, however, change their nature altogether,

their protoplasm and nucleus disappear, and they give origin to material other than protoplasm—*e.g.* collagenous, osseous, elastic, and other substances. As development proceeds, and after birth of the fœtus, different cells assume different functions, which for each kind are of a special character and constitute its *specific character* or its *specific function.*

5. Beginning with the ovum, and ending with the protoplasmic nucleated elements found constituting the organs and tissues of the embryo and adult, we have, then, one uninterrupted series of generations of elements, which with Schwann we call *cells* and with Brücke *elementary organisms.* Of these it can be said that not only is each of them derived from a cell (Virchow: *omnis cellula a cellula*), but each consists of the protoplasm of Max Schultze (sarcode of Dujardin), is without any investing membrane, and includes generally one nucleus, but may contain two or more. We can further say that each of these cells shows the phenomenon of growth, which presupposes nutrition and reproduction. All of them in an early stage of their life-history, and some of them throughout it, show the phenomenon of contractility, or amœboid movement (Fig. 5).

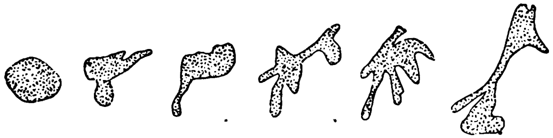


Fig. 5.—Amœboid movement of a White Blood Corpuscle of Man; various phases of movement. (*Handbook.*)

In a recent work, and following the procedure of v. Sachs on the life and activity of vegetable cells, v. Kölliker systematises and summarises those of animal cells thus: The *protoplasm* and nucleus constituting a vegetable cell is called by v. Sachs an *energid;* in the animal body it is represented by a nucleated protoplasmic cell without a cellulose membrane, and is called by v. Kölliker a *protoblast* (germinal matter of Beale). All protoblasts, as also all energids, are always derived from parent protoblasts; they always propagate by division, and in this manner carry on the race from generation to generation; they are the instruments of heredity.

All growth of the protoblasts takes place by internal processes—that is, by intussusception.

The active work of protoblasts consists in: (*a*) formation of the typical organs; (*b*) special movements of the protoplasm—*e.g.* amœboid movement; (*c*) the formation of *alloplasmatic organs* (A. Meyer). These latter are derived from the living protoplasm, are organised, and are participating themselves in the living functions, but they are not capable of multiplication by division. Such alloplasmatic organs are: cilia, muscular fibres, nerve cells and nerve fibres, and the terminal cells in the sense organs. (*d*) The production of passive, partly non-organised, *ergastic structures* (A. Meyer), or *formed matter* (L. Beale); such are the cellulose membranes of vegetable cells, cuticular formations, fluids, and intercellular and other substances (collagenous, chondrinous, osseous, elastic, dental, etc.), cell-juices and granules of all kinds.

Cells differ in shape according to kind, locality, and function, being spherical, irregular, polygonal, squamous, branched, spindle-shaped, cylindrical, prismatic, or conical. These various shapes will be more fully described when dealing in detail with the various kinds of cells. Cells in man and mammals differ in size within considerable limits: from the size of a small white blood corpuscle of about $\frac{1}{2500}$ of an inch *to that of a large* ganglion cell in the anterior horns of the spinal cord of about $\frac{1}{200}$ of an inch, or to that of multinucleated cells of the bone marrow—myeloplax—some of which surpass in size even the ganglion cells. The same holds good of the nucleus. Between the nucleus of a ganglion cell of about $\frac{1}{800}$ to $\frac{1}{1200}$ of an inch in diameter and the nucleus of a white blood corpuscle of about $\frac{1}{5000}$ to $\frac{1}{10000}$ of an inch and less there are all intermediate sizes.

6. **Protoplasm** or **cytoplasm** is a transparent homogeneous or granular-looking substance. On very careful examination with good and high powers, and especially when examined with certain reagents, in many, but not in all, instances it shows a more or less definite structure (Fig. 6), composed of fibrils, more or less regular, and in some instances grouped into a *honeycombed reticulum*, *spongioplasm*, in the meshes of which is a homogeneous substance, *hyaloplasm* (Leydig). The closer the meshes of the reticulum, the less there is of this interstitial substance, and the more regularly granular does the reticulum appear. In the meshes of the reticulum, however, may be included larger or smaller granules of fat, pigment, or other material. Water makes protoplasm swell up and ultimately this becomes disintegrated ; so also act dilute acids and alkalies. All substances that coagulate proteids have the same effect on protoplasm.

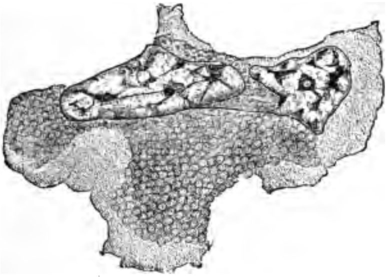


Fig. 6.—Amœboid pale leucocyte of the newt, showing the nuclei embedded in the cell protoplasm—this latter consisting of spongioplasm and hyaloplasm. (*After Schäfer.*)

In arrangement of its elements the spongioplasm differs in different cells; while in some—*e.g.* spheroidal or cubical epithelial cells—it is as a rule uniform; in columnar cells it is elongated in the direction of the long axis of the cell, hence the reticulum appears as an eminently longitudinally fibrillated substance; in ganglion cells it is concentrically arranged. In some cells in the outer portion the spongioplasm possesses a different arrangement from that in the middle portion, and then a division is made between *ectoplasm* and *endoplasm* (Fig. 7). The hyaloplasm differs in amount in different cells, and in the same kind of cells it varies according to different states of cell activity. Thus in gland cells during activity the amount of hyaloplasm is increased, containing in these instances more or less of granular matter.

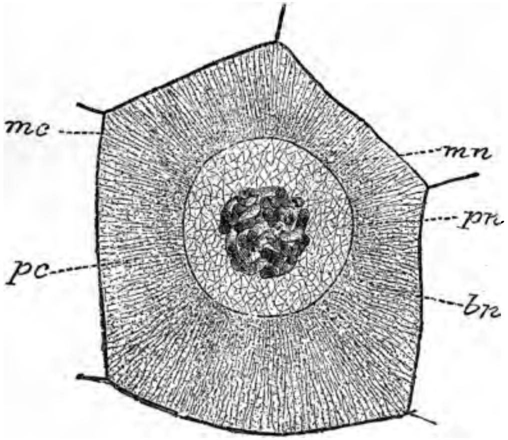


Fig. 7.—Cell with radially disposed reticulum from the intestinal epithelium of a worm. (*After Carnoy, from Quain's "Anatomy."*)

mc, Cell membrane; *pc*, cell protoplasm; *mn*, nuclear membrane; *pn*, nuclear achromatin surrounding the convoluted chromatin filaments *bn*.

In amœboid cells, such as the white corpuscles of the blood, the hyaloplasm is the substance in which the spontaneous or amœboid changes and movement are principally lodged, as has been shown by instantaneous electric illumination by Stricker.

In the protoplasm of many cells are lodged granules of various kinds, *microsomes ;* they differ in size, shape, colour, and chemical nature, and are, as a rule, the result of cell activity. Such are the zymogen granules in secreting gland cells ; eosinophile, basophile, and neutrophile or amphophile granules in leucocytes ; glycogen granules in the liver cells, cartilage cells, and leucocytes ; pigment granules in various kinds of pigmented cells ; fat granules and fat globules in wandering cells, in connective-tissue cells, in liver cells, in the epithelial cells of the milk gland, etc. It is not justifiable to assume with Altmann that these microsomes or *bioblasts* are living entities in the sense that the whole cell is.

In the cell protoplasm of leucocytes, of epithelial and other cells, certain granules and fibrils have been described by Flemming, Boveri, Heidenhain, and others, which being of a constant and definite nature play an important part in the division of the cell and its nucleus. This is the *centrosome*, and with its radiating fibrillæ forms the *attractionsphere* (Fig. 8). The *centrosome* is a granule surrounded by a hyaline

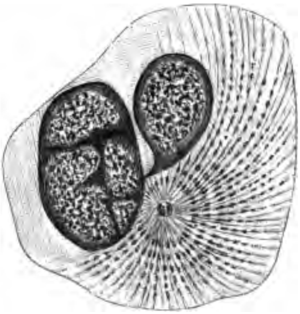


Fig. 8.—Leucocyte of Salamandra containing two nuclei, and showing the attractionsphere : the centrosome is already divided into two. (*After Dr. Martin Heidenhain.*)

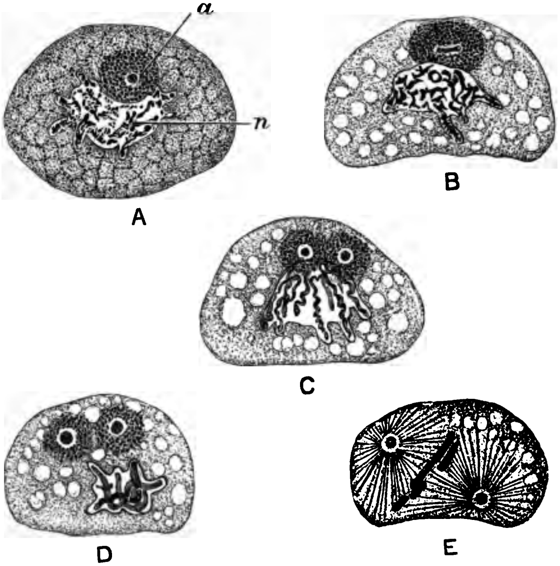


Fig. 9.—Blastomeres of Bi-segmented Ovum of Ascaris megalocephala (*After Boveri, from Kölliker, I.*)

A: *a*, Attractionsphere; *n*, nucleus in resting state; B: nucleus in stage of convolution: C, attractionsphere nearly divided; D, attractionsphere divided; E, attractionspheres arranged at the poles, chromosomes forming the equatorial plate.

spherical space; through this pass the fibrillæ radiating from the former, and connect it with the spongioplasm of the cell body. The whole—*i.e* centrosome and radiating fibrillæ—represents the attractionsphere. Preceding the division of the cell nucleus, the centrosome divides into two, each daughter centrosome, with its own hyaline areola and system of radiating fibrillæ, forming *by-and-*by a separate attractionsphere, which migrating towards opposite poles of the cell-body become separate points of attraction for the divided nuclear mitoma. (*See* division of nucleus.) So that the division of the attractionsphere would be the first, the division of the nucleus the second, and the division of the cell protoplasm the third and final stage in the division of a cell (Fig. 9).

7. The **nucleus**, the size of which is generally in proportion to that of the cell, is usually spherical or oval. It is composed of a more or less distinct investing cuticle and the nuclear contents; the former is the *membrane*, the latter the nuclear substance, *karyoplasm*, or nucleoplasm. This, again, is composed, in adult nuclei, of a *stroma* or network, *mitoma*, and the *inter-fibrillar substance.* The network consists of fibrils of various thickness, and trabeculæ or septa more or less irregular in thickness and length. Intimately connected with and lodged in the network are angular or rounded masses called *nucleoli.* The number and size of these vary considerably; in young nuclei they may be large and numerous, in adult or resting nuclei they are few, and in those about to divide they are altogether absent. Also the network is subject to great variation: while in adult or resting nuclei, and particularly those about to divide, the network is of great uniformity and well developed; it may be very imperfect in young nuclei, in which it is sometimes represented by a number of irregular masses joined by short bridges. The more perfect the nuclear network, the fewer are the nucleoli. Owing to the ready manner in which the fibrils of the nuclear network, *i.e.* the mitoma, take up certain dyes, their substance is called *chromatin*, and the fibrils are the *chromosomes;* while the inter-fibrillar substance not possessed of this character is called *achromatin.* Occasionally, also, the achromatin appears composed of fibrils, and these are then called

secondary fibrils, as distinct from the chromosomes or primary fibrils. Rabl and with him Heidenhain maintain, however, that the achromatin in typical adult nuclei is always composed of fine fibrils, and that both the chromatin and achromatin fibrils possess a definite unipolar arrangement and convergence, while Carnoy and van Gehuchten assume a bipolar arrangement. But this distinction holds good only for adult nuclei; in young nuclei the whole nuclear contents may possess this affinity for the same dyes, and in this case the whole nucleus becomes uniformly stained. The nuclear membrane is a condensed outer stratum of the nuclear network. At the commencement of the division of the nucleus the membrane disappears.

In some instances it can be shown that the nuclear fibrils are in continuity with the fibrils of the cell substance. In the moving white blood corpuscles Stricker and Unger have seen the nucleus becoming one with the cell substance, and again afterwards differentiated by the appearance of a membrane.

8. During **division** of the cell the nucleus generally divides before the cell protoplasm. This division of the nucleus was formerly supposed to occur in the same manner as that of the cell protoplasm—*i.e.* by simple cleavage. This mode is called the direct or *amitotic* division, or Remak's mode of division. In this division the nucleus is supposed to become constricted, kidney-shaped and hourglass-shaped and, if the division is into more than two, lobed. Nuclei of these shapes are not uncommon; but they need not necessarily indicate direct division, because, being very soft structures, pressure exerted from outside, or the motion of the cell protoplasm, may produce these shapes; and, further, the contractility of the nucleus may, and occasionally has been *observed* to, cause these changes of shape. From the

observations of Schneider, Bütschli, Fohl, Strassburger, Mayzel, van Beneden, Schleicher, Flemming, Rabl, and others, it is known that in the embryo and adult, in vertebrates and invertebrates, in all kinds of cells, both in the normal as well as morbid condition, the division of the cell protoplasm is preceded by complex changes of the nuclear mitoma, leading to the division of the nucleus (Fig. 10). The sum-total of these changes is called indirect division, karyokinesis (Schleicher) or karyomitosis* (Flemming). Where this process occurs in its complete and typical form, the mitoma passes through the following phases (Flemming, Rabl):—

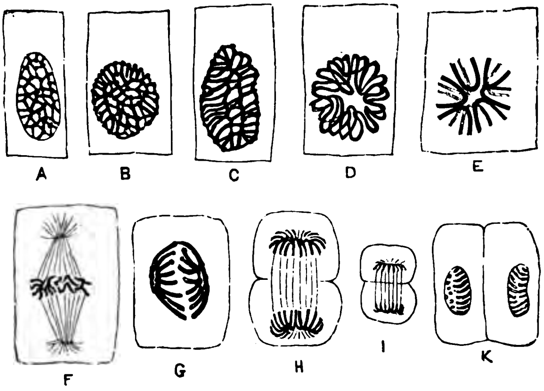


Fig. 10.—Karyomitosis.

A, Ordinary nucleus of a columnar epithelial cell: B, C, the same nucleus in the stage of convolution; D, the wreath, or rosette form; E, the aster, or single star; F, a nuclear spindle from the Descemet's endothelium of the frog's cornea; G, H, I, diaster; K, two daughter nuclei.

i.—*Convolution* or *spireme* or *skein*; disappearance of the nucleoli, increase of the fibrils constituting the chromatic substance, at the same time the fibrils become free, as it were, and bent and twisted at first into a dense, afterwards into a loose convolution. The fibrils of the loose convolution are thicker than before, less twisted, and more like masses of loops. These latter by cross division along the periphery of the mass increase in number, and thereby are converted into simple loops, arranged more or less like a wreath or rosette. The whole nucleus is larger than before, its membrane has disappeared, and it is surrounded by a more or less clear halo of cell protoplasm (Fig. 11).

---

* Schleicher noticed that the fibrils during this process show movement; hence the name Karyokinesis. Mitosis indicates the grouping and changes of the fibrils (μίτος = fibril).

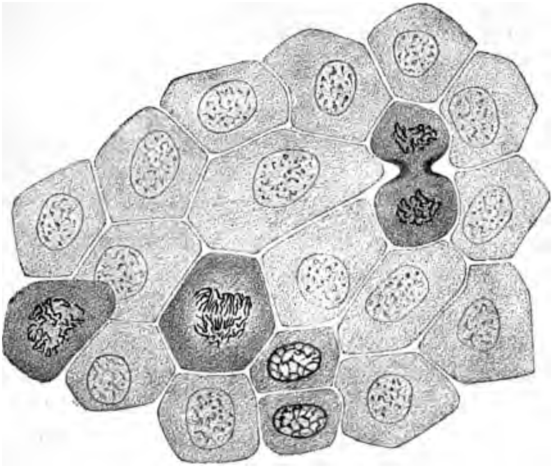


Fig. 11.—Epithelium of mouth of embryo salamander, showing nuclei in various stages of karyomitosis (*Flemming*).

ii.—Longitudinal division of the loops, each loop giving origin to a pair of *sister loops;* the whole, viewed from the surface, looks like a star of numerous fine fibrils, joined centrally so as to form single loops.

iii.—The *nuclear spindle*, a spindle-shaped arrangement of fine threads of (possibly) achromatin extending between two opposite points of the cell protoplasm; these points are the *poles*, and the transverse line midway between them—*i.e.* at the broadest part of the spindle—is called the *equator*. At each pole the threads of the spindle are connected with a granule of the cell protoplasm, the pole corpuscle or *centrosome*, mentioned on a previous page; from the centrosome radiate numerous fine fibrillæ, connecting the centrosome or pole corpuscle with the cell protoplasm, thus forming "*the suns*" or *attraction-spheres*, one at each pole (van Beneden).

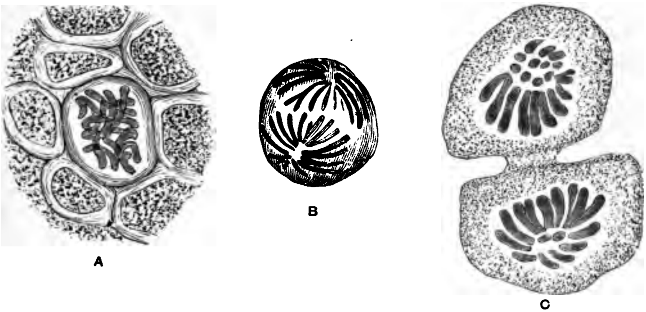


Fig. 12.—Karyomitosis. (*After Kölliker.*)

A, Spireme; B, diaster; C, the nucleus has divided, the protoplasm of the cell in the act of dividing.

The above-named sister loops so arrange themselves about the equator of the spindle as to form a star—the *mother-star*, *monaster*, or *aster*. In this arrangement the vertex of the loops is directed inwards, the open limbs outwards. Seen in profile the aster would appear like a narrow granular-looking plate of chromosomes—the *nuclear plate*.

iv.—*Metakinesis*: Of each pair of sister loops forming the aster one loop is attracted by—i.e. migrates towards one, the other towards the other pole of the spindle: that is, towards the attractionspheres, the vertex of the loops always leading.

v.—*Diaster :* arrived at the pole, the loops form again an aster or daughter star for each pole (Fig. 12).

vi.—*Dispireme :* the threads of each star become convoluted.

Now follows usually the division of the cell protoplasm in the line of the equator of the spindle.

vii.—In the last phase all traces of the spindle are lost; a membrane appears around each of the two new nuclei, and the threads of the dispireme become branched and connected into a network.

From the foregoing it is clear that during division an intimate fusion between cell protoplasm and nucleus takes place : (*a*) by the fusion of the nuclear interstitial substance with the cell protoplasm after the disappearance of the nuclear membrane ; and (*b*) by the connection of the nuclear spindle with the centrosomes and attractionspheres, the fibrils of the latter being part of the cell protoplasm.

It ought to be mentioned, however, that some histologists do not regard the fibrils of the nuclear spindle as part of and derived from the original nuclear substance (achromatin). Boveri regards the fibrils of the spindle as derived from the cell protoplasm and as forming part of the attractionspheres —*i.e.* those fibrils which remain connecting the two attractionspheres, and which finally, after the nuclear division has been completed, by their transverse division, mark off and initiate the final stage—that is, the division of the cell body.

While these various details and phases in the changes and division of the centrosome and attractionsphere are well enough marked in the ovum, as is also their relation to the chromosomes of the dividing ovum nucleus, it is not sufficiently established that the above are of general occurrence in the division of adult cells; the attractionsphere and its division have been observed only in a few such instances—*e.g.* in the leucocytes of salamander and man.

In some cases the process of karyomitosis has been found to be atypical, inasmuch as some of the above phases are left out, as it were; while in other cases the nuclear division takes place already during the earlier phases—*e.g.* in the phase of the spireme. When the nucleus divides into two or three or more nuclei without the cell protoplasm also undergoing division, a cell with two, three, or more nuclei is the result.

Multiplication of the nucleus by budding and direct fission has also been observed, but it is quite possible that this process is only as a sort of imperfect and abnormal karyomitosis.

This mode probably plays a more important part than the typical karyomitosis, whenever rapid multiplication and reproduction are necessary. Thus, for instance, while in the epithelium cells covering the anterior surface of the normal cornea of the newt and frog here and there a nucleus can be seen which shows the process of typical karyomitosis, such forms cannot be found in cases of rapid regeneration of that epithelium. For example, after removing the whole thickness of the anterior epithelium from the middle part of the cornea, rapid multiplication of the epithelium cells takes place, starting from those immediately around the defect; in consequence of this, in two or three days the defect becomes again quite covered with the new epithelium. Now, examining the epithelium cells at the margin of the defect, as well as those gradually pushed over and covering the defect, none of the nuclei are found in any of the phases of typical karyomitosis; while a few days later, after the defect is covered by the new epithelium, there is no difficulty in finding nuclei in one or another phase of the typical karyomitosis.

Paranuclei and cell enclosures.—It was mentioned above that cells may and do include in their protoplasm formed substances like granules of various kinds, fat globules, pigment, etc.; but in addition to these, and distinct from the attraction-spheres mentioned on a former page, occasionally the cell substance includes corpuscles of an altogether different nature. These corpuscles, in size and staining power, resemble the cell nucleus or parts thereof, and as a matter of fact are derived from the cell nucleus. Balbiani has called such bodies in the ovum cell *paranuclei*, and Grützner has applied the same term to those that occur in the gland cells of the pancreas. Now it is a fact that preceding the segmentation of the ovum, and preceding the fusion of the sperm- and ovum-pronucleus, part of this latter is eliminated, and the same occasionally is observed to take place in other cells prior to the division of the nucleus, as also under various pathological conditions. The eliminated body or bodies, known as polar bodies, are part of the original nuclear substance, principally the chromatin. The paranucleus is as a rule smaller than the cell nucleus, lies close to this, and has similar affinity to the dyes which stain the nucleus itself.

CHAPTER II.

BLOOD.

9. UNDER the microscope blood appears as a transparent fluid, the *liquor sanguinis* or *plasma*, in which float vast numbers of formed bodies, the *blood corpuscles.* The great majority of these are coloured; a few of them are colourless. The latter are called *white* or *colourless blood corpuscles*, or *leucocytes;* the former are called *red* or *coloured blood corpuscles*, or blood-discs. They appear red only when seen in a thick layer; when in a single layer they appear of a yellow-greenish colour, more yellow if of arterial, more green if of venous, blood. The proportions of plasma and blood corpuscles are sixty-four of the former and thirty-six of the latter in one hundred volumes of blood. By measurement it has been found that there are a little over five millions of blood corpuscles in each cubic millimètre ($\frac{1}{15625}$ of a cubic inch) of human blood. There appears to be in healthy human blood, on an average, one white corpuscle for 600-1200 red ones. In man and mammals the relative number of blood corpuscles is greater than in birds, and in birds greater than in lower vertebrates.

The number of red, and also of white, corpuscles is subject to variation, both in health and disease. After profuse hæmorrhage, the number of red corpuscles is temporarily greatly reduced, but in a short time, it may be even in twenty-four to forty-eight hours, they may approach again the normal number;

in constitutional chronic diseases the number of red corpuscles is, as a rule, decreased; so also in anæmia, spontaneous or following acute infectious diseases, fevers, etc. The number of white corpuscles is always greater after a copious meal than during fasting. Certain diseases are associated with a decrease, others with an increase, of the white corpuscles of the circulating blood; the decrease when pronounced is spoken of as *leucopenia*, the increase as *leucocythœmia*, *leucœmia*, or *leucocytosis.*

10. The **red blood corpuscles** (Fig. 13) of man and mammals are homogeneous bi-concave discs (except in the camelidæ, where they are elliptical), and do not possess any surrounding membrane or nucleus. Being bi-concave in shape, they are thinner and more transparent in the centre than at the periphery. In other vertebrates they are oval, and more or less flattened from side to side, and each possesses a central oval nucleus.

The diameter of the human red blood corpuscle is about $\frac{1}{3000}$ of an inch in breadth, *i.e.* about 7·8 μ, and its thickness about $\frac{1}{12000}$ of an inch. But there are always corpuscles present which are much smaller by about one-third to one-half than the others—*microcytes.* In normal blood these microcytes are scarce; but in certain abnormal conditions, especially in pernicious anæmia, they are conspicuous by their number.

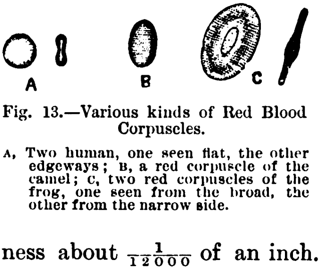


Fig. 13.—Various kinds of Red Blood Corpuscles.

A, Two human, one seen flat, the other edgeways; B, a red corpuscle of the camel; C, two red corpuscles of the frog, one seen from the broad, the other from the narrow side.

According to Gulliver, Welcker, and others, the following are the average diameters of the red blood corpuscles of various vertebrates: Man, $\frac{1}{3200}$; dog, $\frac{1}{3300}$; cat, $\frac{1}{4000}$; sheep, $\frac{1}{5000}$; elephant, $\frac{1}{2745}$;

horse, $\frac{1}{4600}$; musk deer, $\frac{1}{12325}$; pigeon, $\frac{1}{2317}$; toad, $\frac{1}{1048}$; newt, $\frac{1}{814}$; proteus, $\frac{1}{400}$; pike, $\frac{1}{2000}$; shark, $\frac{1}{1142}$.

11. In a microscopic specimen of fresh unaltered blood (Fig. 14) the red blood corpuscles form peculiar short or long rolls, like so many coins, from becoming adherent to one another by their broad surfaces. Under various conditions — such as when isolated, or when blood is diluted with a 7·5–1 p.c. saline solution or solutions of other salts (sulphate of sodium or magnesium) — the corpuscles lose their smooth circular outline, shrinking and becoming *crenate* (Fig. 15, *a*). In a further stage of shrinking they lose their discoid form, and become smaller and spherical, but beset all over their surface with minute processes. This shape is called the *horse-chestnut shape* (Fig. 15, *b*, *c*). It is probably due to the corpuscles losing carbonic acid, as the addition of the acid brings back their discoid shape and smooth circular outline. On abstracting the carbonic acid they return to the horse-chestnut shape. Water, acid, alcohol, ether, the electric current, and many other reagents, produce decoloration of the red blood corpuscles, the coloured matter—generally the combination of the blood-colouring matter with globulin, known as *hæmoglobin*—becoming dissolved in the plasma.

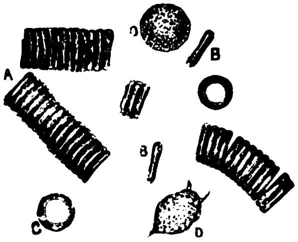


Fig. 14.—Human Blood, fresh.

A, Rouleaux of red corpuscles; B, isolated red corpuscle seen in profile; C, isolated red corpuscle seen flat; D, white corpuscles.

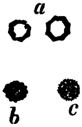


Fig. 15.—Human Red Blood Corpuscles.

a, Crenate; *b*, *c*, horse-chestnut-shaped.

What is left of the corpuscles is called the *stroma.* In newt's and frog's blood a separation of the stroma from the nucleus and hæmoglobin can be effected by means of boracic acid (Fig. 16, B); the former is called by Brücke the œkoid, the latter zooid. This stroma contains amongst other things much paraglobulin. The stroma of the corpuscles of amphibians is seen, under certain reagents, to be of a reticulated structure, but in the fresh state appears homogeneous and pale. Decoloration of the blood corpuscles can also be observed to take place in blood spontaneously without the addition of any reagents or with that of indifferent fluids, such as the aqueous humour of the eye, hydrocele fluid, etc. The number of corpuscles undergoing decoloration under these conditions is, however, small.

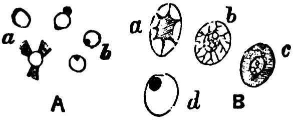


Fig. 16.—Red Blood Corpuscles of Man and Newt.

A, Human red corpuscles after the action of tannic acid; *a*, three red corpuscles, from which the hæmoglobin is passing out; *b*, Roberts's corpuscles. B, Newt's red corpuscles after the action of boracic acid; *a*, corpuscle showing Brücke's zooid and œkoid; *b*, corpuscle showing the reticulated stroma; *c*, corpuscle showing the reticulum in the nucleus; *d*, the nucleus passing out.

When blood is dried on a glass in a thin film, the corpuscles, forming a single layer only, dry on before they shrink, and thus retain their natural size and outline; their stroma can then be easily stained with aniline dyes.

12. The **hæmoglobin** of the red blood corpuscles forms crystals (Fig. 17), which differ in shape in various mammals. They are always of microscopic size, and of a bright red colour. In man and most mammals they are of the shape of prismatic needles or rhombic plates; in the squirrel they are hexagonal plates, and in the guinea-pig they are tetrahedral or octahedral.

The blood pigment itself is an amorphous dark-brown or black powder—the *hæmatin ;* but it can be obtained in a crystalline form, as hydrochlorate of hæmatin (Fig. 18). These crystals also are of microscopic size, of a nut-brown colour, of the shape of narrow rhombic plates, and are called *hæmin crystals*, or *Teichmann's crystals.* In extravasated human blood, crystals of a bright yellow or orange colour are occasionally met with; they are called by Virchow, their discoverer, *hæmatoidin.* They are supposed to be identical with bilirubin, obtainable from human bile.

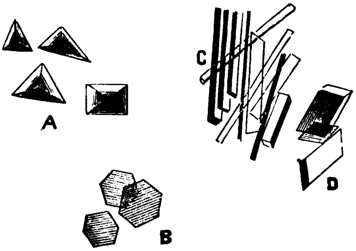


Fig. 17.—Hæmoglobin crystals.
A, Of guinea-pig; B, of squirrel; C, D, human.

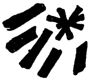


Fig. 18.—Hæmin crystals.

13. The **white or colourless corpuscles,** or **leucocytes,** are in human blood of about $\frac{1}{2000}$ to $\frac{1}{2500}$ of an inch in diameter—*i e.* about 10 μ—and are spherical in the circulating blood or in blood that has just been removed from the vessels. Their substance is transparent granular-looking protoplasm, some containing larger or smaller distinct granules. These granules are not all of the same nature, as will presently appear. In some kinds of blood, notably horse's, they are of a reddish colour, and these corpuscles were supposed by some observers (Semmer and Alexander Schmidt) to be intermediate between red and white corpuscles. The protoplasm of the colourless corpuscles contains occasionally glycogen (Ranvier, Schäfer). In the blood of the lower vertebrates the colourless corpuscles are much larger than

in mammals. But in all cases they consist of protoplasm (spongioplasm and hyaloplasm), include one, two, or more nuclei, and show amœboid movement. This may be observed in corpuscles without any addition to a fresh microscopic specimen of blood, but it always becomes much more pronounced on applying artificial heat of about the degree of mammals' blood. It is then seen that either they throw out longer or shorter filamentous processes, which may gradually lengthen or be withdrawn, or the corpuscle changes its position either by a flowing movement, or it pushes out a filamentous process and shifts its body into it. During this movement the corpuscle may take up granules from the

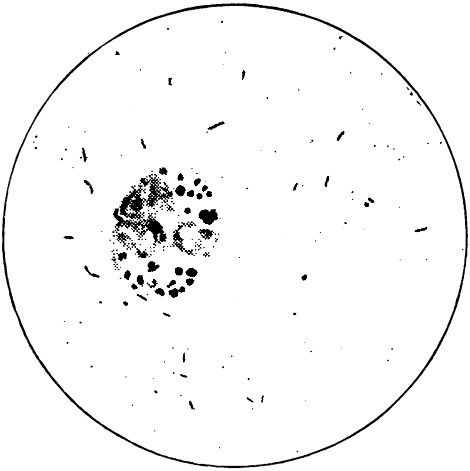


Fig. 19.—Phagocyte (with three nuclei) from the peritoneal fluid of a guinea-pig, previously injected intraperitoneally with cholera culture. The interior of the phagocyte contains numerous degenerated comma bacilli. (*Photo. highly magnified.*)

surrounding fluid. Leucocytes, be they in the blood or in connective tissue or lymph glands (*see* below), that can, and in certain circumstances do, take up granules or similar matter are spoken of as *phagocytes* (eating cells) (Figs. 19, 20). Division by simple cleavage of leucocytes of the blood of lower vertebrates has been directly observed by Klein and Ranvier.

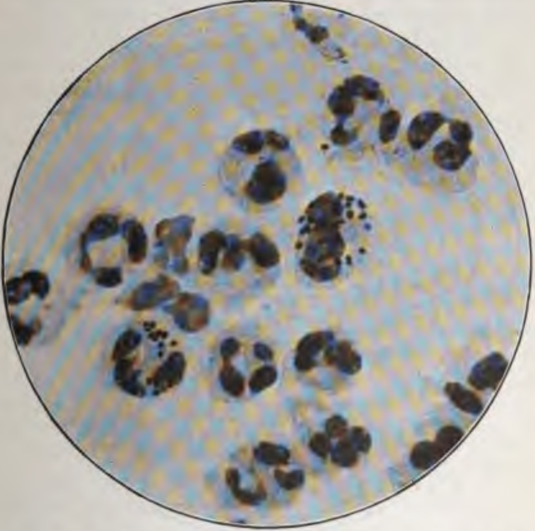


Fig. 20.—**Hyaline Leucocytes** (pus cells) from purulent matter; the leucocytes contain in their hyaline protoplasm two, three, or more nuclei two of the cells contain in their protoplasm a number of cocci, these cells acting as phagocytes. (*Photo. highly magnified.*)

14. The white corpuscles or leucocytes in the same sample of blood differ in size and aspect. They may be classed into three groups: (*a*) The lymphocyte,

a small cell possessed of a relatively large single nucleus surrounded by a narrow zone of protoplasm. (*b*) The *typical leucocyte* or *hyaline leucocyte* is larger than the former, contains two, three, or even four relatively small nuclei; its cell protoplasm appears hyaline, but includes a spongy network. This leucocyte is as regards numbers by far the predominating white corpuscle, and its amœboid movement is very striking. (*c*) The *granular leucocyte* forms a small minority, it contains a single large nucleus, occasionally two, and its cell protoplasm contains conspicuous granules.

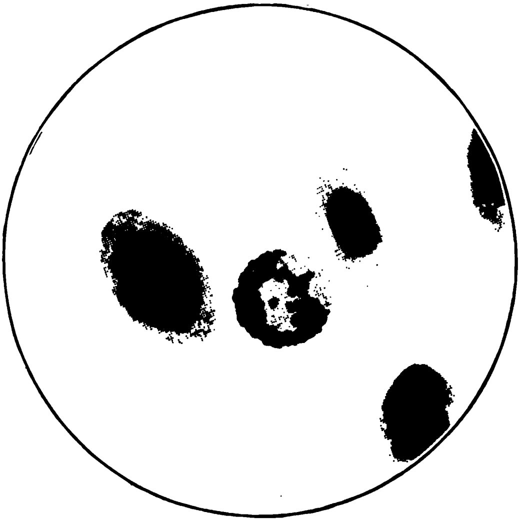


Fig. 21.—Frog's Blood, showing red blood discs and one oxyphile white cell. (*Photo. highly magnified.*)

The lymphocytes are identical with similar corpuscles of the adenoid tissue of lymph glands, from which in all probability they are derived. It is highly probable that they are young forms of the typical leucocytes. The *granular* leucocytes—*i.e.* the white corpuscles that contain real granules—behave differently when subjected to staining with aniline dyes. In some the granules stain readily with acid aniline dyes—*e.g.* eosin—so that they become bright red—*eosinophile* (Ehrlich) or *oxyphile* cells (Fig. 21); in others the granules stain only in basic aniline dyes—*basophile* cells; in still others they stain both with acid and alkaline aniline dyes—*neutrophile* or *amphophile.* What the exact relation of these different granule-cells amongst themselves and to the non-granular or hyaline cells is, is not definitely established. But it appears from the researches of Kanthack and Hardy that in the frog, at any rate, and probably also in the mammal, the oxyphile or eosinophile leucocyte does not act as a phagocyte, and that this function is monopolised by the other or hyaline variety of leucocytes.

15. In every microscopic specimen of the blood of man and mammals are found a variable number of large granules, more or less angular, singly or in groups. According to Max Schultze they are derivatives of broken-up white corpuscles; but according to Bizzozero, they are present already in the living and fresh blood, as pale, circular, or slightly oval discs (Fig. 22, *b*). Their size is only $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{3}$ of that of the red blood corpuscles. They are called by him *blood platelets*, and he supposes them to be of essential importance in the coagulation of the blood, originating the fibrin ferment. Hayem described them previously as being intermediate forms in the development of red blood corpuscles, and called them hæmatoplasts.

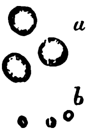


Fig. 22.—Human Blood.

a, Red blood corpuscles; *b*, blood platelets of Bizzozero.

16. **Development of blood corpuscles.**—At an early stage of embryonic life, when blood makes its appearance it is a colourless fluid, containing only white corpuscles (each with a nucleus), which are derived from certain cells of the mesoblast. These white corpuscles change into red ones; the protoplasm becomes homogeneous and yellow; then it assumes a flattened shape, and is in reality a coloured blood corpuscle containing a pale nucleus. All through embryonic life new white corpuscles are transformed into red ones. In the embryo of man and mammals these red corpuscles contain their nuclei for some time, but ultimately lose them. New red blood corpuscles may, however, be formed also by division of nucleated red corpuscles. Such division has been observed even in adult blood of lower vertebrates (Peremeschko) as well as in the fœtus of mammals.

The cells of the mesoblast which give origin to vessels (cysts and strands) are capable of producing by budding and cleavage new white cells, which ultimately change into red corpuscles. (*See* formation of blood-vessels.)

An important source for the new formation of red corpuscles in the embryo and adult is the red marrow of bones (Neumann, Bizzozero, Rindfleisch), in which numerous nucleated protoplasmic cells (marrow cells) are converted into nucleated red blood corpuscles—*erythroblasts.* The protoplasm of the corpuscle becomes homogeneous and tinged with yellow, the nucleus being ultimately lost. The spleen is also assumed to be a place for the formation of red blood corpuscles. Again, it is assumed that ordinary white blood corpuscles are transformed into red ones, but of this there is no conclusive evidence. In all these instances the protoplasm becomes homogeneous and filled with hæmoglobin, while the cell grows flattened, discoid, and the nucleus in the end disappears.

Schäfer described intracellular (endogenous) formation of red blood corpuscles at first as small hæmoglobin particles, but soon growing into red blood corpuscles in certain cells of the subcutaneous tissue of young animals. Malassez describes the red blood corpuscles originating by a process of continued budding from the marrow cells.

The white corpuscles appear to be derived from the lymphatic organs, whence they are carried by the lymph into the circulating blood.

CHAPTER III.

EPITHELIUM.

17. **Epithelial cells** (Fig. 23) are *nucleated protoplasmic cells forming continuous masses* on the surface of the skin, of the lining membrane of the alimentary canal, the respiratory organs, the urinary and genital organs, the free surface of the conjunctiva, and the anterior surface of the cornea. The lining of the tubes and alveoli of secreting and excreting glands, such as the kidney, liver, mammary gland, testis and ovary, the salivary glands, mucous, peptic, and Lieberkühn's glands, the sweat and sebaceous glands, the hair follicles, etc., consists of epithelial cells. Such is the case also with the sensory or terminal parts of the organs of the special senses. And, finally, epithelial cells occur in other organs, such as the thyroid, the pituitary body, etc.

The hairs and nails, the cuticle of the skin, certain parts of the rods and cones of the retina, and the rods of Corti in the organ of hearing, are modified epithelial structures.

Epithelial cells are grouped together by exceedingly thin layers of an albuminous *interstitial cement substance*, which during life is of a semi-fluid nature, and belongs to the group of bodies known as globulins.

18. As regards **shape**, we distinguish two kinds of epithelial cells—columnar and squamous. The *columnar cells* are short or long, cylindrical or prismatic, pyramidal, conical, club-shaped, pear-shaped,

or spindle-shaped; their nucleus is always more or less oval, their protoplasm more or less longitudinally striated, being a spongy reticulum with predominantly longitudinal arrangement. On the free surface of the cells —*i.e.* the part facing a cavity, canal, or general surface—in many instances a bright thinner or thicker cuticular structure is seen, with more or less distinct vertical striation. The conical or spindle-shaped, club-shaped, and pear-shaped cells are drawn out into longer or shorter single or branched extremities.

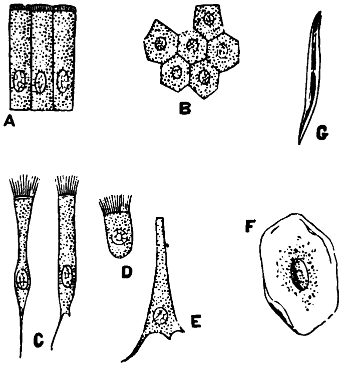


Fig. 23.—Various kinds of Epithelial Cells. A, Columnar cells of intestine; B, polyhedral cells of the conjunctiva; C, ciliated conical cells of the trachea; D, ciliated cell of frog's mouth; E, inverted conical cell of trachea; F, squamous cell of the cavity of mouth, seen from its broad surface; G, squamous cell, seen edgeways.

The *squamous* or *pavement cells* are cubical, polyhedral or scaly. The nucleus of the former is almost spherical, that of the latter flattened in proportion to the thinness of the scales. In polyhedral cells it can be shown that the uniform granulation is due to the regular honeycombed nature of the cell protoplasm.

19. As regards **size,** the epithelial cells differ considerably from one another in different parts, and even in the same part. Thus, the columnar cells, covering the surface of the villi of the small intestine, are considerably longer than those lining the mucous membrane of the uterus; the columnar cells lining the larger ducts of the kidney are considerably longer

than those lining the small ducts; the polyhedral cells covering the anterior surface of the cornea are considerably smaller than those on the surface of the lining membrane of the urinary bladder; the scales lining the ultimate recesses of the bronchial tubes—the air cells—are considerably smaller than those on the surface of the membrane lining the human oral cavity and œsophagus (Fig. 24).

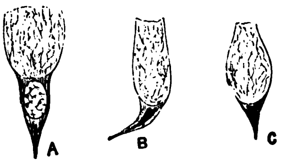


Fig. 24.—Three Mucus-secreting Goblet Cells.

A, From the stomach of newt; B, from a mucous gland; C, from the surface of the mucous membrane of the intestine.

20. As regards **arrangement,** the epithelial cells are arranged as a single layer or are stratified, forming several superposed layers; in the former case we have a single-layered, in the latter a stratified epithelium. The simple epithelium may be composed of squamous cells, *simple squamous* or *simple pavement epithelium*; or it may be composed of columnar cells, *simple columnar epithelium.* The stratified epithelium may be *stratified pavement* or *stratified columnar*; in the former case all or the majority of the layers consist of squamous or polyhedral cells; in the latter all cells belong to the columnar kind. *Simple squamous epithelium* is that which lines the air cells, certain urinary tubules of the kidney (the looped tubes of Henle, the cortical parts of the collecting tubes), the acini of the milk-gland, the inner surface of the iris and choroid membrane of the eyeball. *Simple columnar epithelium* is that on the inner surface of the stomach, small and large intestine, uterus, small bronchi, ducts and acini of mucous and salivary glands, of some kidney tubules, etc. *Stratified pavement epithelium* is that on the epidermis, the epithelium lining the cavity of the mouth, pharynx,

and œsophagus in man and mammals, the anterior surface of the cornea, etc.

Functionally, epithelium can be classified as: (*a*) tegmental—*e.g.* the epidermis of the skin, the epithelium of mucous membrane; (*b*) as secretory—*e.g.* the epithelium lining the alveoli and tubes of secreting glands, the liver, the kidney, etc.; (*c*) sensory—*e.g.* the epithelial-like cells forming the terminal organs of nerve fibres—*e.g.* in the retina, in the organ of hearing (cochlea, vestibule, and semicircular canals of the internal ear), in the taste buds, in the olfactory membrane, and in the skin; (*d*) forming special horny organs—*e.g.* hairs, nails, the horny papillæ on the tongue of feline animals; (*e*) some specific, not well-understood function—*e.g.* the epithelium covering the glomeruli of the Malpighian corpuscles of the kidney, the epithelium (or endothelium) forming the wall of blood-capillaries and lymph vessels.

21. The **epidermis** (Fig. 25) consists of the following layers:—(*a*) *Stratum corneum:* this is the superficial horny layer, and it consists of several layers of horny scales, without any nucleus. Its layers are separated from one another by narrow clefts containing air, and they are in process of desquamation. This stratum is thickest on the palm of the hand and fingers and the sole of the foot. (*b*) The *stratum lucidum*, composed of several dense layers of horny scales, in which traces of an exceedingly flattened nucleus may be perceived. (*c*) Then follow many layers of nucleated cells, forming the *stratum* or *rete Malpighii* or *rete mucosum.* The most superficial layer or layers of it are flattened scales, which are characterised by the presence around the nucleus of globular or elliptical granules of the nature intermediate between protoplasm and keratin. Their substance is called eleidin by Ranvier, keratohyalin by Waldeyer; these

cells form the *stratum granulosum* of Langerhans. Deeper down, the cells are less flattened and more polyhedral, and the deepest form a layer of more or less columnar cells, placed vertically on the surface of the subjacent corium.

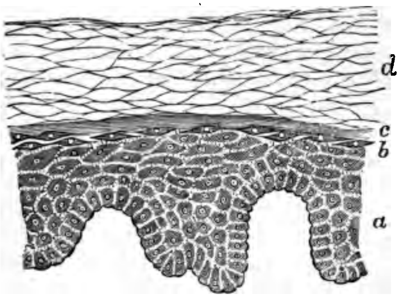


Fig. 25.—From a Vertical Section through the Epidermis. (*Atlas.*)

a, The stratum Malpighii; *b*, the stratum granulosum; *c*, the stratum lucidum; *d*, the stratum corneum.

The substance of the hairs, nails, claws, hoofs, consists of horny scales. (*See* chapter on Skin.)

22. The **stratified pavement epithelium** (Fig. 26) lining the cavity of the mouth, the surface of the tongue, the pharynx and œsophagus of man and mammals, and the anterior surface of the cornea, etc., is, as regards the style and arrangement of the cells, identical with the stratum Malpighii of the epidermis. The cell protoplasm is more transparent in the former, and the granular cells of the stratum

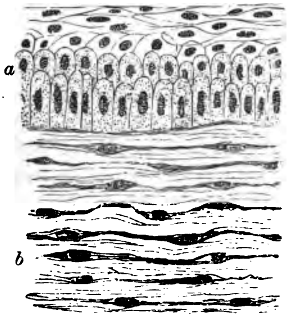


Fig. 26.—From a Vertical Section through the anterior layers of the Cornea. (*Handbook.*)

a, The stratified pavement epithelium; *b*, the substantia propria, with the corneal corpuscles between its lamellæ.

granulosum are not always present, but they generally are in the epithelium of the tongue and of the rest of the oral cavity. The most superficial scales show more or less horny transformation.

23. **Stratified columnar epithelium** is met with on the lining membrane of the respiratory organs: in the larynx, trachea, and large bronchi. It consists of several layers of columnar cells; a superficial layer of conical or prismatic cells, with a more or less pointed extremity directed towards the depth; between these are inserted spindle-shaped cells, and finally inverted conical cells.

The epithelium of the ureter and bladder is called *transitional epithelium.* It is stratified, and the most superficial layer consists of polyhedral cells. Underneath this is a layer of club-shaped cells, between which extend one or more layers of small spindle-shaped cells.

Amongst the columnar epithelial cells occurring in man and mammals the *ciliated cells* and the *goblet cells*, and amongst the squamous cells the *prickle cells*, deserve special notice.

24. **Ciliated cells** are characterised by possessing a bundle of very fine longer or shorter hairs or cilia on their free surface. These cilia are direct prolongations of the cell protoplasm. More correctly speaking, the cilia are continuous with the filaments or striæ of the cell protoplasm. The superficial layer of conical cells of the epithelium in the respiratory organs, the columnar cells lining the uterus and oviduct, and the columnar cells lining the tubes of the epididymis, possess such cilia. In lower vertebrates the ciliated cells are much more frequently observed; in Batrachia the epithelial cells lining the mouth, pharynx, and œsophagus are ciliated.

While fresh in contact with the membrane which they line, or even after removal from it, provided the cells are still alive, the ciliated cells show a rapid synchronous whip-like movement of their cilia, the cilia of all cells moving in the same direction. The movement ceases on the death of the cell, but may become slower and may cease owing to other causes than death, such as coagulation of mucus on the surface, want of sufficient oxygen, presence of carbonic acid, low temperature, etc. In these circumstances, removal of the impediment, as by dilute alkalies, will generally restore the activity of the cilia. Moderate electric currents and heat stimulate the movement, strong electric currents and cold retard it. Reagents fatally affecting cell protoplasm also stop permanently the ciliary action.

25. **Goblet or chalice cells** (Figs. 24, 27) are cells of the shape of a conical cup. The pointed part is directed away from the free surface, and contains a compressed triangular nucleus surrounded by a trace of protoplasm. The body of the goblet contains mucus. This latter may be in various states of formation, and may at any time be poured out of the cell. Goblet cells are most commonly met with amongst the epithelium lining the respiratory organs, the surface of the stomach and intestines, and especially in mucous glands, in whose secreting portion all cells are goblet cells.

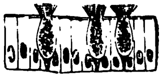


Fig. 27.—From a Vertical Section through the Epithelium on the surface of the mucous membrane of the large intestine.

Three goblet cells are seen pouring out their mucus. The rest are ordinary columnar cells.

The protoplasm of columnar cells facing a free surface, no matter whether in simple or stratified epithelium, ciliated or non-ciliated, may undergo such alteration as will lead to the transformation of the cell into a mucus-secreting goblet cell. This takes place during life, and corresponds to an important function of columnar epithelial cells—viz.

the formation of mucus. In mucus-secreting glands all the epithelial cells have this function permanently, but in ordinary columnar epithelium only a comparatively small number of the cells, as a rule, undergo this change, and then only temporarily; for a cell subject to it at one time may shortly afterwards resume the original shape and aspect of an ordinary protoplasmic, cylindrical, or conical epithelial cell, and *vice versâ*. If ciliated cells undergo this change, the cilia are generally first detached.

It can be shown that in this change of an ordinary columnar epithelial cell into a goblet cell the interstitial substance of the cell reticulum swells up and increases in amount, the meshes enlarging and distending the body of the cell. The middle and upper part of the cells then change, first into mucigen, and finally into mucin, which is eventually discharged, leaving in the deeper part the compressed nucleus surrounded by a trace of protoplasm behind (*see* Fig. 34).

26. **Prickle cells** (Fig. 25).—Amongst the middle and deeper layers of the stratified pavement epithelium, such as is present in the epidermis and on the surface of the oral cavity and pharynx, we meet with a close, more or less distinct and regular striation, extending from the margin of one cell to that of each of its neighbours, by means of fine transverse short fibrils which, passing from protoplasm to protoplasm, connect the surfaces of the cells.

27. Pigmented epithelial cells—*i.e.* epithelial cells filled with black pigment particles (crystals) — are found on the internal surface of the choroid and iris of the eyeball.

In coloured skins, and in coloured patches of skin and mucous membrane, such as occur in man and animals, pigment in the shape of dark granules is found in the protoplasm of the deeper epithelial cells, as well as in branched cells situated between the epithelial cells of the deeper layers. Minute branched non-pigmented nucleated cells are met with in *the interstitial or cement substance* of various kinds of epithelium, simple and stratified—*e.g.* epidermis, epithelium of oral cavity, cornea, etc.

28. Epithelial cells undergo division, and by this means a constant regeneration takes place. In those parts where the loss of the superficial layers of cells is conspicuous, such as the epidermis, the stratified epithelium of the tongue and oral cavity, the sebaceous follicles of hairs, the regeneration goes on more copiously than at places where no such conspicuous loss occurs—as, for instance, in the stomach and intestines, the secreting glands, or sense organs.

In the stratified pavement epithelium it is the cells of the deepest layers which chiefly divide. As a rule, this division takes place transversely in the cylindrical cells, but may also occur longitudinally (A. Kollmann). The epithelial cells next to the deepest layer of columnar cells are to a great extent the result of the division of the latter, and as this proceeds there is a gradual shifting of the older cells towards the surface and a simultaneous flattening of the cell protoplasm as well as the nucleus.

29. The interstitial substance between, and the protoplasm of, the epithelial cells being a soft flexible material, the cells can change their shape and arrangement owing to pressure exerted on them by the contraction or distension of the subjacent membrane. Thus the epithelium lining a middle-sized bronchus at one time appears composed of thin columnar cells in two layers; at another, as a single layer; or again, as a single layer of short columnar cells: in the first case the bronchus is contracted, in the second in a medium state of distension, in the third much distended. Similar changes may be noticed in the

epithelium lining the bladder and the stratum Malpighii.

The *interstitial substance*, being a soft, semi-fluid substance, represents the paths through which granules and formed particles may find their way from the free surface into the membrane beneath, or *vice versâ*. Also leucocytes pass out in certain localities from the membrane underneath, between and into the substance of epithelial cells, and may finally be discharged on to the free surface—*e.g.* in the tonsils, in the fauces and pharynx and larynx. Epithelial cells may in this way include in their substance various formed particles: granules, fat globules, leucocytes, nuclei of leucocytes, etc. Besides these cell enclosures and the paranuclei and chromatin granules mentioned in a former paragraph, in some localities (*e.g.* stratum Malpighii of the epidermis, epithelium of the oral cavity, pharynx and œsophagus) the epithelial cell substance undergoes a partial or total change into keratinous substance, keratohyalin, forming a mantle around the unchanged cell protoplasm like a capsule.

CHAPTER IV.

ENDOTHELIUM.

30. THE free surfaces of the serous and synovial membranes, and of those of the brain and spinal cord, the posterior surface of the cornea and anterior surface of the iris, the surfaces of tendon and tendon-sheaths, the lymph sinuses or lymph sacs of amphibian animals, the cavity of the heart, of blood-vessels and of lymphatic vessels, are lined with a continuous *endothelial membrane*, composed of *a single layer of flattened transparent squamous cells*, called *endothelial cells* (Fig. 28). Each contains an *oval nucleus*, situated as a rule excentrically. Just as in the case of epithelium, the endothelial cell plates are joined by a fluid or semi-fluid homogeneous *interstitial or cement substance* of the nature of globulin. When examining any of the above structures fresh, the endothelial cells are not, as a rule, visible, owing to their great transparency; but by staining the structures with a dilute solution of nitrate of silver, and then exposing them to the influence of the light, the cement substance appears stained black, whereby the shape and size of the cell plates become evident. By various dyes also the nucleus of each cell plate may be brought into view.

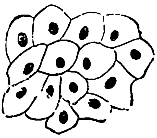


Fig. 28.—Endothelium of the Mesentery of Cat.

The outlines of the endothelial cells and the nucleus of the latter are well shown.

On careful examination, and with suitable reagents, it can be shown that each endothelial cell consists of a homogeneous *ground plate.* In it lies the nucleus, and around it is a substance which appears granular, but which is of a fibrillar nature, the fibrillæ being arranged in a network, and extending in many places up to the margin of the ground plate. The nucleus is limited by a membrane, and contains a well-developed reticulum. The fibrillæ of the cell substance appear to be connected with the nuclear reticulum.

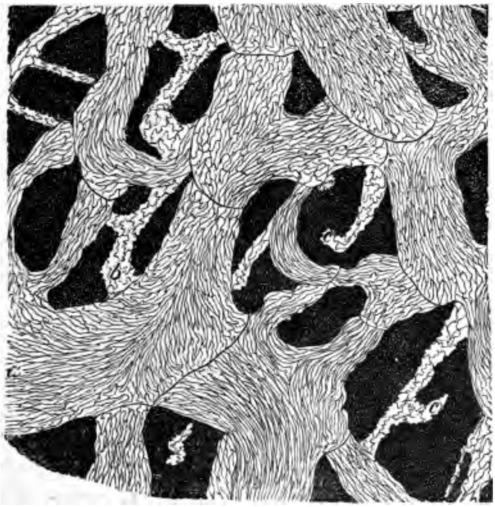


Fig. 29.—Network of Lymphatics in the Central Tendon of the Diaphragm of Rabbit, prepared with nitrate of silver, so as to show the outlines of the Endothelial Cells forming the wall of the Lymphatics. (*Handbook.*)

a, Large lymphatic vessels; *b*, lymphatic capillaries; *c*, apparent ends of the capillaries.

31. As regards **shape,** endothelial cells differ considerably. Those of the pleura, pericardium, peritoneum, and endocardium of man and mammals are

more or less polygonal, or slightly elongated. Their outlines vary; in the lining of the lymph sacs of the frog they are much larger, and of very sinuous outline; while those of the posterior surface of the cornea

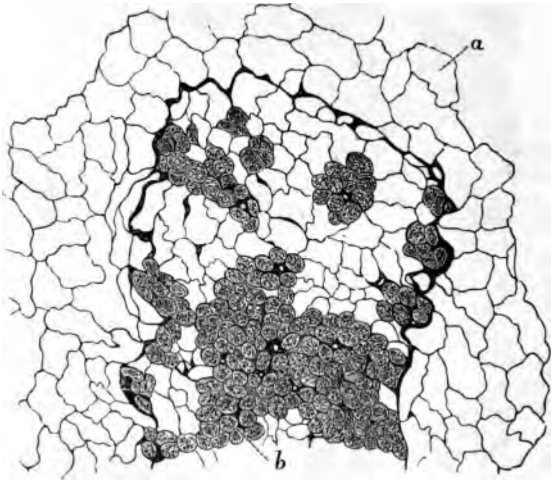


Fig. 30.—Omentum of Rabbit, stained with Nitrate of Silver. (*Atlas.*)
a, Ordinary flat endothelial cells; *b*, germinating cells.

are very regular, pentagonal, or hexagonal, having straight outlines in the perfectly normal and well-preserved condition, but serrated and sinuous after they have been prepared with various reagents and in the abnormal state; the endothelial plates lining the blood-vessels and lymphatic vessels (Fig. 29) are narrow and elongated, with more or less sinuous outlines. In the lymphatic capillaries the endothelial plates are polygonal, but their outline is serrated.

32. As a rule, the endothelial cells are flattened—

i.e. scaly—but in some places they are polyhedral, or even short columnar. Such cells occur isolated or in small groups, or covering large and small patches, nodular, villous, or cord-like structures of the pleura

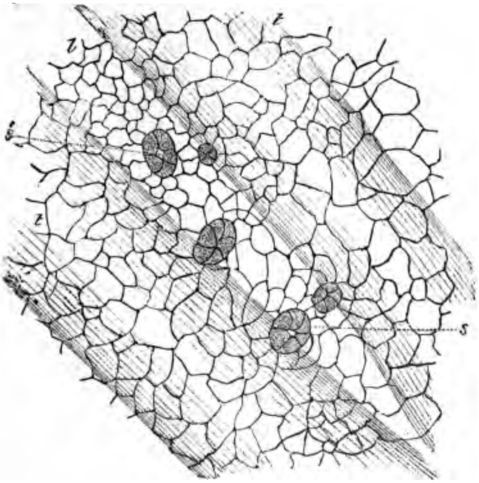


Fig. 31.—Part of Peritoneal Surface of the Central Tendon of Diaphragm of Rabbit, prepared with Nitrate of Silver. (*Handbook.*)

s, Stomata; *l*, lymph-channels; *t*, tendon bundles. The surface is covered with endothelium. The stomata are surrounded by germinating endothelial cells.

and omentum, on the synovial membranes, tunica vaginalis, testis, etc. They are especially observable in considerable numbers in the pleura and omentum (Fig. 30) of all normal subjects (in man, ape, dog, cat, and rodent animals); their number and frequency of occurrence are increased in pathological conditions (chronic inflammations, tuberculosis, cancer, etc.).

These endothelial cells are the *germinating endothelial cells*, and they can be shown to be in an active state of division. They thus produce small spherical lymphoid (amœboid) cells, which ultimately are absorbed by the lymphatics, and carried into the blood system as white blood corpuscles. On the surface of the serous membranes, especially the diaphragm (Fig. 31) and pleura, there exist minute openings, *stomata*, leading from the serous cavity into a lymphatic vessel of the serous membrane. These stomata are often lined by germinating cells.

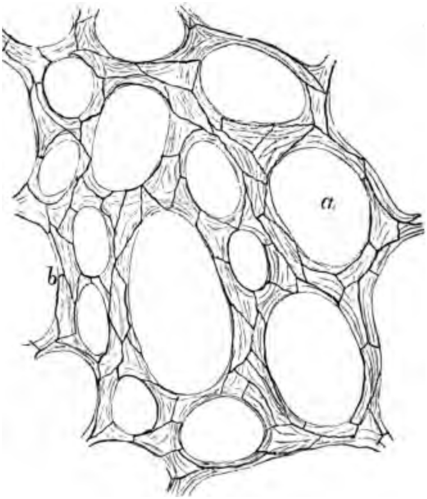


Fig. 32.—Part of Omentum of Cat, stained with Nitrate of Silver.

***a*, Fenestræ or holes; *b*, trabeculæ covered with endothelium. Only the outlines (silver lines) of the endothelial cells are shown.**

33. In the frog, germinating cells occur in great abundance on the mesogastrium and the part of the peritoneum which separates the peritoneal cavity from the cisterna lymphatica magna. This part of

the peritoneum is called the septum cisternæ lymphaticæ magnæ, and on it occur numerous holes or stomata, by which a free communication is established between the two cavities. On the peritoneal surface of this septum the stomata are often bordered by germinating cells. In the female frog, these and other germinating endothelial cells of the peritoneum (mesogastrium, mesenterium, septum cisternæ) are ciliated.

34. The omentum and parts of the pleura are, in the adult human subject, ape, dog, cat, guinea-pig, rat, etc., of the nature of a *fenestrated membrane* (Fig. 32), bands of fibrous tissue of various sizes dividing and reuniting, and leaving between them larger or smaller holes, in shape oblong or circular. These holes or fenestræ are not covered with anything, the endothelial cells adhering only to the surfaces of the bands without bridging over the fenestræ. On the peritoneal surface of the diaphragm the endothelial cells possess a different arrangement from that on the pleural side; on the former surface a number of lymph channels (that is, clefts between the bundles of tendon and muscle) radiate towards the middle of the central tendon. The endothelium of the free surface over these lymph channels is composed of much smaller cells than at the places between, so that the endothelium of the peritoneal surface of the diaphragm shows numbers of radiating streaks of small endothelial cells. Many of these small cells are not flattened, but polyhedral, and of the nature of germinating cells (Fig. 31). The above-mentioned stomata occur amongst these small endothelial cells.

CHAPTER V.

FIBROUS CONNECTIVE TISSUES.

35. By the name of "connective tissues" we designate a variety of tissues which have in common with one another, that they are developed from the same embryonic elements; that they all serve as supporting tissue or connecting substance, for nervous, muscular, glandular, and vascular tissues; that they are capable of taking one another's place in the different classes of animals; that in the embryo and in the growing normal and morbid condition one may be changed into the other; that in the adult they gradually shade off one into the other; and that they yield allied chemical products.

Connective tissues are divided into the three great groups of (1) fibrous connective tissue; (2) cartilage; (3) bone, to which may be added dentine. Each of these is subdivided into several varieties, as will appear farther on; but in all instances the *ground substance*, or *matrix*, or *intercellular substance*, is to be distinguished from *the cells*. In the fibrous connective tissue the matrix yields *collagen or gelatin*, and the cells are called *connective-tissue cells*, or connective-tissue corpuscles. In the cartilage the ground substance yields *chondrin*, and the cells are called *cartilage cells*. In the third group the ground substance contains inorganic lime salts, intimately connected with a fibrous matrix, and the cells are called *bone cells*.

36. The **fibrous connective tissue**, or **white fibrous tissue**, occurs in the skin and mucous

membranes, in the serous and synovial membranes, in the membranes of the brain and spinal cord, in tendons and tendon sheaths, in fasciæ and aponeuroses, in the intermuscular tissue, and in the tissue connecting neighbouring organs, etc. It consists of microscopic band-like or cylindrical *bundles* or fasciculi of exceedingly fine homogeneous fibrils (Fig. 33), which

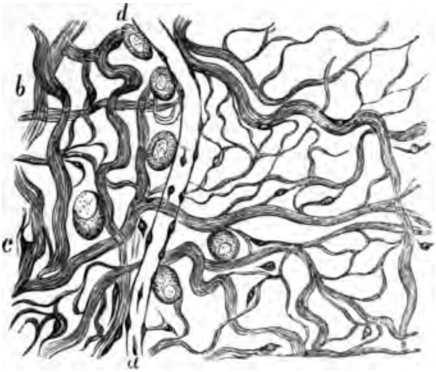


Fig. 33.—Plexus of Bundles of Fibrous Tissue from the Omentum of Rat.
a, Capillary blood-vessel; *b*, bundles of fibrous tissue; *c*, the connective-tissue corpuscles; *d*, plasma cells. (*Atlas.*)

are known as the *elementary connective-tissue fibrils.* According to the number of these the bundles differ in size. The bundles, and also their constituent fibrils, may be of very great length—several inches. Where the fibrous tissue forms continuous masses—as in tendon, fascia, aponeurosis, skin, and mucous membrane—the microscopic bundles are aggregated into smaller or larger groups, the *trabeculæ*, and these are again associated into groups. The fibrils are held together by an *albuminous* (globulin), semi-fluid, homogeneous *cement substance,* which is also present between the bundles forming a trabecula.

The groups of bundles, and even the individual bundles, are in some localities invested with an elastic sheath—*e.g.* in the trabeculæ of bundles in the subcutaneous tissue.

On adding an acid or an alkali to a bundle of fibrous tissue, it is seen to swell up and to become glassy-looking, homogeneous, and gelatinous. Subjected to boiling in water, or to digestion by dilute acids, the bundles of fibrous tissue yield collagen or gelatin.

37. According to the arrangement of the bundles, the fibrous connective tissue varies in different localities. (1) In tendons and fasciæ the bundles are arranged parallel to one another. (2) In the true skin and mucous, serous, and synovial membranes, in the dura mater and tendon sheaths, the trabeculæ of bundles divide repeatedly, cross and interlace very intimately with one another, so that thereby a dense felt-work is produced. (3) In the subcutaneous, submucous, or subserous tissue, in the intermuscular tissue, in the tissue connecting with one another different organs or parts of the same organ—*i.e.* interstitial connective tissue—the texture of the fibrous tissue is more or less loose, the trabeculæ dividing and reuniting and crossing one another, but leaving between them larger or smaller spaces, cellulæ or areolæ, so that the tissue assumes the character of a loose plexus, which is sometimes called "areolar" or "cellular tissue." Such tissue can be more or less easily separated into larger or smaller lamellæ, or plates of trabeculæ. (4) In the omentum and parts of the pleura of man, ape, dog, cat, and some rodents, and in the subarachnoidal tissue of the spinal cord and brain, the trabeculæ form a *fenestrated membrane*, with larger or smaller oval or circular holes or fenestræ.

38. The **connective-tissue cells** or corpuscles occurring in white fibrous tissue are of several

varieties. (*a*) In tendon and fasciæ the cells are called *tendon cells* or tendon corpuscles; they are flattened nucleated protoplasmic cells of a square or oblong shape (Fig. 34), forming continuous rows (single files), situated on the surface of groups of bundles of fibrous tissue. Between these groups are wider or narrower channels, *the interfascicular lymph spaces*, running parallel with the long axis of the tendon (Fig. 35). The cells in each row are separated from one another by a narrow line of albuminous cement substance, and the round nucleus of the cell is generally situated at one end, in such a

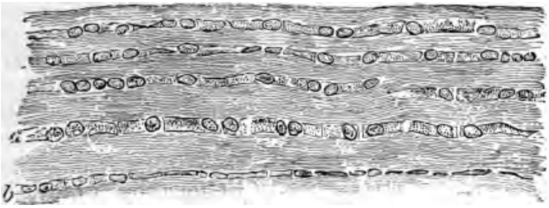


Fig. 34.—Tendon of Mouse's Tail. (*E. A. Schäfer.*)
***a*, Chains of tendon-cells seen broadways; *b*, the same in profile.**

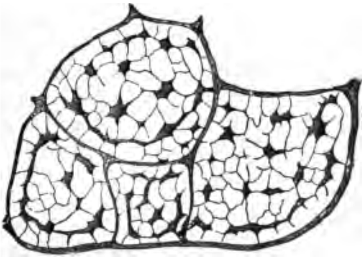


Fig. 35.—From a Transverse Section through the Tendons of the Tail of a Mouse, stained with gold chloride. (*Handbook.*)

Several fine tendons are shown here. The dark branched corpuscles correspond to albuminous cement substance stained with gold chloride; they are the channels between the bundles of fibrous tissue, constituting the tendon, and seen here as the clear spaces in cross-section. In each of these channels is a row of tendon cells—not discernible here, the long axis of these rows being parallel with the long axis of the tendon.

way that in two adjacent cells of the growing tendon the nuclei face each other. This indicates that the individual cells undergo division. Corresponding to the margin of each row, the cells possess minute processes. The cell plate is not quite flat, but possessed of one, two, or even three membranous projections by which it is wedged in between the individual bundles of the group to which the row of cells belongs.

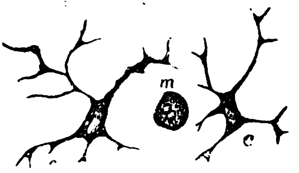


Fig. 36.—From the Tail of a Tadpole.

c, Branched connective tissue cells; *m*, a migratory cell. (*Atlas*.)

39. (*b*) In the serous membranes, cornea, subcutaneous tissue, and loose connective tissues, the cells are flattened transparent corpuscles, each with an oblong flattened nucleus, and more or less branched and connected by their processes. In the cornea they are spoken of as the *corneal corpuscles*, and are very richly branched (Fig. 37). They are situated between the lamellæ of fibrous bundles of which the ground substance of the cornea consists.

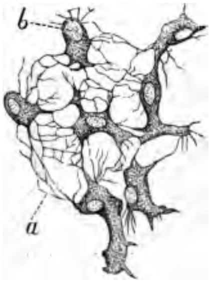


Fig. 37.—From the Cornea of Kitten, showing the Networks of the Branched Corneal Corpuscles.

a, The network of their processes; *b*, nucleus of the corpuscle. (*Atlas*.)

These corpuscles are also situated in the interfascicular lymph spaces, or spaces left between the bundles of the fibrous matrix, which are cavities in the interstitial cement, cementing the bundles and trabeculæ together (von Recklinghausen). In the cornea and serous membranes these spaces possess the shape of branched lacunæ, each lacuna being the home of the body of the cell, while the branches or canaliculi contain its processes. These canaliculi form the channels by which neighbouring lacunæ anastomose with one another (Fig. 38). The cell and its processes do not fill up the lacuna and its canaliculi, but are bathed in the *paraplasma* or fluid contained in the lymph canal system. In loose connective tissue the lacuna may be of considerable size, and may contain several connective cells, which make as it were a lining for it. These in some places are very little branched, and almost form a continuous endotheloid membrane of flattened cells. Such is the *subepithelial endothelium of Debove*, occurring *underneath* the epithelium *on the surface* of the mucous membrane of the bronchi, bladder, and intestines.

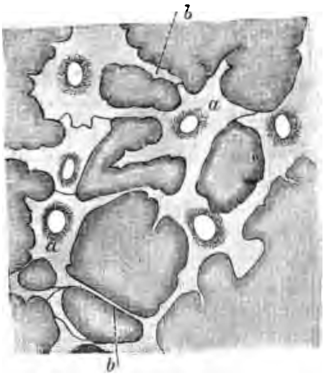


Fig. 38.—From the Cornea of Kitten, stained with Nitrate of Silver, showing the Lymph-canal System.

a, The lacunæ, each containing the nucleated cell-body just indicated here; *b*, the canaliculi for the cell processes. (*Atlas.*)

40. (*c*) In the true skin and mucous membranes the connective-tissue cells are also branched flattened corpuscles, and by their longer or shorter processes are connected into a network (Fig. 36). Each cell has a flattened oblong nucleus. As a rule, some of the processes are membranous prolongations coming off under an angle from the body of the cell, which is then called the chief plate, the processes being the secondary plates. By the latter the cell is

wedged in between the bundles of the trabecula to which it belongs.

This character of the cells (*i.e.* possession of secondary plates) is well shown by the cells of the skin and mucous membranes, but only in a very limited degree by those of the cornea and serous membranes, and somewhat better by some of those of the subcutaneous and other loose connective tissues.

In the skin and mucous membranes also the cells and their processes are bathed in the paraplasma contained in the interfascicular lymph spaces.

41. The connective-tissue corpuscles hitherto mentioned are fixed corpuscles; they do not show movement. Kühne and Rollett ascribe to the corneal corpuscles a certain amount of contractility, inasmuch as they are said to be capable of withdrawing their processes on stimulation. When this ceases they are said again to protrude them. According to Stricker and Norris, they acquire contractility when the corneal tissue is the seat of inflammatory irritation. It can be shown that the connective-tissue cells consist, like the endothelial plates, of a ground plate and a fibrillar reticulated (granular-looking) substance around the nucleus, and extending beyond the ground plate into the processes of the cell.

42. **Pigment cells.**—In the cold-blooded vertebrates, fishes, reptiles, and amphibian animals, we find certain branched nucleated connective-tissue corpuscles, distinguished by their size and by the protoplasm both of the cell-body and processes (but not of the nucleus) being filled with pigment granules. The pigment is either grey or yellow, or more commonly dark brown, or even black. These cells are called pigmented connective-tissue cells, or simply *pigment cells.* They are very numerous in the skin of fishes, reptiles, and amphibian animals, and also around and between

the blood-vessels of the serous membranes. They are also present in man and mammals, but then they are chiefly limited to the eye-ball, where they occur in the proper tissue of the iris of all but albino and bright blue eyes, and in the tissue of the choroid membrane. In dark eyes of mammals a large number of these cells are found in the tissue between the sclerotic and choroid, as the lamina fusca, and also, but to a more

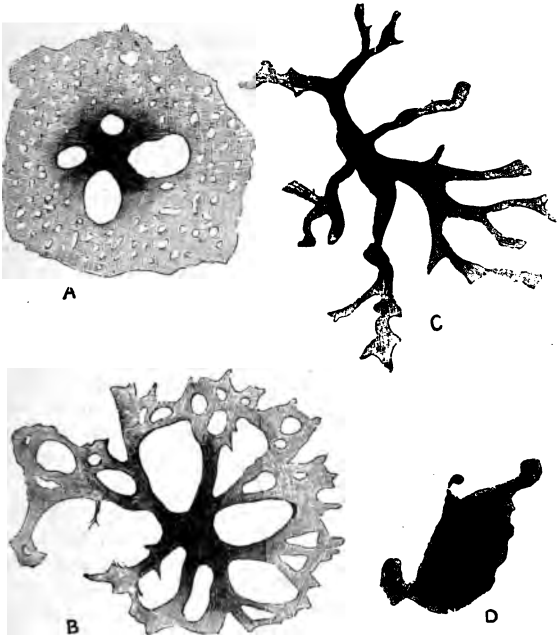


Fig. 39.—Pigment Cells of the Tail of Tadpole.

A, B, C, D represent various states; A being a cell in an uncontracted or passive state, D in a contracted or active state.

limited degree, in the sclerotic. As a rule, they appear to be of various kinds: such as are flattened, large plates perforated by a number of small and large holes and minute clefts; such as possess a more spindle-shaped body, and long, thin, not very richly branched processes; and intermediate forms between the two. But on careful examination it will be seen that these appearances are due to different states of contraction of the same kind of cells (Fig. 39).

43. In the lower vertebrates the dark pigment cells show marked contractility, inasmuch as they are capable of altogether withdrawing into their body the pigmented processes. In the passive state these are exceedingly numerous, and form a network so dense that the whole mass of the cells and their paraplasma resembles an extremely close network of pigment. In the maximum of activity the pigmented processes disappear, being withdrawn into the cell-body, which now looks like a spherical or oblong mass of black pigment. Between the states of passiveness and maximum activity there are various intermediate grades, in which the pigmented processes are of various numbers and lengths.

44. Owing to the great number of the pigment cells in the skin of fishes and amphibians, the state of contraction of these cells materially affects the colour of the skin. If the dark pigment cells of a particular part contract, the skin of this particular part will become lighter and brighter, the degree of lightness and brightness depending on the degree of contraction of the pigmented processes by the cells. Brücke has shown that darkness is a stimulus to the pigmented cells; they contract and the skin becomes light. Sunlight leaves the pigmented cells in the passive state, their pigmented processes numerous and well branched, and the skin appears therefore of a darker colour. If previously they have been

contracted by darkness, on being exposed to sunlight they again return to the passive state. The contraction of the pigment cells is under the direct influence of the nervous system (Lister). Pouchet proved that the contractility of the pigment cells of the skin of certain fishes is influenced as a reflex action by the stimulation of the retina by light.

45. **Fat cells.**—Fat cells in the ripe and fully-formed state are spherical, large vesicles, each consisting (*a*) of a thin *protoplasmic membrane*, which at one point includes *an oval nucleus* flattened from side to side, and (*b*) of a substance, which is a *fat globule* filling the cavity of the vesicle (Fig. 40). These fat cells are collected together by fibrous connective tissue into smaller or larger *groups*, which in their turn form *lobules;* these again form by means of thicker masses of fibrous connective-tissue *lobes*, and these are finally arranged as continuous masses. Each group and lobule has its *afferent arteriole*, one or two

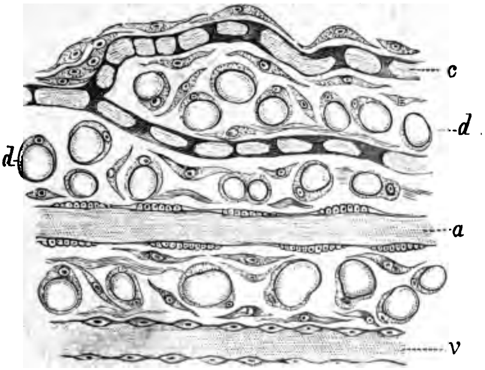


Fig. 40.—From a Preparation of the Omentum of Guinea-pig. (*Atlas.*)
a, Artery; *v*, vein; *c*, young capillary blood-vessel; *d*, fat cells.

efferent veins, and a *dense network of capillaries* between ; each mesh of the capillary network holding one, two, or three fat cells (*see* below). Such are the nature and arrangement of fat or adipose tissue in the subcutaneous and submucous tissue, in the serous and synovial membranes, in the intermuscular tissue, in the loose tissue connecting organs or parts of organs.

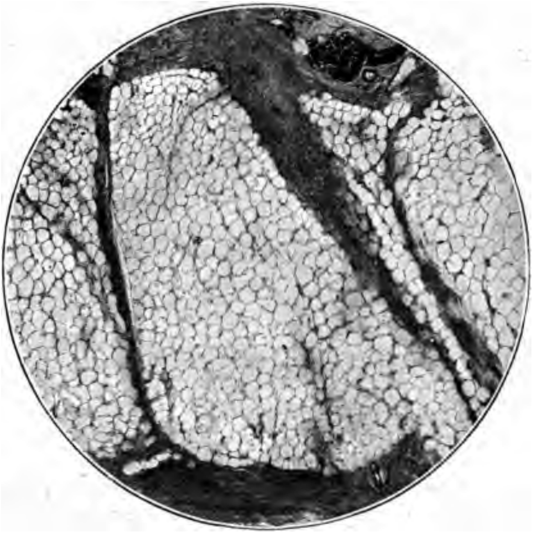


Fig. 41.—From a Section through the adipose layer of the Skin ; showing Lobules of Fat-cells. Magnifying power, 40. (*From a Photograph by Mr. A. Pringle.*)

It can be shown that fat cells are derived from ordinary connective-tissue cells. In some places—both in the embryo and adult—the protoplasm of the connective-tissue corpuscles, growing in size, becomes filled with small fat globules, which, increasing in number, become fused with one another to larger globules; as their size thus increases the cell nucleus becomes shifted to the periphery; ultimately one large fat globule fills the cell, and what is left of the

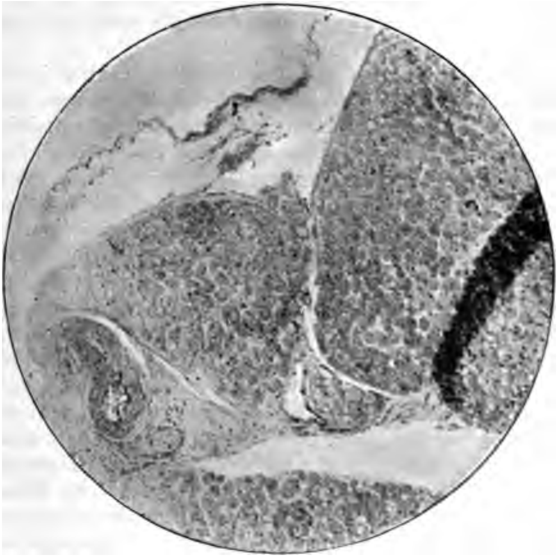


Fig. 42.—From a Section of Lobules of Fœtal Fat, showing connective-tissue septa with vessels (surrounding the lobules); the spheroidal young cells, many of them containing globules of fat. (*Photograph, moderately magnified.*)

cell protoplasm surrounds this fat globule like a membranous envelope. The cell as a whole has become in this process many times its original size (Fig. 41).

46. It can also be shown that where at one time only few isolated connective-tissue corpuscles are present, at another time, in the natural state of

growth, and especially under very favourable conditions of nutrition, the connective-tissue cells become increased by cell-multiplication so as to form groups; these groups continue to increase in size and to be gradually furnished with their own system of blood-vessels; the individual cells constituting the group become then converted into fat cells, and their processes are thereby lost (Fig. 42).

Isolated connective-tissue cells situated in the neighbourhood of small blood-vessels are converted into fat cells under favourable conditions of nutrition.

In starvation the fat cells lose their fat globule, they become smaller and contain a serous fluid, which may ultimately also disappear. Finally, the fat cell may be reduced to a small, solid, protoplasmic, slightly branched cell.

47. In many places the fibrous connective tissue includes, besides the fixed cells, others which show amœboid movement, *wandering cells.* These are of various kinds, like those of the blood: (1) A majority are identical with the typical hyaline leucocytes of the blood, as regards size, shape, aspect, and general nature (Fig. 36, *m*). They wander about through the spaces of the fibrous tissue. They contain two or three nuclei. (2) Those of the second variety possess a small amount of protoplasm, and one comparatively large nucleus; they correspond to the *lymphocytes* mentioned in connection with the white blood corpuscles. The amœboid movement of these cells is not so distinct as in the first variety. (3) *Plasma cells* of Waldeyer. They are larger than the former, less prone to migrating, being possessed of only slight amœboid movement, which is, however, sufficiently pronounced to be detected. They always contain granules, and correspond to the *granular cells* mentioned of the blood; also in regard to their predilection for acid and basic aniline dyes they may be

distinguished as eosinophile or oxyphile, basophile or neutrophile cells. The "granules" in some of the plasma cells may change into fat globules, and thus the plasma cell becomes converted into a fat cell.

48. The *wandering cells* occur almost in all loose fibrous tissues, chiefly around or near blood-vessels; they are not numerously met with in the healthy state, but increase greatly in the state of inflammation of the part. Those of the larger kind—*e.g.* the granular wandering cells or plasma cells, are met with in certain localities only; in the sub-lingual gland of the dog and guinea-pig they occur in numbers between the gland tubes or acini. They are also found in the mucous membrane of the intestine, in the trabeculæ of the lymphatic glands, and in the omentum. The "granules" of these cells under many conditions change into fat globules. Just like the hyaline leucocytes of the blood so also those of the connective tissues are capable of swallowing minute particles of extraneous matter—granules of living (bacteria) and non-living matter that accidentally find entrance into the connective tissue. These cells, when acting in this capacity, are called *phagocytes.*

49. **Development of fibrous tissue.**—Fibrous connective tissue is developed from embryonic connective-tissue cells—*i.e.* from spindle-shaped or branched nucleated protoplasmic cells of the mesoblast. The spindle-shaped cells are met with isolated or in bundles, as in the umbilical cord or embryonic tendon. The branched cells form a network, as in the fœtal skin and mucous membrane. In both instances the protoplasm of the embryonic connective-tissue cells increases rapidly in amount, and becomes gradually transformed into a bundle of elementary fibrils, with a granular-looking interstitial substance. The nucleus of the original cell finally disappears. A modification

of this is when only part—generally unilateral—of the cell substance is converted into a bundle of connective tissue fibrils and inter-fibrillar cement substance. A remnant of the protoplasm persists with the nucleus as a connective-tissue cell.

The same modes of formation of connective tissue may be also observed in the adult under normal and pathological conditions.

50. Fibrous connective tissue is in most places associated with *elastic fibres* or yellow elastic tissue. These are of bright aspect, of variable thickness and length, branching and anastomosing so as to form networks (Fig. 43). They are sometimes straight, but more often twisted and coiled. The latter condition may be observed when the tissue is shrunk, the former when it is stretched. They do not swell up in acids or alkalies, nor yield gelatin on boiling, but contain a chemically different substance—viz. *elastin*. When broken their ends generally curl up.

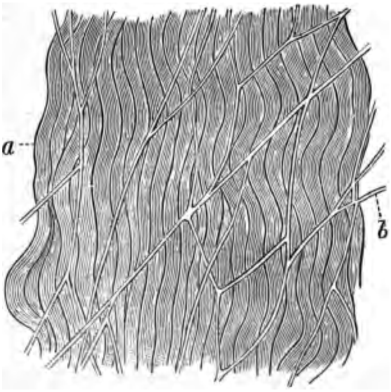


Fig. 43.—From a Preparation of the Mesentery.
a, Bundles of fibrous tissue; *b*, networks of elastic fibres. (*Atlas.*)

51. Elastic fibres occur in great numbers as networks extending on and between the bundles of fibrous tissue in the skin and mucous membranes, in the

serous and synovial membranes, and in the loose interstitial connective tissues. They are not very commonly met with in tendons and fasciæ; in the former they are seen as single fibres often twisting round the tendon bundles.

Elastic fibres forming bundles, but branched and connected into networks within the bundle, are to be found in large numbers in the walls of the trachea, bronchi, infundibula, and alveoli of the lung, in the ligamenta flava, in the ligamentum nuchæ of the ox (in which the fibres are exceedingly thick cylinders), in yellow elastic cartilage (*see* below), in the membrane lining the cavity of the heart, and in the vascular system, particularly the arterial division. In the latter organs the intima, and also to a great extent the media, consist of elastic fibrils densely connected into a network.

52. The following are special morphological modifications of the elastic fibres: (*a*) *elastic fenestrated membranes* of Henle, as met with in the intima of the big arteries; these are in reality networks of fibres with very small meshes, and the fibres unusually broad and flat. (*b*) *Homogeneous elastic membranes*, which surround, as a delicate sheath, the connective-tissue trabeculæ in some localities—*e.g.* subcutaneous tissue. (*c*) Homogeneous-looking elastic membranes in the cornea, behind the anterior epithelium as *Bowman's anterior elastic membrane*, and at the back of the cornea as elastica posterior, or *Descemet's membrane;* in the latter bundles of minute fibrils have been observed. Between the mucosa and submucosa of the stomach of the cat occurs an elastic membrane of considerable thickness. (*d*) Elastic trabeculæ forming a network, as in the ligamentum pectinatum iridis. In the embryonic state the elastic fibres are nucleated, the nuclei being the last remnants of the cells from which the fibres develop, one cell generally giving

origin to one fibre. These nucleated fibres are called Henle's nucleated fibres.

· 53. Special varieties of fibrous connective tissue are these:—

(1) *Adenoid reticulum.* This is a network of fine fibrils, or plates, forming the matrix of lymphatic or adenoid tissue. (*See* Lymphatic glands.) The reticulum is not fibrous connective tissue nor elastic tissue; it contains nuclei in the young state, and is derived from a network of branched cells; but in the adult state the reticulum itself possesses no nuclei. Those found on it do not form an essential part of it.

(2) The *neuroglia* of Virchow is a dense network of very fine homogeneous fibrils which form the supporting tissue for the nervous elements in the central nervous system. These fibrils are supposed to be elastic fibres (Gerlach). Embedded in, and intimately connected with, the network of these fibres are found branched, nucleated, flattened cell plates, which correspond to the fixed connective-tissue cells.

(3) *Gelatinous tissue.* This occurs chiefly in the embryo, being the unripe state of fibrous connective tissue (*see* above). It consists of spindle-shaped or branched connective-tissue cells, separated from one another by a homogeneous transparent mucoid substance. It is met with in the umbilical cord and in the cavity of the middle ear of the embryo, and in all places where fibrous connective tissue is to be developed. After birth it is found in the tissue of the pulp of the teeth, where it persists through life; in some places it is the precursor of fat tissue, its cells becoming transformed into fat cells.

CHAPTER VI.

CARTILAGE.

54. **Cartilage** consists of a firm ground substance which yields *chondrin*, and of cells embedded in it. Most cartilages (except on the articulating surface) are covered on their free surface with a membrane of fibrous connective tissue with a few elastic fibrils. This membrane is supplied with blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves, and is of essential importance for the life and growth of the cartilage. This is the *perichondrium.* There are three varieties of cartilage.

55. (1) **Hyaline cartilage**(Fig. 44).—This occurs on the articular surfaces of all bones; on the borders of many short bones; in the sternal part of the ribs, as *costal cartilages;* at the margin of the sternum, scapula, and os ileum; in the rings of the trachea, the cartilages of the bronchi, the septum and lateral cartilages of the nose; and in the thyroid and cricoid cartilages of the larynx. The ground substance is hyaline—*i.e.* transparent, like ground glass, and firm. The cells are spherical or oval protoplasmic corpuscles, each with one or two nuclei. They undergo division, and although the two offsprings are at first close together (half moon-like in optical section), they gradually grow wider apart by the deposit of hyaline ground substance between them. The cells are contained in cavities, called the *cartilage lacunæ.* Each cell generally occupies one lacuna, but, according to the progress of division, a lacuna may contain two,

four, six, or eight cartilage cells; the latter are those cases in which division proceeds at a more rapid rate than the deposition or formation of hyaline ground substance between the cells.

The part of the cartilage next to the perichondrium shows most active growth; hence the cells are here smaller, closer together, and there is less ground substance.

Each lacuna is lined by a delicate membrane, and, according to the state of the cell, is either completely or partially filled out by it. This membrane is called *the capsule* (Fig. 44). In many cartilages, especially in growing cartilage, it is thickened by the addition of a layer or layers of hyaline ground substance. This is the most recently-formed part of the matrix; it stains differently with dyes, and is distinct from the older part of the ground substance.

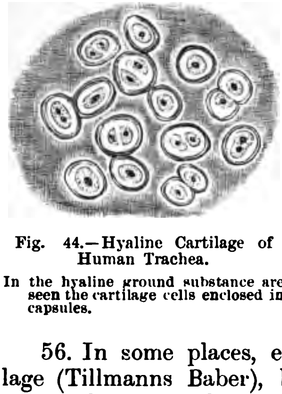


Fig. 44.—Hyaline Cartilage of Human Trachea.

In the hyaline ground substance are seen the cartilage cells enclosed in capsules.

56. In some places, especially in articular cartilage (Tillmanns Baber), bundles of fine connective-tissue fibrils may be noticed in the hyaline ground substance.

57. In some cartilages the protoplasm of the cell becomes filled with fat globules (Fig. 46). This fact may be observed in many normal cartilages; sometimes the fat globules become confluent into one large drop, and then the cell has the appearance of a fat cell. In old age, disease, and deficient nutrition lime salts are deposited in the ground substance, beginning from the circumference of the cell. The earthy matter appears in the shape of opaque granules, or irregular

or angular granules. The ground substance thereby loses its transparency, becomes opaque in transmitted, white in reflected, light, and, of course, very hard and brittle. This process is the *calcification* of cartilage. It is also met with in cartilage that is to be replaced by bone, being the precursor of the formation of bone, as in the embryo (*see* below), and at the growing ends of long bones.

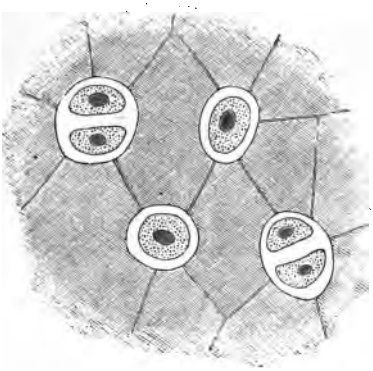


Fig. 45.—From a Preparation of the Sterna Cartilage of a Newt.

The lacunæ containing the cartilage cells anastomose by fine channels.

58. The division of the nucleus of the cartilage cells has been observed during life by Schleicher and Flemming. It takes place after the mode of karyokinesis. The lacunæ of the cartilage are not isolated cavities, but are connected with one another by fine channels (Fig. 45), so that the ground substance is easily permeable by the current of nutritive fluid. These channels and lacunæ form an intercommunicating system, and are connected with the lymphatics of the perichondrium (Budge). Formed matter, as pigment granules, red and white blood

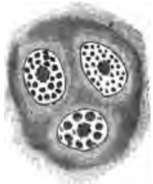


Fig. 46.—Three Cartilage Cells filled with Fat Droplets. From the hyaline cartilage of the nasal septum of Guinea-pig.

corpuscles, and pus corpuscles, may also find its way into the channels and lacunæ of the cartilage from the perichondrium.

At the borders of articular cartilage, where this is joined to the synovial membrane and to the capsule of the joint, the cartilage cells are more or less branched, and pass insensibly into the branched connective tissue cells of the membrane. In fœtal hyaline cartilage many of the cells are spindle-shaped or branched.

59. In the cartilage separating the bone of the apophyses from the end of the diaphysis of tubular bones there is a peculiar hyaline cartilage, known as the *intermediate* or *ossifying* cartilage. Its cells are arranged in characteristic vertical rows, owing to the continued division of the cells in a transverse direction.

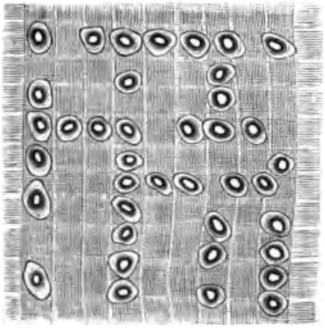


Fig. 47.—Fibro-Cartilage of an Intervertebral Ligament. (*Atlas.*)

Showing the bundles of fibrous tissue and rows of cartilage cells.

Cartilages, or parts of cartilages, in which the cells are very closely placed, owing to the absence, or scanty deposit and formation, of ground substance, are called *parenchymatous* or *cellular* cartilage.

60. (2) **Fibro-cartilage,** or connective-tissue cartilage, occurs as the intervertebral discs, as the inter-articular cartilages, sesamoid cartilages, and as the cartilage forming the margin of a fossa glenoidalis. *It consists of fibrous connective tissue arranged in bundles*, and these again in layers. The ground substance of this cartilage is said to yield chondrin and

not gelatin. Between the strata of the fibrous bundles are rows of more or less flattened oval protoplasmic nucleated cells, each invested in a delicate capsule (Fig. 47). They are less flattened than the cells of tendon, and the capsule distinguishes the two. Where fibro-cartilage passes into tendinous tissue the two kinds of cells pass insensibly into one another.

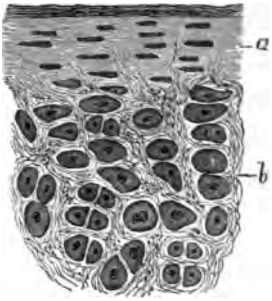


Fig. 48.—From a Section through the Epiglottis. (*Atlas.*)
a, Perichondrium; *b*, networks of elastic fibrils surrounding the cartilage cells.

61. (3) **Yellow, or elastic cartilage.** This variety is also called reticular; it occurs in the epiglottis, in the pinna of the external ear, in the Eustachian tube, in the cartilages of Wrisberg and Santorini in the larynx. In the early stages this kind is hyaline. Gradually numbers of elastic fibrils make their appearance, growing into the cartilage matrix from the perichondrium in a more or less vertical direction, and branching and anastomosing with one another. The final stage is reached when the ground substance is permeated by *dense networks of elastic fibrils* (Fig. 48), so arranged that spherical or oblong spaces are left, each of which contains one or two *cartilage cells*, surrounded by a smaller or larger zone of *hyaline ground substance.*

CHAPTER VII.

BONE.

62. BONE, or osseous substance, is associated with several other soft tissues to form a bone in the anatomical sense of the word.

(*a*) The **periosteum.**—Except at the articular surfaces, and where bones are joined with one another by ligaments or cartilage, all bones are covered with a vascular membrane of fibrous connective tissue. This is the periosteum. It consists in most instances of an outer *fibrous layer*, composed of bundles of fibrous tissue densely aggregated, and an *inner*, or *osteogenetic layer*, which is of loose texture, consisting of a meshwork of thin bundles of *fibrous tissue*, in which numerous *blood-vessels* and many protoplasmic cells are contained. The blood-vessels form by their capillaries a network. The cells are spheroidal or oblong, each with one spherical or oval nucleus. They have to form bone-substance, and are therefore called the *osteoblasts* (Gegenbaur).

(*b*) The **cartilage** is hyaline cartilage, and its distribution on and connection with bone have been mentioned on pp. 63 and 64.

63. (*c*) The **marrow of bone** is a soft vascular tissue, filling up all spaces and cavities. It consists of a *very small amount of fibrous tissue* as a matrix, and in it are embedded *numerous blood-vessels* and *cells*. The few afferent arterioles break up into a dense network of capillaries, and these are continued as plexuses of veins, characterised by their compara-

tively large size and exceedingly thin walls. The cells are of the same size, aspect, and shape as the osteoblasts of the osteogenetic tissue, and they are called *marrow cells.*

In origin and structure, the tissue of the *osteogenetic layer of the periosteum* and *the marrow* are identical. In the embryo, the marrow is derived from an ingrowth of the osteogenetic layer of the periosteum (*see* below), and also in the adult the two tissues remain directly continuous. As will be shown later, the marrow at the growing ends of the bones is concerned in the new formation of osseous substance in the same way as the osteogenetic layer of the periosteum is in that of the surface; and in both tissues the highly vascular condition and the cells (osteoblasts of the osteogenetic layer, and marrow cells of the marrow) are the important elements in this bone formation. Marrow is of two kinds, according to the condition of the cells. If many or most of these are transformed into fat cells, it has a yellowish aspect, and is called *yellow marrow;* if few or none of them have undergone this change, it looks red, and is called *red marrow.* In the central, or marrow, cavity of the shaft of tubular bones, and in the spaces of some spongy bones, the marrow is yellow; at the ends of the shaft, in the spongy bone substance in general, and in young growing bones it is red.

Some of the cells, especially those of red marrow, *the erythroblasts*, are the elements from which normally vast numbers of red blood corpuscles are formed, as has been mentioned on a former page.

In marrow, particularly in red marrow, we meet with large multinucleated cells, called *myeloplaxes of Robin.* They are derived by overgrowth from ordinary marrow cells, and are of importance both for the absorption as also for the formation of bone (*see* below). According to Heitzmann, Malassez, and others, they also have to do with the formation of blood-vessels and blood corpuscles. Numerous eosinophile cells are present in the marrow.

64. The **matrix of osseous substance** is dense plexiform fibrous connective tissue, *i.e.* a tissue yielding gelatin on boiling. The cement substance between the fibrils is petrified, owing to a deposit of insoluble inorganic lime salts, chiefly carbonates and phosphates. These can be dissolved out by strong acids (hydrochloric) and are thereby converted into soluble salts. Thus the organic matrix of osseous substance—called *ossein*—may be obtained as a soft flexible material, easily cut.

In young bone the matrix or ossein is a plexus of trabeculæ of fibrous tissue (v. Ebner), and in it are also a few elastic fibres to be noticed.

The bone substance is in the adult state generally *lamellated*, the lamellæ being of microscopic thinness. Between every two lamellæ are numbers of isolated, flattened, oblong spaces—the *bone lacunæ* (Fig. 49), which anastomose by numerous fine canals with one another, and also with those of the next lamella above and below (Fig. 50). The appearances are very similar to those presented by the lacunæ and canaliculi containing the corneal corpuscles as described in Chapter V.

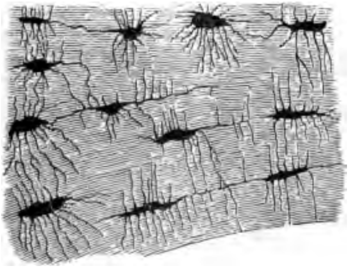


Fig. 49.—Osseous Lamellæ; oblong branched bone lacunæ and canaliculi between them. (*Atlas.*)

The bone lacunæ and their canaliculi are the lymph-canalicular system of osseous substance, for they are in open and free communication with the lymphatic vessels of the marrow spaces and of the Haversian canals.

65. In the bone matrix, each lacuna contains also a nucleated protoplasmic cell, called the *bone cell*, which, however, does not fill it completely. In the young state the cell is branched, the branches passing into the canaliculi of the lacunæ; but in the old state only traces of the original nucleated cell and very few processes can be detected; this with its lacuna and canaliculi is called a *bone corpuscle*.

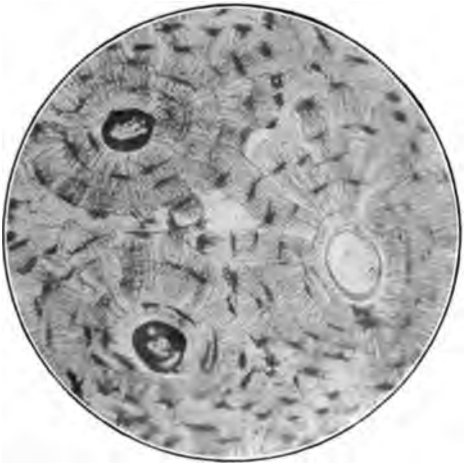


Fig. 50.—From a Transverse Section through Compact Bone, showing systems of concentric lamellæ (with bone corpuscles between) around Haversian canals. (*From a photogram by Mr. Pearce.*)

66. According to the arrangement of the bone substance, we distinguish *compact* from *spongy* substance. The former occurs in the shaft of tubular

bones and in the outer layer of flat and short bones. Its lamellæ are arranged as: (*a*) *concentric* or *Haversian lamellæ*, directly surrounding the *Haversian canals* (Fig. 51). These are narrow canals of varying lengths pervading the compact substance in a longitudinal

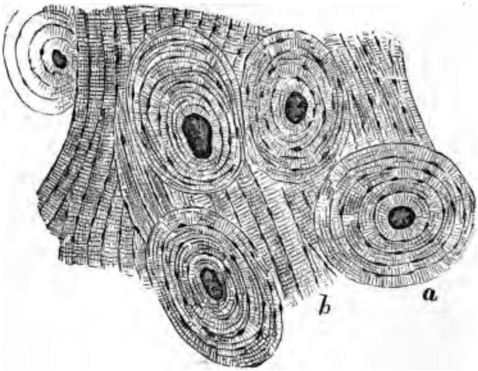


Fig. 51.—Compact Bone Substance in Cross-section. (*Atlas.*)

a, Concentric lamellæ arranged around the Haversian canals, cut across; *b*, intermediate or ground lamellæ. The bone lacunæ are seen between the bone lamellæ.

direction, and anastomosing with one another by transverse or oblique branches. The Haversian canals near the marrow cavity are larger than those near the periosteum. In fact, those next to the marrow cavity become gradually enlarged by absorption of the concentric lamellæ, until finally they are fused with the marrow cavity. Each Haversian canal contains a blood-vessel, one or two lymphatics, and a variable amount of marrow tissue. These canals open both into the marrow cavity and on the outer surface into the osteogenetic layer of the periosteum, and they form the means by which the latter remains in continuity with the marrow. Each canal is surrounded by *a series of concentric bone lamellæ, with the bone corpuscles between them*, and this is a system of *concentric lamellæ.* Near the external surface of the compact substance the number of lamellæ in each system is smaller than in the deeper parts. (*b*)

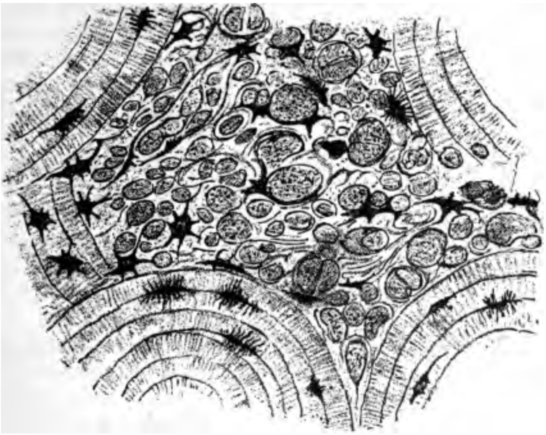


Fig. 51A.—Sharpey's fibres amongst the insterstitial lamellæ of a transverse section of the human humerus ; the fibres run in a vertical direction, and surround spaces which contain the bone-cells. (*After Kölliker, I.*)

Between these systems of concentric lamellæ are the *intermediate* or *ground lamellæ ;* they run in various directions, and in reality fill the interstices between the systems of the Haversian or concentric lamellæ. Near the external surface of long bones they have pre-eminently a direction parallel to the surface. These are the *circumferential lamellæ* of Tomes and de Morgan. The ground lamellæ are the earliest to be developed, being the matrix of the first-formed spongy bone, and they are the last to disappear where bone is melted down in the marrow cavity. The concentric lamellæ, on the other hand, are the last to be formed where spongy bone is converted into compact bone, and they are the first to become absorbed where compact bone is reduced again to spongy bone, as near the central marrow cavity. The lamellæ of compact bone are perforated by perpendicular petrified fibres, the *perforating fibres* of Sharpey. They form a continuity with the fibres of the periosteum, from which they are developed, through the lamellæ of osseous substance deposited by the osteogenetic layer of the periosteum (Fig. 51A).

67. Spongy bone substance occurs in the end of the shaft, in the apophyses, in short bones, and in the diploë of flat bones. The cavities or meshes of the spongy substance are called *Haversian spaces* or *cancelli;* they intercommunicate with one another, and are filled with marrow, which in the young and growing state is generally of the red variety. The firm parts form spicules and septa, called *bone trabeculæ*, of varying length and thickness, and are composed of lamellæ of bone substance.

According to the arrangement of the trabeculæ, the spongy substance is a uniform honeycombed substance, or appears longitudinally striated, as in the end of the shaft. In the latter case the marrow spaces are elongated and the trabeculæ more or less parallel, but anastomosing with one another by transverse branches.

68. **Development of bone.**—Bone is developed in the embryo, and continues to be formed also after birth as long as bone grows, either in the cartilage or, independently of this, directly from the osteogenetic layer of the periosteum. The former mode is called *endochondral*, or *intracartilaginous;* the latter *periosteal*, or *intermembranous* formation.

All the bones of the limbs and of the vertebral column, the sternum, and the ribs, and the bones forming the base of the skull, are preformed in the early embryo as solid hyaline cartilage, covered with a membrane identical in structure and function with the periosteum, which at a later period it represents. This cartilage is eventually replaced by bone—*endochondral bone.* The tegmental bones of the skull, the bones of the face with the lower jaw, except the angle, are not preformed as cartilage at all. Only a membrane identical with the future periosteum is present, and underneath and from it the bone is gradually deposited—*periosteal bone.* The same deposit of periosteal bone takes place on all bones, no matter what their origin, and this deposition of layer after layer of bone by the osteogenetic layer of the periosteum represents *the growth of the bone in thickness.*

69. **Endochondral formation.**—The stage next to the one (1) in which we have solid hyaline cartilage covered with periosteum is the following: (2) Starting from the "centre, or point, of ossification," and proceeding in all directions, the cartilage becomes permeated by numbers of channels (cartilage channels) containing prolongations (periosteal processes of Virchow) of the osteogenetic layer of the periosteum—*i.e.* vessels and osteoblasts, or marrow cells. This is the stage of the *vascularisation of the cartilage.* In the next stage (3) the cartilage bordering on these channels grows more transparent, the lacunæ becoming enlarged and the cartilage cells more transparent. The latter gradually break down, while the intercellular trabeculæ become *calcified;* the lacunæ, by absorption of the calcified trabeculæ, fusing with the cartilage channels. These latter thereby become transformed into *irregular cavities,* which are bordered by *trabeculæ of calcified cartilage.* The cavities are the *primary marrow cavities,* and

they are filled with the *primary* or *cartilage marrow* —*i.e.* blood-vessels and osteoblasts, derived, as stated above, from the osteogenetic layer of the periosteum. (4) The osteoblasts arrange themselves by active multiplication in a *special layer* on the surface of the calcified cartilage trabeculæ projecting into and bordering the primary marrow cavities. The *osteoblasts form bone substance*—osseous matrix and branched bone corpuscles—and as this proceeds, *the calcified cartilage trabeculæ become gradually ensheathed and covered with a layer of osseous substance.* Thus the original cartilage gradually assumes the appearance of a spongy

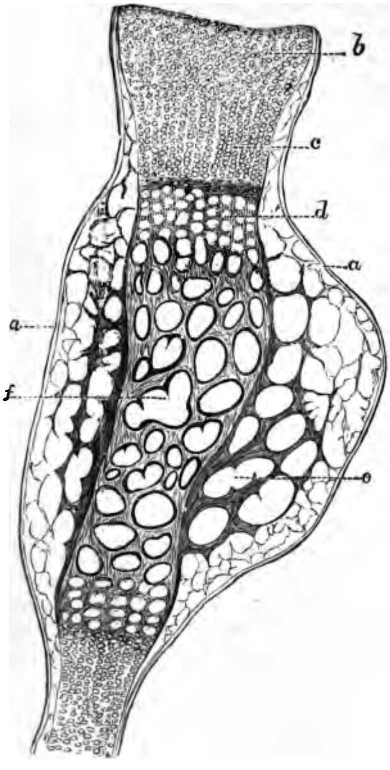


Fig. 52.—Longitudinal Section through the entire Fœtal Humerus of a Guinea-pig.

a, Periosteum; *b*, hyaline cartilage of the epiphysis; *c*, intermediate cartilage at the end of the shaft; *d*, zone of calcification; *e*, periosteal bone, spongy; *f*, endochondral bone, spongy.

substance, in which the cavities (primary marrow cavities) are filled with the primary marrow, and are of considerable size, while the trabeculæ bordering them are calcified cartilage covered with layers of new bone. The marrow cells, or osteoblasts, continue to deposit bone substance on the free surface of the trabeculæ, while the calcified cartilage in the centre of the trabeculæ gradually becomes absorbed.

70. The nearer to the centre of ossification, the more advanced is the process—*i.e.* the more bone and the less calcified cartilage is found constituting the trabeculæ, and the thicker the latter. At the "centre of ossification," *i.e.* whence it started, the process is farthest advanced; away from it, it is in an earlier stage. At this period of embryo life, between the centre of ossification and a point nearer to the extremity of the shaft of a long bone, all stages described above may be met with—viz. between the solid unaltered hyaline cartilage at the end of the shaft and the spongy bone with the unabsorbed remains of calcified cartilage in the middle of the shaft all intermediate stages occur (Fig. 52).

71. After birth, and as long as bone grows, we find in the end of the shaft, and also in the epiphysis, a continuation of the process of endochondral formation described above. In fact, all bones preformed in the embryo as cartilage *grow in length before and after birth* by endochondral formation of new bone. The hyaline cartilages at their extremities, the cartilage of the epiphysis, the intermediate cartilage at the end of the shaft, are the cartilages at the expense of which the new bone of the epiphysis and of the end of the shaft respectively are formed by the marrow (blood-vessels and marrow cells or osteoblasts) in contact with the cartilage. As long as this cartilage continues to grow, so long is there new formation of

bone by the marrow encroaching on it, or, in other words, so long is there growth in length of the shaft. When at a certain period of adult life the growth of the intermediate cartilage has come to an end, the cartilage is completely replaced by the spongy bone

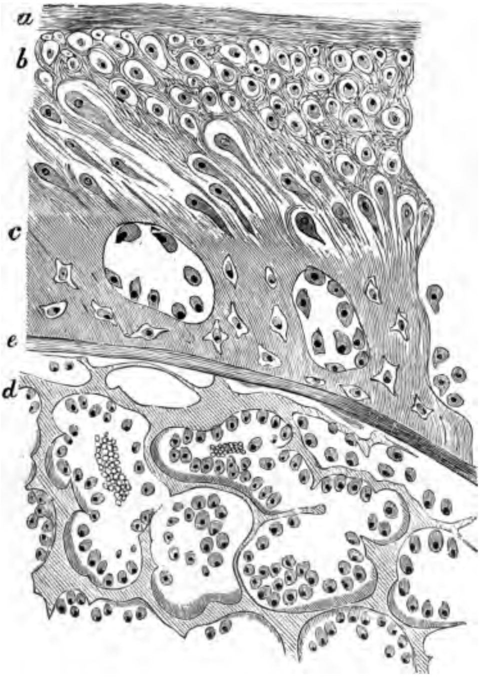


Fig. 53.—From a Transverse Section through the Tibia of Fœtal Kitten.

a, Fibrous layer of the periosteum; *b*, osteogenetic layer of the periosteum; *c*, periosteal bone; *d*, calcified cartilage not covered yet by bone; below this layer the trabeculæ of calcified cartilage covered with plates of bone—shaded darkly in the figure; *e*, boundary between periosteal and endochondral bone. (*Atlas.*)

of the end of the shaft, and this is not capable of further lengthening.

72. Following the development of a tubular bone after the above mentioned stage 4, we find that the spongy bone once formed is not a permanent structure;

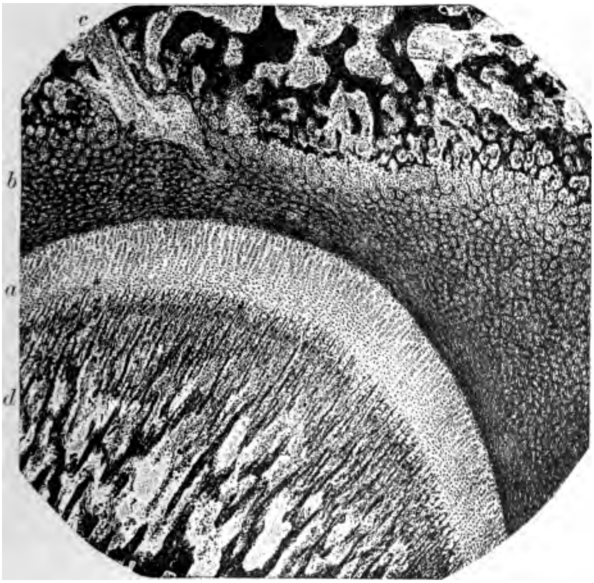


Fig. 54.—From a Section through the Intermediate Cartilage of Femur of a Fœtus. Low magnifying power. (*From a photograph by Mr. A. Pringle.*)

***a*, Intermediate** cartilage ; *b*, cartilage of the epiphysis ; *c*, spongy bone of epiphysis ; *d*, spongy bone at the end of the shaft.

but becomes gradually absorbed altogether, and this process also starts from the points of ossification. Thus a gradual enlargement and ultimate fusion of the marrow cavities of the spongy endochondral bone into one continuous cavity takes place. This represents the rudiment of the future central marrow cavity of the shaft. Simultaneously with, or somewhat previous to, this absorption of the endochondral bone, new bone of the nature of *spongy bone is deposited directly by the osteogenetic layer of the periosteum on the outer surface of the endochondral bone.* This also commences at the centre of ossification, and proceeds from here gradually to further points. This is the first rudiment of the *periosteal bone* of the shaft (Figs. 52, 53). It is formed without the intervention of cartilage directly by the osteoblasts of the osteogenetic layer. And as fresh masses of osteoblasts become developed by division, new layers of spongy bone are formed by the change of the former into bone matrix and bone cells, and the old trabeculæ become increased in thickness. In the meshes or Haversian spaces of this new spongy periosteal bone the same tissue is to be found that constitutes the osteogenetic layer of the periosteum, the one being derived from, and continuous with, the other.

In these Haversian spaces concentric lamellæ of bone substance become subsequently formed by the osteoblasts, while at the same time the Haversian spaces, being narrowed in by the deposit of the concentric lamellæ, are transformed into the Haversian canals. The original spongy bone represents, therefore, the ground substance (primary, or ground lamellæ), in which, or rather in the spaces of which, the secondary deposit of the concentric lamellæ or Haversian systems of bone lamellæ takes place, by which deposit the spongy bone becomes transformed into compact bone. This process is farthest advanced in the middle of the thickness of the shaft, and least near the periosteum. When this compact bone is again absorbed—*e.g.* that next the medullary cavity of the shaft of a long bone—the concentric lamellæ are first absorbed, the Haversian canal being in this way widened out and again transformed into a Haversian space.

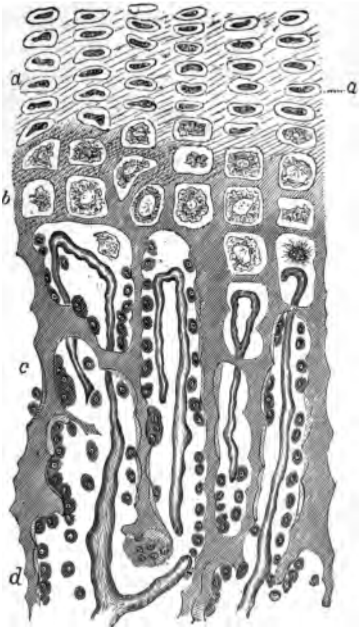


Fig. 55.—From a Longitudinal Section of Femur of Rabbit, through the part in which the intermediate cartilage joins the end of the shaft. (*Atlas.*)

a, Intermediate cartilage; *b*, zone of calcified cartilage; *c*, zone in which the calcified trabeculæ of cartilage become gradually invested in osseous substance, shaded light in the figure; the spaces between the trabeculæ contain marrow, and the capillary blood-vessels are seen here to end in loops; *d*, in this zone there is more bone formed; the greater amount the farther away from this zone.

While, then, the bone first deposited by the periosteum is of a spongy character, and gradually becomes transformed into compact, the reverse is going on at the same time near the marrow cavity, inasmuch as compact bone is here changed into spongy bone, and this ultimately disappears and becomes absorbed by the marrow.

73. At birth all the primary endochondral bone has already disappeared by absorption from the centre of the shaft, and the bone present is all of periosteal origin. At the extremity of the shaft, however, the spongy bone is all endochondral

bone, and it continues to grow into the intermediate cartilage as stated above, so long as the bone grows as a whole (Fig. 55). Of course the parts of this spongy bone nearest to the centre of the shaft are the oldest, and ultimately disappear by absorption into the central medullary cavity. In the epiphysis the spongy bone is also endochondral bone, and its formation is connected with the deep layer of the articular cartilage, but more so with the hyaline cartilage separating the epiphysial spongy bone from the intermediate cartilage (*see* *c* of Fig. 54).

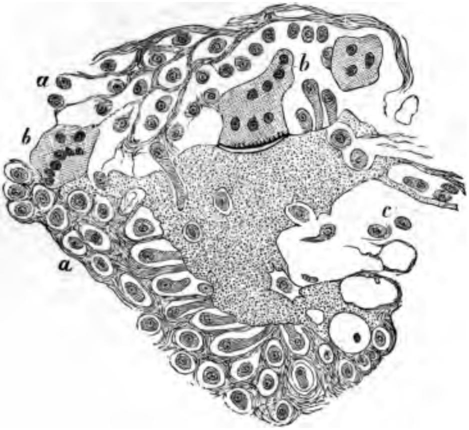


Fig. 56.—Small mass of Bone Substance in the Periosteum of the Lower Jaw of a Human Fœtus. (*Atlas.*)

a, Osteogenetic layer of periosteum ; *b*, multinucleated giant cells, myeloplaxes. The one in the middle of the upper margin is an osteoclast, whereas the smaller one at the left upper corner appears concerned in the formation of bone. Above *c* the osteoblast cells become surrounded by osseous substance and thus become converted into bone cells.

Underneath the periosteum and on the surface of the spongy endochondral bone at the extremity of the shaft, the periosteal bone is represented only by a thin layer, extending as far as the periosteum reaches —*e.g.* to the margin of the articular cartilage.

74. **Intermembranous formation.**—All

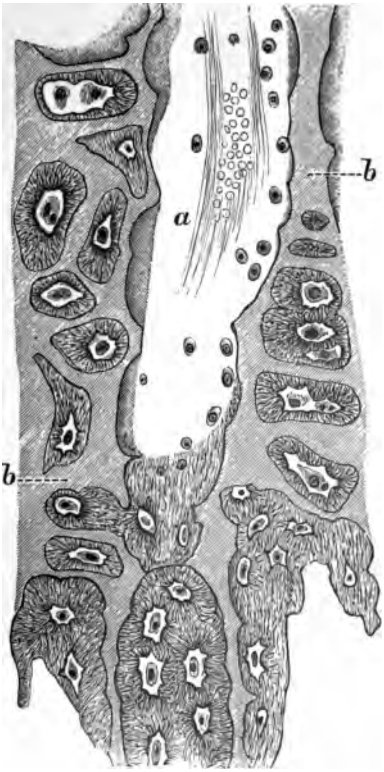


Fig. 57.—From a Longitudinal Section through the Spongy Bone of Shaft, near the intermediary cartilage, of Fœtal Kitten, showing the formation of osseous substance on the calcified cartilage. (*Atlas.*)

a, Marrow space, with blood-vessel; *b*, calcified cartilage, covered with isolated or confluent zones of new osseous substance, consisting of fibrillated bone matrix, bone lacuna, and in it a bone cell.

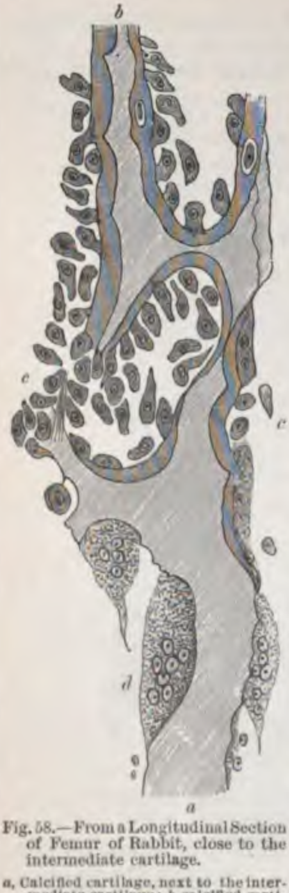


Fig. 58.—From a Longitudinal Section of Femur of Rabbit, close to the intermediate cartilage.

a, Calcified cartilage, next to the intermediate cartilage; *b*, calcified cartilage covered with thin layer of bone; *c*, marrow spaces containing osteoblasts, forming bone on the calcified cartilage; *d*, myeloplaxes (chondroclasts).

bones not preformed in the embryo as cartilage are developed directly from the osteogenetic layer of the periosteum in the manner of the *periosteal bone* described on p. 80. Here also the new bone is at first spongy bone, which in its deeper or older layers gradually becomes converted into compact bone.

In all instances during embryonic life and after birth the growth of a bone in thickness takes place after the manner of *periosteal* or *intermembranous bone;* this is at first spongy, but is gradually converted into compact bone.

75. All osseous substance is formed in the embryo and after birth by the *osteoblasts*, or marrow cells (Gegenbaur, Waldeyer): each osteoblast giving origin to a zone of osseous matrix, and remaining in the centre of this as a nucleated protoplasmic remnant, which gradually becomes branched and transformed into a bone cell. The

osseous matrix is at first a soft fibrillar tissue, but is gradually and uniformly impregnated with lime salts. This impregnation always starts from the centre of ossification (Fig. 57).

76. Wherever in the embryo or adult, in health or disease, absorption of calcified cartilage or of osseous substance is going on, we meet with the multinucleated large protoplasmic cells called the *myeloplaxes* of Robin. Kölliker showed them to be important for the absorption of bone matrix, and called them therefore *osteoclasts* (Fig. 56). For cartilage they may be called chondroclasts (Fig. 58). When concerned in the absorption we find these myeloplaxes situated in smaller or larger pits, which seem to have been produced by them; these absorption pits or lacunæ on the surface of bones are called *Howship's lacunæ.* They invariably contain numbers of osteoclasts. It can, however, be shown that myeloplaxes are also concerned in the formation of bone by giving origin to a number of new osseous zones with their bone cells. In the earliest stages of development of the fœtal jaw this process is seen with great distinctness (Fig. 56).

77. **Dentine** forms the chief part of a tooth. It consists of a petrified matrix in which are numbers of perpendicularly arranged canals—the *dentinal tubes*—containing the *dentinal fibres.* It is in some respects similar to bone, although differing from it in certain essentials. It is similar inasmuch as it is developed in like manner by some peculiarly transformed embryonic connective tissue—viz. by the tissue of the embryonic tooth papilla—and inasmuch as cells are concerned in the production both of the petrified matrix (impregnated with lime salts) and of the processes of the cells contained in its canals—the dentinal fibres. The details of structure and distribution will be described in connection with the teeth.

CHAPTER VIII.

NON-STRIPED MUSCULAR TISSUE.

78. THIS tissue consists of nucleated cells, which, unlike amœboid cells, are contractile in one definite direction, becoming shorter and thicker during contraction.

The *cells* are *elongated*, *spindle-shaped*, or *band-like* (Fig. 59), and drawn out at each extremity into a longer or shorter, generally single, but occasionally branched, tapering process. Each cell includes an *oval nucleus*, which is flattened if the cell it belongs to is flattened. The cell substance is a pale, homogeneous-looking or longitudinally striated substance.

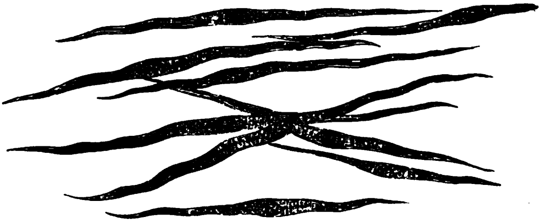


Fig. 59.—Non-striped Muscular Fibres, isolated. (*Atlas.*)

The cross-markings indicate corrugations of the elastic sheath of the individual fibres.

During extreme contraction the nucleus may become more or less plicated, so that its outline becomes wavy or zig-zag.

It has been shown by Klein in certain preparations

—*e.g.* the non-striped muscle cells of the mesentery of the newt—that each muscle cell consists of a delicate *elastic sheath*, inside of which is a *bundle* of *minute fibrils* which cause the longitudinal striation of the cell. These fibrils are the contractile portion; and they are contractile towards the nucleus, with whose intranuclear reticulum they are intimately connected. When the cell is contracted its sheath becomes transversely corrugated (Fig. 60).

79. The non-striped muscular cells are aggregated into smaller or larger *bundles* by an interstitial albuminous homogeneous cement substance, the cells being imbricated with their extremities. The bundles may form a *plexus*, or they may be aggregated by fibrous connective tissue into larger or smaller *groups*, and these again into continuous masses or *membranes*. In the muscular coat of the bladder of the frog, in the choroidal portion of the ciliary muscle, in the arrector pili, in the muscular tissue of the scrotum, very well marked plexuses of bundles of non-striped muscular cells may be met with. In the muscularis mucosæ of the stomach and intestines, in the outer muscular coat of the same organs, in the uterus, bladder, etc., occur continuous membranes of non-striped muscular tissue.

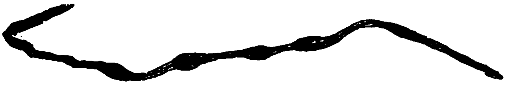


Fig. 60.—Non-striped Muscular Cell of Mesentery of Newt. (*Atlas.*)

Showing several places where the muscular substance appears contracted, thickened. At these places the corrugations of the sheath are marked.

When the muscular cells form larger bundles they are more or less pressed against one another, and therefore in a cross-section appear of a polygonal outline.

80. Non-striped muscular tissue is found in the

following places: In the muscularis mucosæ of the œsophagus, stomach, small and large intestine; in the outer muscular coat of the lower two-thirds or half of the human œsophagus; in that of the stomach, small and large intestine; in the tissue of the pelvis and outer capsule of the kidney; in the muscular coat of the ureter, bladder, and urethra; in the tubules of the epididymis, in the vas deferens, vesiculæ seminalis and prostate; in the corpora cavernosa and spongiosa; in the tissue of the ovary and in the broad ligament; in the muscular coat of the oviduct, the uterus and vagina; in the posterior part of the wall of the trachea; in the large and small bronchi, in the alveolar ducts and infundibula of the lung; in the pleura pulmonalis (guinea-pig); in the peritoneum of the frog and newt, in the upper part of the upper eyelid, and in the fissura orbitalis; in the sphincter and dilator pupillæ, and the ciliary muscle; in the capsule and trabeculæ of the spleen, and the trabeculæ of some of the lymphatic glands; in the arrectores pilorum, and sweat glands of the skin, the tunica dartos of the scrotum; in the tissue of the nipple of the breast; in the large ducts of the salivary and pancreatic glands; and in the muscular coat of the gall bladder, the hepatic and cystic duct. The aorta and the arteries have a large amount of non-striped muscular tissue, the veins and lymphatics less.

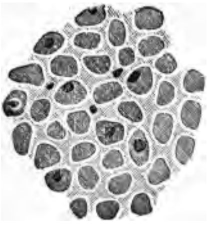


Fig. 61.–From a Transverse Section through Bundles of Non-striped Muscular Tissue of the Intestine.

The muscular cells being spindle-shaped are cut at various heights; the large corpuscles of the figure correspond to the middle, the small ones to the extremities of the muscle cells. (*Atlas.*)

81. As regards length, the muscular cells vary within considerable limits (from $\frac{1}{500}$ to 0·5 millimeter), those of the intestine, stomach, respiratory, urinary,

and genital organs being very long as compared with those of the blood-vessels, which are sometimes only twice or thrice as long as they are broad, and at the same time branched at their extremities.

Non-striped muscular tissue is richly supplied with blood-vessels, the capillaries forming oblong meshes, though their number is not so great as in striped muscle. The nerves of non-striped muscle are all derived from the sympathetic ; their distribution and termination will be described in a future chapter

CHAPTER IX.

STRIPED MUSCULAR TISSUE.

82. THE striped muscular tissue is composed of long *cylindrical fibres,* some measuring in length as much as $1\frac{1}{2}$–2 inches, others are much shorter ; their thickness varies between $\frac{1}{200}$ to $\frac{1}{600}$ of an inch. The

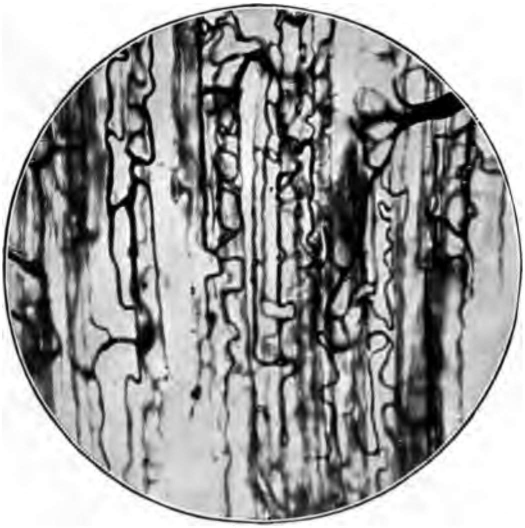


Fig. 62.—Striped Muscular Fibres of the Tongue of a Guinea-pig, of which the blood-vessels have been injected with carmine gelatine. Owing to the contracted state of the muscular fibres the capillaries are much twisted and wavy ; in several places the "safety receptacles" are well shown. (*From a microphoto., moderately magnified.*)

fibres are regularly transversely striated, and are therefore called the striped or striated muscular fibres By fibrous connective tissue they are grouped together so as to form larger or smaller bundles—*muscular fasciculi;* the connective tissue surrounding the bundles is called the *perimysium;* while the delicate connective tissue passing from the perimysium into the bundle, and separating the individual muscular fibres from one another, is called the *endomysium.* The perimysium is the carrier of the larger vascular and nervous branches, while the endomysium contains the capillaries and the terminal nerves. The capillaries form very rich networks with elongated meshes, and are always situated between the individual muscle fibres. The capillaries and veins appear very wavy and twisted in the contracted bundles, and straighter in the uncontracted bundles (Fig. 62). The small vessels are provided here and there with peculiar saccular dilatations, which act as a sort of safety receptacle for the blood when, during a sudden intense contraction, it is pressed out from some of the capillaries.

83. Each muscular fibre during contraction becomes shorter and thicker. In the living uninjured muscular fibres, spontaneously or after the application of a stimulus, a contraction starts at one point and passes over the whole muscular fibre like a wave—*contraction wave*—the progress of which is noticeable by the thickening rapidly shifting along the fibre, the part behind resuming its previous diameter.

84. A striped muscular fibre consists of (1) a delicate hyaline elastic sheath, the *sarcolemma,* and (2) the *muscular contents.* It is the structure of the latter which has given origin to a variety of theories, owing to optical difficulties in examining fresh and living fibres, and owing to the varied changes it is liable to undergo when acted upon by many reagents.

In the following we shall adopt the view enunciated by Rollett during recent years; we think that his conclusions are based on extensive observations and study of muscular fibres in vertebrates and invertebrates under the best conditions, and his conclusions harmonise best with the classical observations of Bowman, Brücke, Cohnheim, and Engelmann, and with observations which can be verified by careful study of fresh muscular fibres.

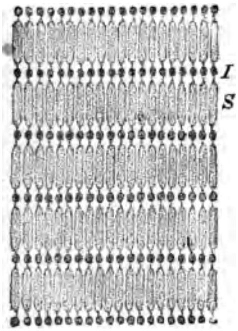


Fig. 63.—Part of a Muscular Fibre of Geotrupes sylvaticus, showing its composition of fibrillæ. (*Rollett.*)

I, Intermediate disc (Krause's membrane); S, sarcous elements.

85. The contents of a muscular fibre consist of two principal parts (Figs. 63, 64): (*a*) the *fibrillæ*, or rhabdia of Kühne; and (*b*) the *sarcoplasm* or interfibrillar substance, a hyaline or faintly granular substance, having resemblances to protoplasm, and acting as the matrix for the fibrillæ. The fibrillæ extend in a longitudinal direction parallel to the long axis of the muscular fibre, and they are grouped together into bands, strands, or tubes, called the *muscle columns;* the latter are aggregated into larger groups. The sarcoplasm fills up all interstices between the groups of the muscle columns, between the columns of each group, and between the fibrillæ of each column. The amount of sarcoplasm between the groups of columns is generally greater than between the columns of each group. During growth and regeneration of muscular fibres in the adult the collections of nucleated sarcoplasm on the surface —*i.e.* underneath the sarcolemma—become conspicuously increased in vertebrate

muscular fibres, both in number and size ; and they are the material from which muscular fibrillæ are formed. Special collections of nucleated sarcoplasm are found at the termination of the motor nerve fibre in the muscular fibre (*see* below).

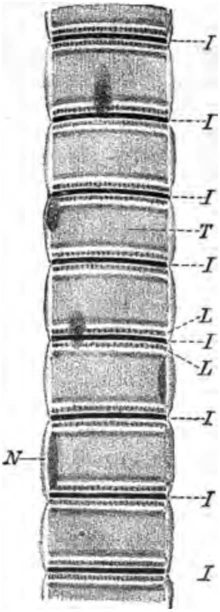


Fig. 64.—Muscular Fibre, stained with hæmatoxylin, of Staphylinus cæsareus. (*Rollett.*)

I, Intermediate disc (Krause's membrane or Dobie's layer): L, secondary disc (placed within the lateral disc or Flögel's layer); T, tranverse disc (sarcous elements); N, nucleus of muscle corpuscle.

On observing a cross section through fresh or well-preserved muscular fibres, the sarcoplasm is seen as transparent lines subdividing the muscular contents, which appear dim like ground glass, into small more or less polyhedral areas, the areas of Cohnheim. These areas are the cross-sections of the muscular columns, and are therefore made up of a number of granules, the optical cross-sections of the constituent fibrillæ. The muscular columns appear aggregated by larger accumulations of sarcoplasm into larger or smaller groups ; and between the groups the sarcoplasm is again greater than between the fibrillæ of each column, and in this respect there exists the greatest variety between the different animals. In the perfectly fresh condition the amount of sarcoplasm between the fibrillæ of a column is in some cases insignificant, and almost appears absent from place to place.

The sarcoplasm shows also other differences of distribution; in the muscular fibres of many insects it generally forms a cylindrical accumulation in the centre of the muscular fibres, containing spherical nuclei; from it thinner septa pass between the groups of muscular columns. In vertebrate muscular fibres the sarcoplasm forms small plate-like or angular collections on the surface of the muscular contents—*i.e.* immediately under the sarcolemma. These collections include spherical, or more generally oval, nuclei, and are called the *muscle corpuscles.* The whole sarcoplasm must be considered as a sort of protoplasmic basis, and the muscle corpuscles as the nucleated accumulations of it.

86. Each fibrilla shows along the whole length of the muscular fibre regular alterations, as regards both aspect and thickness of its substance, and accordingly can be considered as consisting of different portions following each other endwise, and repeating themselves uniformly and in regular manner throughout the whole length and thickness of the muscular fibre. These portions are the *sarcous elements* of Bowman, dim, homogeneous rods or prisms forming the chief parts; between each two successive sarcous elements of the same fibrilla, at equal distance, is a dark granule, sometimes double, to which the end of each sarcous element is joined by a thin bridge. In the fresh state the sarcous elements are prisms, and those of contiguous fibrillæ, almost touch each other at their sides, so that little or no sarcoplasm intervenes between them here; but when the sarcous elements shrink —*e.g.* after death or after hardening reagents, or sometimes even during life and during contraction—they are more or less hourglass-shaped, and are separated by thin layers of sarcoplasm from those of contiguous fibrillæ. The bridge by which each end of a sarcous element is joined to the granule being much thinner than the latter, there is more sarco-

plasm present in the layer containing the bridge; and since the sarcoplasm is more transparent than either the sarcous elements or the granules of the fibrillæ, the muscular fibre as a whole shows a conspicuous transparent layer or disc between each layer of the dark granules and each layer of the sarcous elements. This causes the transverse striation. The layer of the dark granules corresponds to *the line of Dobie*, or *the line of Amici*, or *the intermediate disc of Engelmann*, or *the membrane of Krause.* The layer or disc of sarcoplasm in which the bridges are placed, which join the sarcous elements to the granules of the intermediate disc, is the *lateral disc.* The layer or disc of sarcous elements corresponds to the *transverse disc.* In many muscular fibres of insects, notably in those of the crab (Rutherford), there occurs in each fibrilla within the lateral disc a short rod-like thickening midway between the sarcous element and the dark granule; the layer or

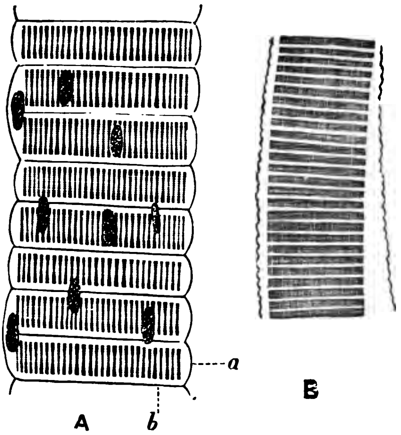
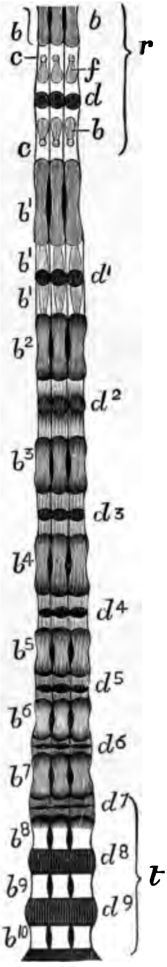


Fig. 65.—Striped Muscular Fibres of the Water Beetle (Hydrophilus). (*Atlas.*)

a, Sarcolemma; *b*, Krause's membrane. The sarcous elements are well seen. In A the oblong nuclei of the muscle corpuscles are shown. In B the sarcolemma has become unnaturally raised from the muscular contents. The contractile discs are well shown; so also are the sarcous elements.



disc of these rods or granules forms the *secondary disc*, or the layer of Flögel.

87. A typical muscular fibre shows then, owing to the differentiation of each fibrilla into the above portions, the following layers in regular alternation throughout the thickness of the fibre: (1) *The dark intermediate disc, Dobie's line*, or *Krause's membrane;* (2) *the transparent lateral disc;* (3) *the dim transverse disc* of sarcous elements. Then follows another transparent lateral disc, and then again the intermediate disc.

As stated above, in some fibres the line of Dobie is a double row of granules, and the transparent lateral disc contains a line of granules, Flögel's layer.

The intermediate disc appears to be intimately connected with the sarcolemma; hence Krause gave it the name of a membrane. When a muscular fibre contracts during life, or when it shrinks after death, the sarcolemma shows regular bulgings between each two Krause's membranes; at these latter the sarco-

Fig. 66.—Three Fibrillæ of Crab's Muscle, showing the successive stages from complete relaxation (*r*) to complete contraction (*t*). (*From Rutherford's "Structure and Contraction of Striped Muscular Fibre."*)

b—*b* 10, The various appearances of the sarcous elements; *d*—*d* 9, the appearances of Dobie's granules; *f*, Flögel's granules; *c*, clear layer (lateral disc) between Flögel's granules and end of sarcous elements.

lemma is drawn in. The part of a muscular fibre between two neighbouring Krause's membranes and the corresponding portion of the sarcolemma is

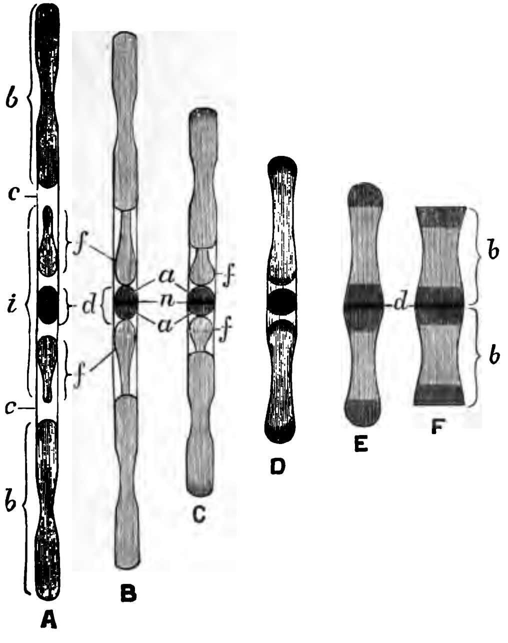


Fig. 67.—Semi-schematic representation of portions of Fibrils of Crab's Muscle, showing the appearances of the fibrillar segments in the several stages from complete relaxation at A to complete contraction at F. (*After Rutherford.*)

A—*b*, Bowman's sarcous elements; *i*, intermediate discs, comprising *d*, granules of Dobie; *f*, granules of Flögel; *c*, clear layer between it and end of sarcous element (lateral disc). B, First stage of contraction; the clear layer between Dobie's granules and Flögel's granules on the one side. and Flögel's granules and the end of the sarcous elements has disappeared. F, complete contraction, showing sarcous elements completely shortened; accumulation of chromatic substance at the ends, leaving the intervening shaft clear—Hensen's median disc.

spoken of as a muscular compartment of Krause (*See* Fig. 65, A).

The lateral disc contains in some muscular fibres (*see* above) a layer of granules or rods, the secondary disc, or Flögel's layer; but each of these granules or rods is joined to a granule of the intermediate disc, or Dobie's layer, on the one hand, and to the end of a sarcous element on the other; so that in reality it is a thickening of the bridges connecting the ends of a sarcous element to the granule of the intermediate disc.

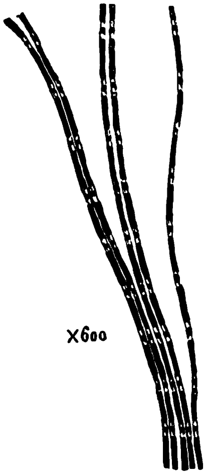


Fig. 68.—Primitive Muscular Fibrillæ from the Crab's Muscle. (*After Rutherford.*)

The transverse disc, or the layer of sarcous elements, shows in muscular fibres during contraction (*see* below) or after hardening, or after treatment with reagents, a median transverse transparency, due to the substance of the sarcous elements being here thinner, as mentioned above. This corresponds to the *median disc* of Hensen. Rutherford, however, pointed out that this appearance is due to the stainable or chromatic substance of each sarcous element accumulating at the ends (Figs. 66 and 67).

In muscular fibres treated with alcohol, the connection between the sarcous elements and the rest of the fibrillæ is not recognisable; hence the muscular fibre seems split up into discs, apparently not connected with one another (*see* Fig. 65).

The reticulation described by Melland, Marshall, and others is due to coagulation of the sarcoplasma brought about by certain hardening reagents; the sarcoplasma between the granules of the layer of Dobie or Krause would thus form a reticulated disc extending transversely across the muscular fibre, and to it are joined lines of coägulated sarcoplasma extending longitudinally between the sarcous elements of the fibrillæ (Fig. 69).

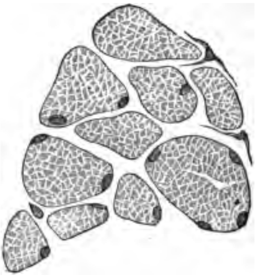


Fig. 69.—Striped Muscular Fibres in Cross-section. (*Altas.*)

Each fibre is limited by the sarcolemma; the muscular substance is differentiated into Cohnheim's areas.

88. During contraction the transverse striation of the fibre becomes much narrower, the different discs becoming thinner in the long, broader in the transverse direction of the fibre. In the naturally contracted portion of a muscular fibre —*i.e.* at the point of the passage of the contraction wave—the stripes alter their character, inasmuch as at the end of the transverse and lateral discs the fibres become darker, while the middle of the discs of sarcous elements becomes lighter. Whether the former change —*i.e.* of the lateral discs— is due to compression, while the latter—*i.e.* of the sarcous elements—is due to an imbibition with water squeezed out of the sarcoplasma in the lateral discs, as is maintained by Engelmann, has not been fully established. Rutherford, on the other hand, points out, what appears a good explanation of this phenomenon—viz. of the so-called reversal of the stripes during contraction—that during contraction the chromatic substance of the sarcous elements, together with Flögel's granules and Dobie's granules, forms one shortened mass; hence the darkness of these portions in each fibrilla. We reproduce

here from Rutherford drawings illustrating these points (Figs. 66 and 67).

Rollett considers, with Brücke, Kölliker, Engelmann, and many others, that the fibrillæ are the contractile parts; while Kühne, Rámón y Cajal, and others, are inclined to think that the sarcoplasma—which Kühne calls sarcoglia—is *the* contractile part, while the fibrillæ—*i.e.* the rhabdia of Kühne—or rather the sarcous elements, are elastic elements.

The differentiation into intermediate, lateral, and transverse discs, possessing the above-named different structure and optical properties, produces the transverse striation of the muscular fibres; but it must be also added that a fibre, though homogeneous but moniliform (by shrinking or naturally so), would show a transverse striation (Haycraft).

89. In the embryo the muscular fibres are developed from spindle-shaped nucleated cells (Remak, Weissmann, Kölliker). One spindle-shaped cell with an oval nucleus grows rapidly in length and thickness, its nucleus divides repeatedly, and the offspring become shifted from one another as the cell continues to grow in length. Thus a long spindle-shaped mass of sarcoplasma, with numerous nuclei, is the result.

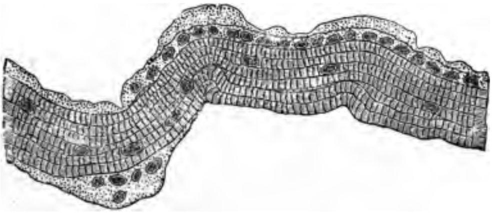


Fig 70.—Striped Muscular Fibre of the Diaphragm of a Guinea-pig. (*Atlas.*)

The muscle corpuscles are much increased in size and numbers; they are probably used here for the new formation of muscular substance.

This sarcoplasma in the middle of the cell becomes converted into fibrillæ, and this formation continues, while the sarcoplasma as a whole increases. The muscle corpuscles of the adult fibres are remains of this sarcoplasma (Fig. 70).

At all times in adult life, when muscular fibres increase in thickness, as, for instance, when muscle is kept at constant work, this increase is due to increase of sarcoplasma, and part-conversion of this into fibrillæ.

Paneth described in fishes, amphibia, birds, and mammals a mode of new formation of muscular fibres which supplements the one above described. While in the embryo the first muscular fibres develop from spindle-shaped cells in the manner stated above, muscular fibres are also newly formed from spherical or oval cells—*sarcoplasts;* in the interior of these cells, the protoplasm is converted into contractile substance, which is capable of enlarging and elongating, and becoming converted into striped muscular fibres. According to Kölliker and Weissmann, muscle fibres divide longitudinally also, so that one fibre is capable of giving origin to a bundle of thin fibres each of which continues to increase in thickness (*see* muscle spindles below).

90. The striped muscular fibres, taken as a whole, are, as a rule, spindle-shaped, becoming gradually thinner towards their ends. They are branched in some exceptional cases—*e.g.* in the tongue; here the extremities of the muscular fibres, passing into the mucous membrane, become richly branched previous to their termination amongst the connective-tissue fibres of the mucosa.

91. Muscular fibres terminate in tendons, either by the whole fibre passing into a bundle of connective-tissue fibrils (Fig. 71), or by the fibre ending abruptly with a blunt, conical end, and becoming here fixed to

a bundle of connective-tissue fibrils. The individual fibres have only, as has been mentioned above, a limited length; so that, following an anatomical bundle from one end to the other, we find at many points along the fasciculus some muscle fibres terminating, others originating. This takes place in the following way: the contents of a fibre suddenly terminate, while the sarcolemma, as a fine thread, becomes interwoven with the fine connective tissue between the muscular fibres. Many muscles contain peculiar spindle-shaped enlargements; these are the *muscle buds* of Kölliker or the *muscle spindles* of Kühne; each spindle is a bundle of fine striped muscular fibres formed by length division of a mother fibre, and enclosed within a thickened connective - tissue sheath, which sheath is continuous with the laminated connective - tissue sheath (Henle's sheath) of nerve fibres—in fact, the *spindles* occur at the entrance of certain nerves into the muscle bundle (*see* nerve endings).

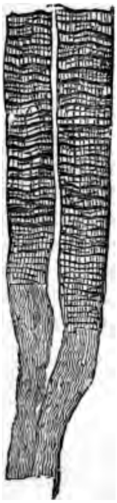


Fig. 71. — Two Striped Muscular Fibres passing into Bundles of Fibrous Tissue. (*Handbook.*)
(Termination in Tendon.)

92. The striped muscular fibres of the heart (auricles and ventricles) and of the cardiac ends of the large veins (the pulmonary veins included) differ from other striped muscular fibres in the following respects:—(1) They possess no distinct sarcolemma. (2) Their muscle corpuscles are in the centre of the fibres, and more numerous than in ordinary fibres. (3) They are very richly branched, each fibre giving off all along its course short branches, or continually dividing into smaller fibres and forming a close

network (Fig. 72). A transverse section through a bundle of such fibres shows, therefore, their cross-sections irregular in shape and size. (4) Each nucleus of a muscle corpuscle occupies the centre of one prismatic portion; each fibre and its branches thus appear composed of a single row of such prismatic portions, and they seem separated from one another—at any rate in an early stage—by a septum of a transparent substance.

93. Some muscular fibres are either markedly pale or markedly red (Ranvier); in the former (*e.g.* quadratus lumborum, or adductor magnus femoris of rabbit) the transverse striation is more distinct, and the muscular corpuscles less numerous, than in the latter (*e.g.* semi-tendinosus of rabbit, diaphragm). Here the longitudinal striation appears very distinct, but these differences are not constant in the same fibres of other animals or of man (E. Meyer).

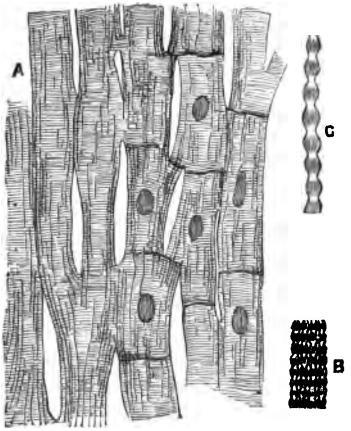


Fig. 72.—Striped Muscular Fibres of the Heart.

A, Showing the branching of the fibres and their anastomosis in networks; B, part of a thin fibre, highly magnified, showing the moniliform primitive fibrillæ; C, one primitive fibrilla more highly magnified.

94. Brücke has shown that striped muscular fibres are doubly refractive, or anisotropous, like uniaxial positive crystals (rock crystal), the optical axis coinciding with the long axis of the fibres. The

sarcoplasma is isotropous, the fibrillæ alone being anisotropous; of these the sarcous elements were the first recognised by Brücke to be doubly refractive. They are, however, not the ultimate optical elements, but must be considered as composed of disdiaclasts, the real doubly refractive elements (Brücke).

CHAPTER X.

THE HEART AND BLOOD-VESSELS.

95. (A) THE **heart** consists of an outer serous covering, *the visceral pericardium* or *exocard*, an inner lining, *the endocardium*, and between the two the *muscular substance* (Fig. 73). Underneath the pericardium is a thin layer of connective tissue called the subpericardial tissue.

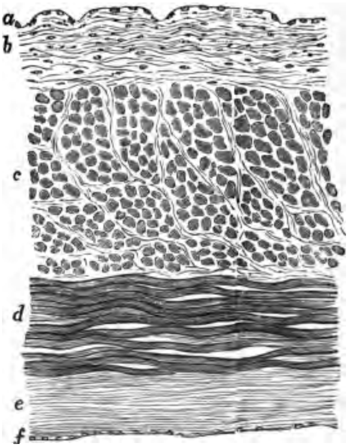


Fig. 73.—Transverse Section through the Auricle of the Heart of a Child.

a, Endothelium lining the endocardium; *b*, endocardium; *c*, muscular bundles cut transversely; *d*, muscular bundles cut longitudinally; *e*, pericardial covering; *f*, endothelium.

The free surface of both the pericardium and endocardium has an endothelial covering, like other serous membranes—*i.e.* a single layer of transparent nucleated cell plates of a more or less polygonal or irregular shape. The groundwork of these two membranes is fibrous connective tissue, forming a dense texture, and in addition there are many elastic fibres arranged as networks. Capillary blood-vessels, lymphatic vessels and small branches of nerve fibres are met with in the pericardial layer. The subpericardial tissue consists of trabeculæ of fibrous connective tissue, which are continuous with the intermuscular connective tissue of the muscular wall of the heart. The former contains in many places groups of fat cells.

96. On the free surface of the papillary muscles, in some parts of the surface of the trabeculæ carneæ, and at the insertion of the valves, the endocardium is thickened by tendinous connective tissue. Each valve is covered with a prolongation of the endocard, but the main body of the valve is dense fibrous connective tissue; on the surface of this connective-tissue matrix is a somewhat looser connective tissue, containing also a few elastic fibres.

All the cordæ tendineæ and the valves are of course covered on their free surfaces with endothelium.

Special tracts of muscle fibres occur in the subendocardial tissue.

The *fibres of Purkinje* are peculiar beaded fibres occurring in the subendocardial tissue in some mammals—*e.g.* the sheep and the horse—and birds (not in man). They are thin, transversely striped, muscular fibres possessed of local thickenings; the central part of each thickening is a continuous mass of protoplasm, with nuclei at regular intervals, as is the case with some skeletal muscular fibres of insects. These beaded fibres of Purkinje must not be confused with the *muscle spindles* of Kühne.

97. The muscular fibres forming the proper wall of the heart, the structure of which has been described in the previous chapter, are grouped in bundles separated by vascular fibrous connective tissue. In the ventricles the bundles are aggregated into more or less distinct lamellæ.

Like other striped muscular fibres, those of the wall of the heart are richly supplied with blood-vessels and lymphatics. The endocardium and valves have no blood-vessels of their own, but the pericardium possesses its own system of blood-vessels.

The lymphatics form a pericardial and an endocardial network connected with the lymphatics of the muscular tissue of the heart; here there are lymphatic clefts between the muscular bundles, and also networks of tubular lymphatics.

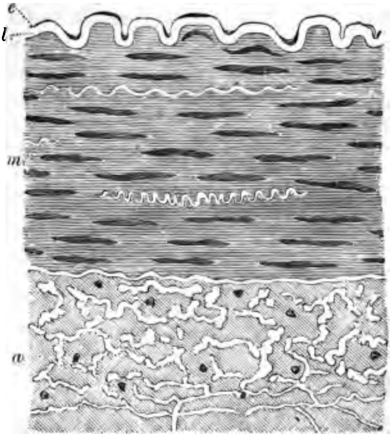


Fig. 74.—From a Transverse Section through the Inferior Mesenteric Artery of the Pig.

e, Endothelial lining; *l*, elastic intima; *m*, muscular media; *a*, adventitia with numerous elastic fibrils, cut in transverse section. (*Atlas.*)

98. The nerve branches of the plexus cardiacus form rich plexuses. In connection with some of them are found numerous collections of ganglion cells or ganglia. These are very numerous in the nerve plexus of the auricular septum of the frog's heart (Ludwig, Bidder), and in the auriculo-ventricular septum of the frog (Dogiel). In man and mammals numerous ganglia are found on the auricular nerve branches, chiefly at the point of junction of the large veins with the heart, Remak's ganglia, and at the boundary between the auricles and the ventricles, Bidder's ganglia.

99. (B) The **arteries** (Fig. 74) consist of: (*a*) an

endothelial layer lining the lumen of the vessel; (*b*) an *intima*, consisting of elastic tissue; (*c*) a *media*, containing a large proportion of non-striped muscular cells arranged chiefly in a transverse, *i.e.* circular manner; and (*d*) an *adventitia* composed chiefly of fibrous connective tissue, with an admixture of networks of elastic fibres.

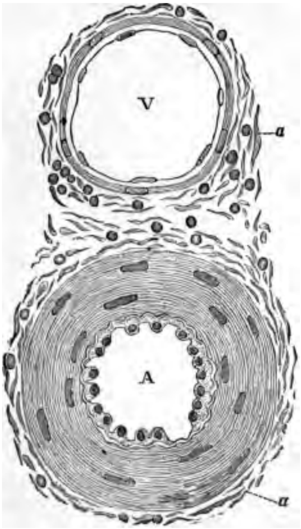


Fig. 75.—Transverse Section through a Microscopic Artery and Vein in the Epiglottis of a Child. (*Atlas.*)

A, The artery, showing the nucleated endothelium, the circular muscular media, and at *a* the fibrous-tissue adventitia; V, the vein, showing the same layers; the media is very much thinner than in the artery.

(*a*) The endothelium is a continuous single layer of flattened elongated cell plates.

(*b*) The intima in the aorta and large arteries is a very complex structure, consisting of an innermost layer of fibrous connective tissue, which is the "*inner longitudinal fibrous layer*" of Remak, outside of which is a more or less longitudinally arranged elastic membrane. This is laminated, and composed of *fenestrated elastic membranes of Henle.* (*See* page 61.) The larger the artery the thicker the intima. In microscopic arteries the intima is a thin fenestrated membrane, the fibres having distinctly a longitudinal arrangement.

(*c*) The media is the chief layer of the wall of the arteries (Fig. 75). It consists of transversely arranged elastic lamellæ (fenestrated membranes and networks of elastic fibres), and between them smaller or larger bundles of circularly arranged muscular cells. The larger the artery the more elastic tissue is there present in the media, the smaller the artery the more muscular tissue. In microscopic branches of arteries the media consists almost entirely of circular non-striped muscle cells with only few elastic fibres.

100. In the last branches of the microscopic arteries the muscular media becomes discontinuous, inasmuch as the (circular) muscular cells are arranged not as a continuous membrane, but as groups of small cells (in a single layer) in a more or less alternate fashion.

When the media contracts, the intima is thrown into longitudinal folds.

The aorta has, in the innermost and in the outermost parts of the media, numbers of longitudinal and oblique muscle cells. According to Bardeleben, all large and middle-sized arteries have an inner longitudinal muscular coat.

101. Between the media and the next outer layer there is, in larger and middle-sized arteries, a special elastic membrane, the *elastica externa* of Henle.

(*d*) The adventitia is a relatively thin fibrous connective-tissue membrane. In large and middle-sized arteries there are numbers of elastic fibres present, especially in the part next to the media; they form networks, and have chiefly a longitudinal direction.

The larger the artery the more insignificant is the adventitia as compared with the thickness of the media.

In microscopic arteries (Fig. 76) the adventitia is represented by thin bundles of fibrous connective tissue and branched connective-tissue cells.

Large and middle-sized arteries possess their own system of blood-vessels (vasa vasorum), situated chiefly in the adventitia and media; lymphatic vessels and lymphatic clefts are also present in these coats.

102. (c) The **veins** differ from the arteries in the greater thinness of their wall. The intima and media are similar to those of arteries, only thinner, both absolutely and relatively. The media contains in most veins circularly arranged muscular fibres; they form a continuous layer, as in the arteries, and there is between them generally more fibrous connective tissue than elastic. The adventitia is usually the thickest coat, and it consists chiefly of fibrous connective tissue (Fig. 75). The smallest veins—*i.e.* before passing into the capillaries—are composed of a lining endothelium, and outside this are delicate bundles of connective tissue forming an adventitia. The valves of the veins are folds, consisting of the endothelium lining the surface, of the whole intima, and of part of the muscular media.

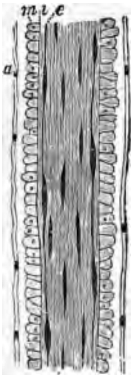


Fig. 76.—Minute Microscopic Artery. (*Atlas.*)

e, Endothelium; *i*, intima; *m*, muscular media, composed of a single layer of circularly-arranged non-striped muscular cells; *a*, adventitia.

103. There are many veins that have no muscular fibres at all—*e.g.* vena jugularis (interna and externa), the vena subclavia, the veins of the bones and retina, and of the membranes of the brain and cord. Those of the gravid uterus have only longitudinal muscular fibres. The vena cava, azygos, hepatica, spermatica interna, renalis and axillaris, possess an inner circular and an outer longitudinal coat. The vena iliaca, cruralis, poplitea, mesenterica, and umbilicalis possess an inner and outer longitudinal and a middle circular

muscular coat. The intima of the venæ pulmonales in man is connective tissue containing circular bundles of non-striped muscular cells (Stieda).

104. The trunk of the venæ pulmonales and venæ cavæ possesses striped muscular fibres, these being continuations of the muscular tissue of the auricles.

105. Hoyer showed that a direct communication exists between arteries and veins without the intervention of capillaries—as in the matrix of the nail, in the tip of the nose and tail of some mammals, in the tip of the fingers and toes of man, in the margin of the ear lobe of dog and cat and rabbit.

In the cavernous tissue of the genital organs veins form large irregular sinuses, the wall of which is formed by fibrous and non-striped muscular tissue.

106. (D) The **capillary blood-vessels** are minute tubes of about $\frac{1}{2000}$ to $\frac{1}{3000}$ of an inch in diameter. Their wall is *a single layer* of transparent *elongated endothelial plates*, united by thin lines of *cement substance* (Fig. 77). Each cell has an oval nucleus; in fact, the wall of the capillaries is merely a continuation of the endothelial membrane lining the arteries and veins.

In some places the capillaries possess a special *adventitia* made up of branched nucleated connective-tissue cells (hyaloidea of frog, choroidea of mammals), or of an endothelial membrane (pia mater of brain and cord, retina and serous membranes), or of adenoid reticulum (lymphatic glands, His).

The smallest capillaries are found in the central nervous system, the largest in the marrow of bone. The capillaries form networks, the richness and arrangement of which vary in the different organs, according to the nature and arrangement of the elements of the tissue (Fig. 78).

107. If capillaries are abnormally distended, as in inflammation, or otherwise injured, the cement substance between the endothelial plates is liable to give way in the shape of minute holes, or *stigmata*,

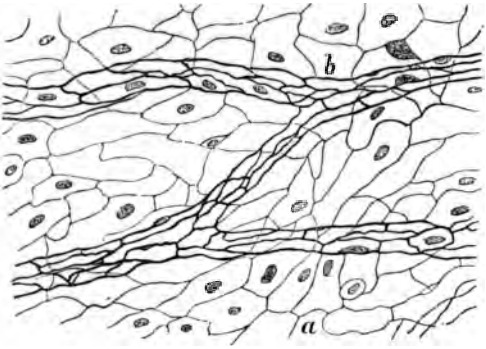


Fig. 77.- From a Preparation of the Peritoneum, stained with Nitrate of Silver. (*Handbook.*)

a, Endothelium on the free surface of the membrane; b, capillary blood vessels in the membrane; their wall is a layer of endothelium.

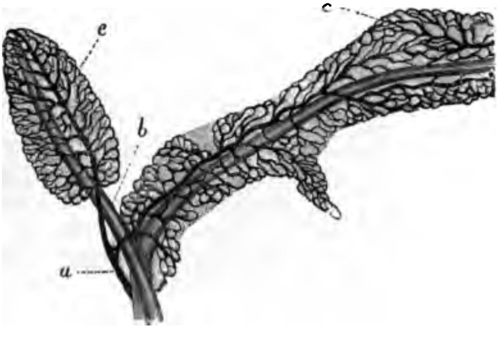


Fig. 78.—Young Fat Tissue of the Omentum, its Blood-vessels injected. *a*, Artery; *b*, vein; *c*, network of capillaries. (*Handbook.*)

which may become larger holes, or *stomata*. The passage of red blood corpuscles (diapedesis) and the migration of white corpuscles in inflammation through the unbroken capillaries and small veins occur through these stigmata and stomata.

108. **Young and growing capillaries,** both of normal and pathological tissues, possess *solid thread-like* shorter or longer *nucleated protoplasmic processes* (Fig. 79), into which the canal of the capillary is gradually prolonged, so that the thread becomes converted into a new capillary branch. Such growing capillaries are capable of contraction (Stricker).

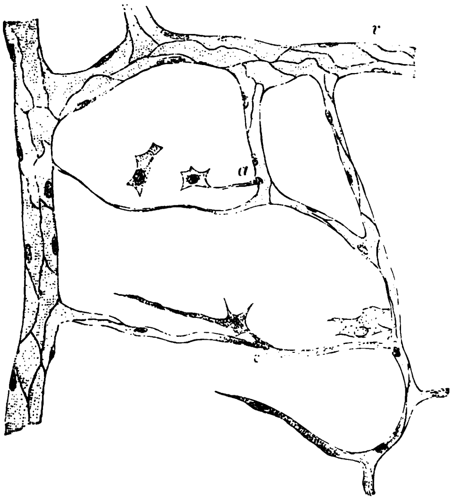


Fig. 79.—From a Preparation of Omentum of Rabbit, after staining with Nitrate of Silver. (*Atlas.*)

v, Minute vein; *a*, solid protoplasmic prolongations of the wall of a capillary, connected with connective-tissue corpuscles; *c*, solid young bud.

All blood-vessels, arteries, veins, and capillaries, in their early stages, both in embryonal and adult life, are of the nature of minute tubes, the wall of which consists of a simple endothelial membrane. In the case of the vessel becoming an artery or vein, cells are added to the outside of the endothelium, thus forming the material for the development of the elastic, muscular, and fibrous connective-tissue elements of the wall.

109. In the first stage, both in the embryo and in the adult, the vessel is represented by solid nucleated protoplasmic cells, spherical, elongated, spindle-shaped, or branched — *vasoformative cells*. Such cells may be isolated and independent of any pre-existing vessel, or they may be solid protoplasmic outgrowths of the endothelial wall of existing capillary vessels (Fig. 80). In both cases they become hollowed out by a process of vacuolation; isolated vacuoles appear at first, but they gradually become confluent, and thus a young vessel is formed, at first very irregular in outline, but gradually acquiring more and more of a tubular form. In the case of

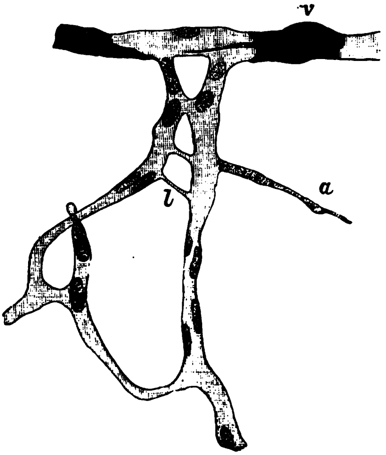


Fig. 80.—Developing Capillary Blood-vessels from the Tail of Tadpole. (*Atlas.*)

v, Capillary vein with clumps of pigment in the wall; *a*, nucleated protoplasmic sprout; *l*, solid anastomosis between two neighbouring capillaries.

an isolated cell, its protoplasmic processes grow by degrees to the nearest capillary, to the wall of which they become fixed, and the cavity of the cell finally opens through such processes into that of the capillary vessel.

The islets or cysts of blood that appear early in the area vasculosa of the embryo are due to vacuolation of spherical or elongated vasoformative cells of the mesoblast, the islets or cysts being composed of a central portion which are blood corpuscles, at first white, then red, and a peripheral protoplasmic nucleated envelope, the future vascular wall. The central nucleated blood cells develop by a process of endogenous division from the original cell protoplasm. The blood cysts, at first isolated, afterwards become connected by protoplasmic processes with other cysts or other vasoformative cells, ultimately forming a network of vessels (Fig. 81).

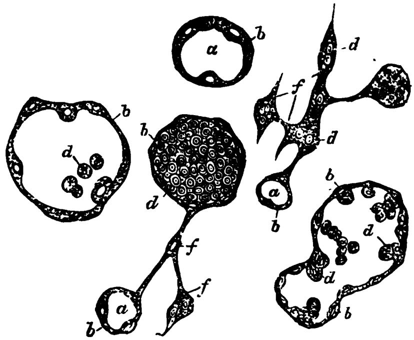


Fig. 81.—Cells from mesoblast of chick's blastoderm undergoing development into blood-vessels in the area vasculosa. (*Handbook.*)

a, Cavity of cell; *b*, cell wall; *f*, cells not yet hollowed out; *d*, blood corpuscles.

The wall of young capillaries is granular-looking protoplasm (the original cell substance), and in it are disposed, in more or less regular fashion, oblong nuclei, derived by multiplication from the nucleus of the original cell. In a later stage, a differentiation takes place in the protoplasmic wall of the capillary into cell plates and cement substance, in such a way that each of the above nuclei appertains to one cell plate, which now represents the final stage in the formation of the capillary. Both in the embryo and in the adult a few isolated nucleated protoplasmic cells, or a few protoplasmic solid processes of an existing capillary, may by active and continued growth give origin to a whole set of new capillaries (Stricker, Affanasieff, Arnold, Klein, Balfour, Ranvier, Leboucq).

CHAPTER XI.

THE LYMPHATIC VESSELS.

110. THE **large lymphatic trunks,** such as the thoracic duct, and the lymphatic vessels passing to and from the lymphatic glands, are thin-walled vessels, similar in structure to arteries. Their lining endothelium is of the same character as that of an artery, and so are the elastic intima and the media with its circular muscular tissue; but these latter are very much thinner than in an artery of the same calibre.

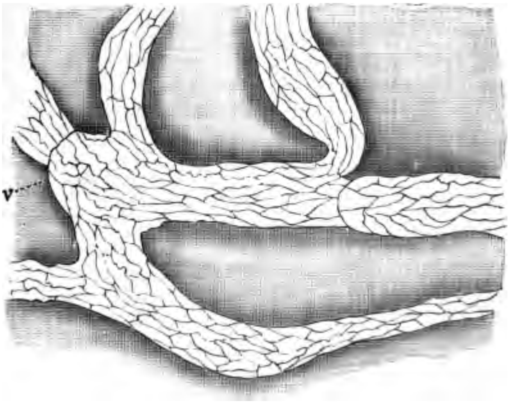


Fig. 82.—Lymphatic Vessels of the Diaphragm of the Dog, stained with Nitrate of Silver. (*Atlas.*)

The endothelium forming the wall of the lymphatics is well shown; *v*, valves.

The adventitia is an exceedingly thin connective-tissue membrane with a few elastic fibres. The valves are semi-lunar folds of the endothelium and intima.

111. The **lymphatics** in the tissues and organs form rich plexuses. They are tubular vessels, the wall of which is, like that of a capillary blood-vessel, a single layer of endothelial plates (Fig. 82). The lymphatic is often many times wider than a blood capillary. The endothelial plates are elongated, but not so long as in a blood capillary, with more or less sinuous outlines; but this depends on the amount of shrinking of the tissue in which the vessel is embedded; when there is no shrinking in the tissue or in the vessel, the outlines of the cells are more or less straight.

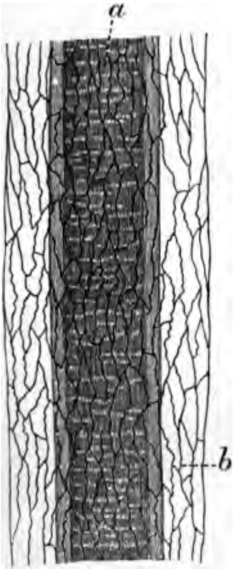


Fig. 83.—From silver-stained specimen of the mesentery of the frog.

a, Artery; *b*, perivascular lymphatic vessel, showing its endothelial wall.

The lymphatics are supported by the fibrous connective tissue of the surrounding tissue, which does not, however, form part of their wall.

112. The outline of the vessel is not straight, but more or less moniliform, owing to the slight dilatations present below and at the *semi-lunar valves;* these are folds of the endothelial wall, and they are met with in great numbers. The vessel appears slightly dilated immediately beyond the valve—that is, on the side farthest from

the periphery, or rootlet, whence the current of lymph starts.

113. Tracing the lymphatic vessels in the tissues and organs towards their rootlets, we come to more or less irregularly-shaped vessels, the wall of which also consists of a single layer of polygonal endothelial plates; the outlines are very sinuous. These are the *lymphatic capillaries;* in some places they are mere clefts and irregular sinuses, in others they have more the character of a tube, but in all instances they have a complete endothelial lining, and no valves.

Sometimes a blood-vessel, generally arterial, is ensheathed for a shorter or longer distance in a lymphatic tube, which has the character of a lymphatic capillary; these are the *perivascular lymphatics* of His, Stricker, and others (Fig. 83).

114. The **rootlets of the lymphatics** are situated in the connective tissue of the different organs in the shape of an intercommunicating system of crevices, clefts, spaces, or canals, existing between the bundles, or groups of bundles, of the connective tissue. These rootlets are generally without a complete endothelial lining, but are identical with the spaces in which the connective-tissue corpuscles are situated; where these are branched cells anastomosing by their processes into a network—such as the cornea, or serous membranes—we find that the rootlets of the lymphatics are the lacunæ and canaliculi of these cells—the typical *lymph-canalicular system* of von Recklinghausen (Fig. 84). The endothelial cells forming the wall of the lymphatic capillaries are directly continuous with the connective cells situated in the rootlets. In tendons and fasciæ the minute lymphatics lie between the bundles, and have the shape of continuous long clefts or channels; in striped muscular tissue they have the same character, being situated between the muscular fibres.

The passage of plasma from the minute arteries and capillary blood-vessels into the lymph-rootlets situated in the tissues, and thence into the lymphatic capillaries and lymphatic vessels, represents the natural current of lymph irrigating the tissues.

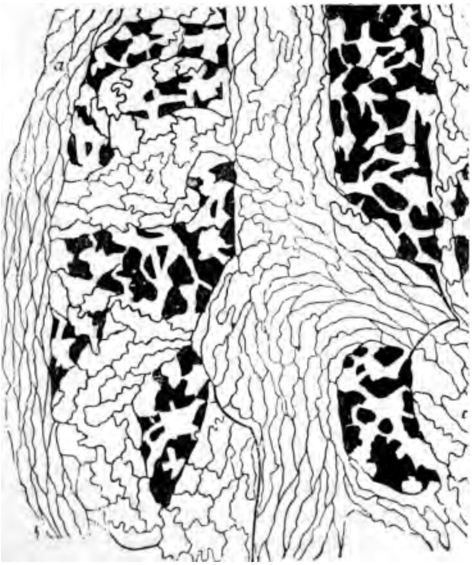


Fig. 84.– From silver-stained preparation of the Central Tendon of the Rabbit's Diaphragm, showing the direct connection of the Lymph-canalicular System of the Tissue with the Lymphatic Capillaries.

***a*, Lymphatic vessel ; *b*, lymphatic capillary lined with "sinuous" endothelium. (*Handbook.*)**

115. **Lymph cavities.**—In some cases the lymphatic vessels of a tissue or organ are possessed of, or connected with, irregularly-shaped large sinuses, much wider than the vessel itself ; these cavities are the lymph sinuses, and their wall is also composed of a

single layer of more or less polygonal endothelial plates with very sinuous outlines. Such sinuses are found in connection with the subcutaneous and submucous lymphatics, in the diaphragm, mesentery, liver, lungs, etc. On the same footing—*i.e.* as lymph sinuses—stand the comparatively large lymph cavities in the body, such as the subdural and subarachnoidal spaces of the central nervous system, the synovial cavities, the cavities of the tendon-sheaths, the cavity of the tunica vaginalis testis, the pleural, pericardial, and peritoneal cavities. In batrachian animals—*e.g.* frogs—the skin all over the trunk and extremities is separated from the subjacent fasciæ and muscles by large bags or sinuses—the *subcutaneous lymph sacs.* These sinuses are shut off from one another by septa. Between the trunk and the extremities, and on the latter, the septa generally occur in the region of the joints. In female frogs in the mesogastrium smaller or larger cysts lined with ciliated endothelium are sometimes found. Behind the peritoneal cavity of the frog, on each side of the vertebral column, exists a similar large lymph sinus, called the *cisterna lymphatica magna.*

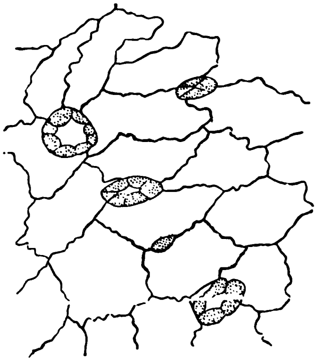


Fig. 85.—Stomata, lined with Germinating Endothelial Cells, as seen from the Cisternal Surface of the Septum Cisternæ Lymphaticæ Magnæ of the Frog. (*Handbook.*)

116. The lymph cavities are in all instances in direct communication with the lymphatics of the surrounding parts by holes or open mouths (*stomata*), often

surrounded by a special layer of polyhedral endothelial cells—germinating cells (Figs. 85, 86). Such stomata are numerous on the peritoneal surface of the central tendon of the diaphragm, in which are found straight lymph channels between the tendon bundles, and these channels communicate by numerous stomata with the free surface. A similar arrangement exists on the costal pleura, the omentum, and the cisterna lymphatica magna of the frog. (*See* Chapter IV.)

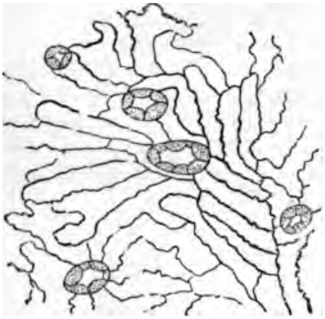


Fig. 86.—Endothelium and Stomata of the Peritoneal Surface of the Septum Cisternæ Lymphaticæ Magnæ of the Frog. (*Handbook.*)

117. The **serous membranes** consist of endothelium upon a layer of fibrous tissue with networks of fine elastic fibres; they contain networks of blood capillaries and numerous lymphatic vessels arranged in (superficial and deep) plexuses. Plexuses of lymphatics are very numerous in the pleura costalis —or rather, intercostalis—in the diaphragm and pleura pulmonalis. They are important in the process of absorption from the pleural and peritoneal cavity respectively. Lymph and lymph corpuscles, and other solid particles, are readily taken up by the stomata (*see* Fig. 31) and brought into the lymphatics. Here the respiratory movements of the intercostal muscles, of the diaphragm, and of the lungs respectively, produce the result of the action of a pump.

118. There exists a definite relation between the lymphatics on the one hand and the epithelium on the

other, which covers the mucous membranes and lines the various glands, and also between the endothelium covering serous membranes and that lining their vessels and lymph cavities—namely this: the albuminous semi-fluid cement substance (*see* former chapters) between the epithelial or endothelial cells is the path by which fluid and formed matter passes between the surfaces and the lymph-canalicular system—*i.e.* the rootlets of the lymphatics.

119. **Lymph** taken from the lymphatics of different regions differs in composition and structure. That from the thoracic duct contains a large number of colourless or white corpuscles (lymph corpuscles), each of which is a protoplasmic nucleated cell similar in structure to a white blood corpuscle. They are of various sizes, according to the stage of ripeness. The smaller lymphocytes contain one, some of the larger contain two and three nuclei corresponding to the typical leucocytes. The latter show more pronounced amœboid movement than the former. Also "granular" oxyphile, basophile, and amphophile cells are met with amongst the leucocytes. A few red corpuscles are also met with. Granular and fatty matter is present in large quantities during and immediately after digestion.

In the frog (and also in other lower vertebrates—*e.g.* reptiles) there exist certain small vesicular lymph cavities, about an eighth of an inch in diameter, which show rhythmic pulsation; they are called *lymph hearts*. On each side of the os coccygis and underneath the skin is a pulsating *posterior* lymph heart. The *anterior* lymph heart is oval, and is situated on each side of the processus transversus of the third and fourth vertebræ; it is rather smaller than the posterior one. Each lymph heart has afferent lymphatics, by which it is in open communication with the lymphatics of the periphery, and from it passes out an efferent vessel which opens into a large vein (a branch of the sciatic and jugular veins respectively). A valve allows lymph to flow out of the lymph heart into the vein, but prevents regurgitation of blood from

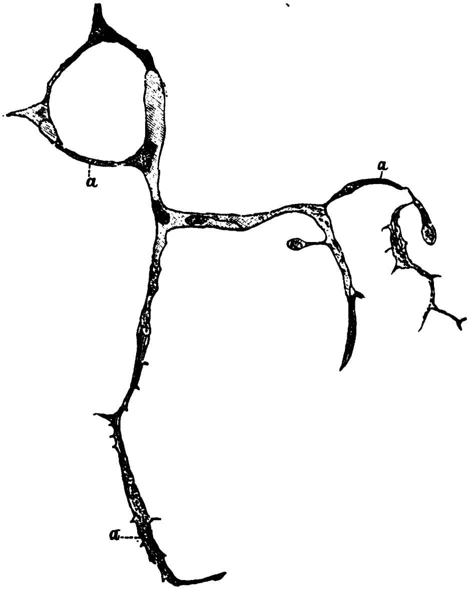


Fig. 87.—Developing Lymph-capillaries in the Tail of Tadpole. (*Atlas.*)
a, Solid nucleated protoplasmic branches not yet hollowed out.

the vein. The internal surface of the lymph hearts is lined with an endothelium like the lymph sacs, and in their wall they possess plexuses of striped, branched, muscular fibres. The nerve fibres terminate in these striped muscular fibres in the same manner as in those of other localities. (Ranvier.)

120. Lymphatic vessels are developed and newly formed under normal and pathological conditions in precisely the same way as blood-vessels. The accompanying woodcut (Fig. 87) shows this very well. We have also here to do with the hollowing out of (connective tissue) cells and their processes previously solid and protoplasmic.

CHAPTER XII.

FOLLICLES OR SIMPLE LYMPH GLANDS.

121. UNDER this name we include the blood glands, or the conglobate gland substance of Hewson, His, and Henle, or the lymph follicles (Kölliker, Huxley, Luschka). The ground substance of all lymph glands, simple as well as compound (see below), is the lymphatic or *adenoid tissue*, or leucocytogenous tissue. Like all other gland tissue, it is supplied with a rich network of capillaries derived from an afferent artery, and leading into efferent veins.

122. The elements constituting this tissue are :—

(*a*) *The adenoid reticulum* (Fig. 88), a network of fine homogeneous fibrils, with numerous plate-like enlargements.

(*b*) *Small, transparent, flat, endotheloid cell plates*, each with an oval nucleus. These cell plates are fixed on the reticulum, of which at first sight they seem to form part. Their oval nucleus especially appears to belong to a nodal point—*i.e.* to one of the enlargements of the reticulum; but by continued shaking of a section of any lymphatic tissue, the oval nuclei and their cell plates can be got rid of, so that only the reticulum is left, without any trace of a nucleus.

(*c*) *Lymph corpuscles* completely fill the meshes of the adenoid reticulum. These can, however, be easily shaken out. They are of different sizes; some—the young ones—are small cells, with a comparatively large nucleus; others—the ripe ones—are larger, have a distinct protoplasmic cell body, with one or two nuclei. In all lymphatic tissues, be they part of a simple or of a compound lymph gland, certain parts are of greater transparency than others, due to the lymph cells being larger and in a state of division, as indicated by the various phases of mitotic division of their nucleus (Flemming, Heilbrunn). These parts form, therefore, centres of germination, and constitute what are spoken of as *germ centres*, or germ nodules (Flemming). The germ centres are not permanent structures.

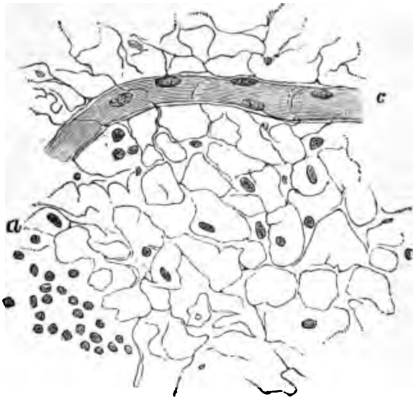


Fig. 88.—Adenoid Reticulum shaken out; most of the Lymph corpuscles are removed. From a Lymphatic Gland. (*Atlas.*)

a, Reticulum; *c*, capillary blood-vessel.

123. The adenoid tissue occurs as:

(1) *Diffuse adenoid tissue*, without any definite arrangement. This occurs in the subepithelial layer of the mucous membrane of the nasal fossæ and trachea, in the mucous membrane of the false vocal cords and the ventricle of the larynx, in the posterior part of the epiglottis, in the soft palate and tonsils, at the root of the tongue, in the pharynx, in the mucosa of the small and large intestine, including the villi of the former; and in the mucous membrane of the nasal cavity and vagina.

(2) *Cords, cylinders*, or *patches* of adenoid tissue;

in the omentum and pleura, and in the spleen (Malpighian corpuscles).

(3) *Lymph follicles, i.e.* oval or spherical masses more or less well defined; in the tonsils, at the root of the tongue, in the upper part of the pharynx (pharynx tonsil), in the stomach, small and large intestine; in the nasal mucous membrane, in the large and small bronchi; and in the spleen (Malpighian corpuscles).

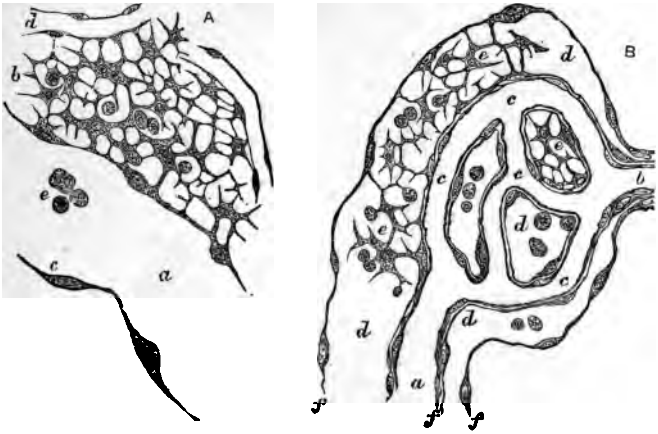


Fig. 89.—Lymphangial Nodules, in the Omentum of a Guinea-pig, developing in connection with lymph vessels. (*Klein's "Lymphatic System."*)

A, Perilymphangial nodule: *a*, lymph vessel; *b*, lymphoid tissue; *c*, its endothelial wall; *e*, blood capillaries; B; endolymphangial structure: *a*, vein; *b*, artery; *c*, capillaries; *d*, perivascular lymph vessel; *e*, lymphatic tissue; *f*, endothelial wall of the lymph vessel.

Most of these masses of adenoid tissue mentioned hitherto are developed in the wall or even in the cavity of a lymph vessel or lymph sinus as *peri-* and *endo-lymphangial* nodules; in the former case the lymph tissue remains surrounded for a smaller or larger part of its periphery by a lymph sinus forming part of a network of lymph tubes (Fig. 89, A and B).

124. The **tonsils** (Fig. 90) are masses of lymph follicles and diffuse adenoid tissue covered with a thin mucous membrane, which penetrates in the shape of longer or shorter folds into the substance within. Numbers of mucus-secreting glands situated outside the layer of lymph follicles discharge their secretion into the pits (the *crypts*) between the folds. The free surface of the tonsils and the crypts is covered or lined with similar stratified epithelium to that which lines the oral cavity. Numbers of lymph corpuscles

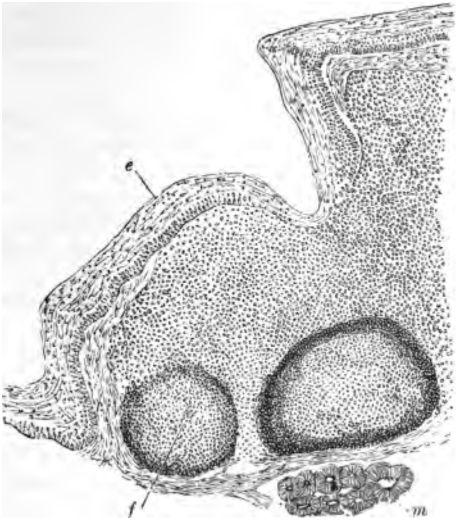


Fig. 90.—Vertical Section through part of the Tonsil of Dog. (*Atlas.*)

e, Stratified pavement epithelium covering the free surface of the mucous membrane. The tissue of the mucous membrane is infiltrated with adenoid tissue. *f*, lymph follicles; *m*, mucous gland of the submucous tissue.

constantly, in the perfectly normal condition, migrate through the epithelium on to the free surface, and are mixed with the secretions (mucus and saliva) of the oral cavity. The so-called mucous or salivary corpuscles of the saliva, taken from the oral cavity, are such discharged lymph corpuscles (Stöhr). They become swollen up by the water of the saliva, and assume a spherical shape. They finally disintegrate.

Similar relations, only on a smaller scale, obtain at the root of the tongue.

The *pharynx tonsil* of Luschka, occurring in the upper part of the pharynx, is in all essential respects similar to the palatine tonsil. Owing to large parts of the mucous membrane of the upper portion of the pharynx being covered with ciliated columnar epithelium, some of the crypts in the pharynx tonsil are also lined with it.

125. The **lenticular glands** of the stomach are single lymph follicles.

The **solitary glands** of the small and large intestine are single lymph follicles.

The **agminated glands** of the ileum are groups of lymph follicles. The mucous membrane containing them is much thickened by their presence. These groups of follicles are called a *Peyer's patch* or a *Peyer's gland* (see Intestine).

126. In most instances the capillary blood-vessels form in the lymph follicles meshes, arranged in a more or less radiating manner from the periphery towards the centre; around the periphery there is a network of small veins. A larger or smaller portion of the circumference of the follicles of the tonsils, pharynx, intestine, bronchi, etc., is surrounded by a lymph sinus leading into a lymphatic vessel. (See above.) The lymphatic vessels and lymph sinuses in the neighbourhood of lymphatic follicles or of diffuse adenoid tissue are almost always found to contain

numerous lymph corpuscles, thus indicating that these are produced by the adenoid tissue and absorbed by the lymphatics.

127. The **thymus gland** consists of a frame work and the gland substance. The former is fibrous connective tissue arranged as an outer capsule, and in connection with it are septa and trabeculæ passing into the gland and subdividing it into lobes and lobules, which latter are again subdivided into the *follicles* (Fig. 91). The follicles are very irregular in shape, most of them being oblong or cylindrical streaks of adenoid tissue. Near the capsule they are well defined from one another, and present a polygonal outline; farther inwards they are more or less fused. Each shows a central transparent *medulla* (germ centre) and a peripheral less transparent *cortex* (Watney).

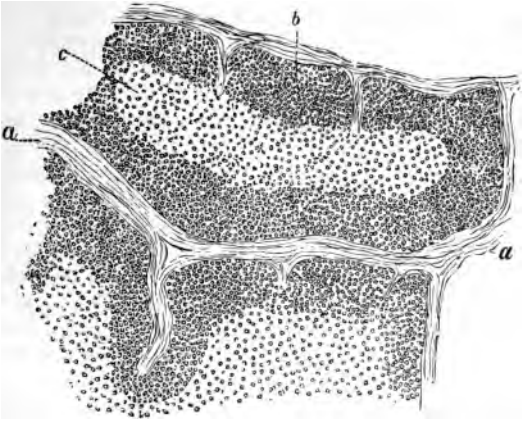


Fig. 91.—Section through the Thymus Gland of a Fœtus.

a, Fibrous tissue between the follicles; *b*, cortical portion of the follicles *c*, medullary portion.

At the places where two follicles are fused with one another the medulla of both is continuous. The matrix is adenoid reticulum, the fibres of the medullary part being coarser and shorter, those of the cortical portion of the follicle finer and longer. The meshes of the adenoid reticulum in the cortical part of the follicles are filled with lymph corpuscles like those occurring in the adenoid tissue of other organs, but in the medullary part they are fewer, and the meshes are more or less completely occupied by the enlarged but more transparent cells; in many of these mitotic division of the nucleus occurs. These conditions cause the greater transparency of the medulla and represent the germ centres above mentioned. Amongst the large cells of the medullary portion, some are coarsely granular and include more than one nucleus; some are even multinucleated giant cells.

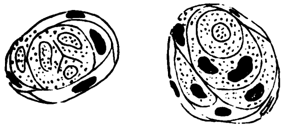


Fig. 92.—Two Concentric or Hassall's Corpuscles of the Thymus. Fœtal Gland.

128. Amongst the cells of the medulla occur also larger or smaller, more or less concentrically arranged nucleated protoplasmic masses, which are the *concentric bodies of Hassall* (Fig. 92). They are met with even in the early stages of the life of the thymus, and cannot therefore be connected with the involution of the gland, as maintained by Afanassief, according to whom the concentric corpuscles are formed in blood-vessels which thereby become obliterated. According to Watney they are concerned in the formation of blood-vessels and connective tissue.

The lymphatics of the interfollicular septa and trabeculæ always contain numbers of lymph corpuscles. The blood capillaries of the follicles are more richly distributed in the cortex than in the medulla, and they radiate from the periphery towards the central parts.

129. After birth the thymus begins to undergo involution, leading to the gradual disappearance of the greater portion of the gland, its place being taken by connective tissue and fat. But the time when the involution is completed varies within very wide limits.

It is not unusual to find in persons of fifteen to twenty years of age an appreciable amount of thymus tissue. According to Waldeyer, about 60 per cent. of adults examined had still a portion of thymus gland left. In some animals—*e.g.* guinea-pig—the involution of the gland even in the adult has not made much progress. In the thymus of the dog Watney found cysts lined with ciliated epithelial cells.

CHAPTER XIII.

COMPOUND LYMPHATIC GLANDS.

130. THE compound or true lymphatic glands are nodules, generally of an oblong shape, directly interpolated in the course of lymphatic vessels. Such are the mesenteric, portal, bronchial, splenic, sternal, cervical, cubital, popliteal, inguinal, lumbar glands. Afferent lymphatic vessels anastomosing into a plexus open at one side (in the outer capsule) into the lymphatic gland, and at the other (the hilum) emerge from it as a plexus of efferent lymphatic tubes.

131. Each true lymphatic gland is enveloped in a *fibrous capsule* which is connected with the interior and the hilum by *trabeculæ* and *septa* of connective tissue. The trabeculæ having advanced a certain distance, about one-third or one-fourth, towards the centre, branch into minor trabeculæ, which in the gland anastomose with one another so as to form a plexus with small meshes. Thus the peripheral third or fourth of the gland is subdivided by the septa and trabeculæ into relatively large spherical or oblong compartments, while the middle portion is made up of relatively small cylindrical or irregularly-shaped compartments (Fig. 93). The former region is the *cortex*, the latter the *medulla* of the gland. The compartments of the cortex anastomose with one another and with those of the medulla, and these latter also form one intercommunicating system.

The fibrous capsule, the septa and trabeculæ are the carriers of the vascular trunks; the trabeculæ consist of fibrous connective tissue and of a certain amount of non-striped muscular tissue, which is conspicuous in some animals—*e.g.* pig, calf, rabbit, guinea-pig—but is scanty in man.

Sometimes coarsely granular connective-tissue cells (plasma cells) are present in considerable numbers in the trabeculæ.

132. The compartments contain masses of adenoid tissue, without being completely filled with it. Those of the cortex contain oval or spherical masses—*the lymph follicles of the cortex ;* those of the medulla cylindrical or irregularly-shaped masses—*the medullary cylinders.* The former anastomose with one another and with the latter, and the latter amongst themselves, a condition easily understood from what has been said above of the nature of the compartments containing these lymphatic structures. The follicles

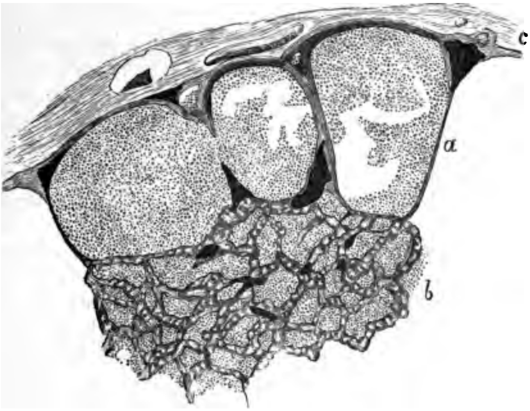


Fig. 93.—From a Vertical Section through a Lymphatic Gland, the Lymphatics of which had been injected. (*Atlas.*)

c, Outer capsule, with lymphatic vessels in section ; *a*, cortical lymph follicles; around them are the cortical lymph sinuses; *b*, medulla; injected lymph sinuses between the masses of adenoid tissue.

and medullary cylinders consist of *adenoid tissue* with germ centres of exactly similar character to that described in the previous chapter. And this tissue also contains the last ramifications of the blood-vessels—*i.e.* the last branches of the arteries, a rich network of capillary blood-vessels, and the first or smaller branches of the veins. The capillaries and other vessels receive also here an adventitious envelope from the adenoid reticulum.

133. The cortical follicles and the medullary cylinders do not completely fill out the compartments made for them by the capsule and trabeculæ respectively, but a narrow peripheral zone in each compartment is left free; these are the *lymphatic sinuses.* In the cortex they are spoken of as the *cortical* (Fig. 94), in the medulla as the *medullary, lymph sinuses* (Fig. 95). The former is a space between the outer surface of the cortical lymph follicle and the corresponding part of the capsule or cortical septum, the latter between the surface of a medullary cylinder and the trabeculæ. From what has been said of the

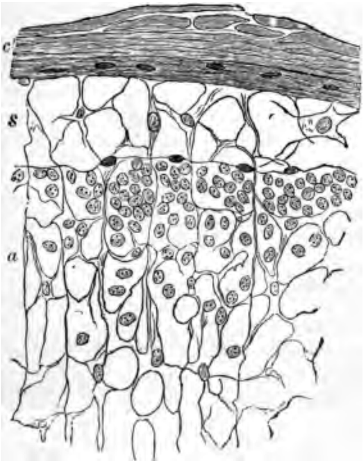


Fig. 94.—From a Section through a Lymphatic Gland. (*Atlas.*)

c, Outer capsule; s, cortical lymph sinus; a, adenoid tissue of cortical follicle. Numerous nuclei, indicating lymph corpuscles.

relation of the compartments, it follows that the cortical and medullary lymph sinuses form one intercommunicating system. These are not empty free spaces, but are filled with a coarse reticulum of fibres, much coarser than the adenoid reticulum; to it are attached large transparent cell plates—endotheloid

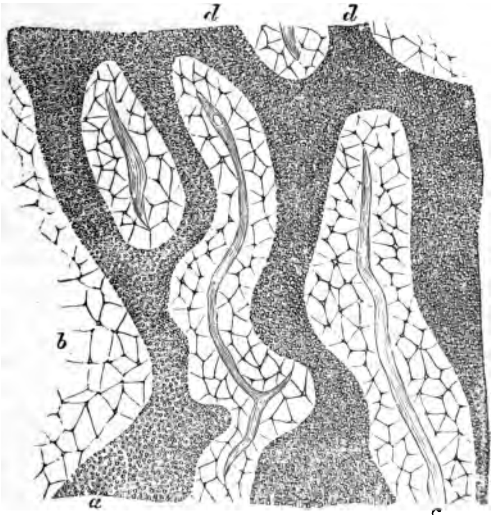


Fig. 95.—From a Section through the Medulla of a Lymphatic Gland.
a, Transition of the medullary cylinders of adenoid tissue into the cortical follicles; *b*, lymph sinuses occupied by a reticulum; *c*, fibrous tissue trabeculæ; *d*, medullary cylinders.

plates. In some instances (as in the calf) these cell plates of the medullary sinuses contain brownish pigment granules, which give to the medulla of the gland a dark brown aspect. In the meshes of the reticulum of the sinuses are contained lymph corpuscles, the majority of which consist of a comparatively large protoplasmic body and one or two nuclei;

they show lively amœboid movement; a few small lymphocytes are also amongst them.

The surface of the trabeculæ facing the lymph sinuses is covered with a continuous layer of endothelium (von Recklinghausen), and a similar endothelial membrane, but not so complete, can be made out on the surface of the cortical follicles and the medullary cylinders. The endotheloid plates, applied to the reticulum of the sinuses, are stretched out, as it were, between the endothelial membrane covering the surface of the trabeculæ on the one hand and that covering the surface of the follicles and cylinders on the other.

In the mesenteric glands of the pig the distribution of cortical follicles and medullary cylinders is almost the reverse from that of other glands and in other animals: the cortical part having the arrangement of cylinders of adenoid tissue and trabeculæ, while the medulla shows lymph follicles and longer septa between them.

134. The *afferent lymphatic vessels* having entered the outer capsule of the gland, and having formed within the capsule a dense plexus, open directly into the cortical lymph sinuses. The medullary lymph sinuses, on the other hand, lead into lymphatic vessels, which leave the gland at the hilum as the *efferent* vessels.

Both afferent and efferent vessels are supplied with valves.

135. The course of the lymph through a lymphatic gland is this: From the afferent vessels, situated in the capsule, the lymph flows into the cortical lymph sinuses, from these into the medullary sinuses, and from these into the efferent lymphatics. Owing to the presence of the reticulum in the lymph sinuses the current of the lymph will flow very slowly and with difficulty, as if through a spongy filter. Hence a

large number of formed corpuscles, pigment, inflammatory or other elements, passing into the gland from the afferent vessels are easily arrested and deposited in the sinuses, and are there readily swallowed by the amœboid corpuscles lying in the meshes of, or deposited on the reticulum.

Passing a stream of water by way of the afferent lymph vessels through the gland, the contents of the meshes of the reticulum of the sinuses—*i.e.* the lymph corpuscles—are of course the first things washed out (von Recklinghausen), and on continuing the stream some of the lymph corpuscles of the follicles and cylinders are also washed out. Probably also by the normal lymph-stream passing from the minute arteries and capillary blood-vessels of the adenoid tissue (follicles and medullary lymph cylinders) into the lymph sinuses, lymph cells are drained, as it were, from the follicles and cylinders into the sinuses. The amœboid movement of these cells will greatly assist their passage into the sinuses. From here the cells are carried away by the lymph current into the efferent lymph vessels, and are ultimately carried into the big lymph-trunks discharging into the big veins—*i.e.* into the circulating blood—as white blood corpuscles.

CHAPTER XIV.

NERVE FIBRES.

136. THE nerve fibres conduct impulses to or from the tissues and organs on the one hand, and the nerve centres on the other, and accordingly we have to consider in each nerve fibre the peripheral and central termination and the conducting part. The latter, *i.e.* the nerve fibres proper, in the cerebro-spinal nerves are grouped into bundles, and these again into anatomical nerve branches and nerve trunks. Each anatomical cerebro-spinal nerve con-

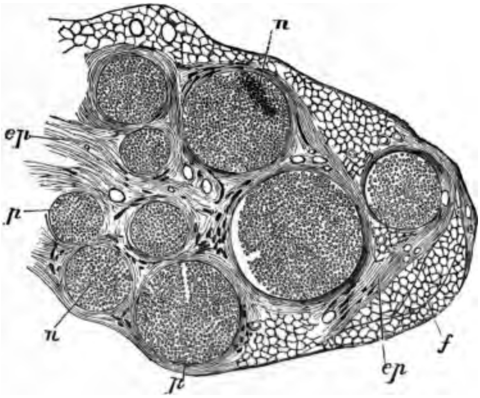


Fig. 96.—From a Transverse Section through the Sciatic Nerve of Dog. *ep*, Epineurium; *p*, perineurium; *n*, nerve fibres constituting a nerve bundle in cross-section; *f*, fat tissue surrounding the nerve. (*Atlas.*)

sists, therefore, of *bundles* of nerve fibres (Fig. 96). The general stroma by which these bundles are held together is fibrous connective tissue called the *epineurium* (Key and Retzius); this epineurium is the carrier of the larger and smaller blood-vessels with which the nerve trunk is supplied, of a plexus of lymphatics, of groups of fat cells, and sometimes of numerous plasma cells.

137. The *nerve bundles* or *funiculi* (Fig. 97) vary in size according to the number and size of the nerve fibres they contain. They are well defined by a sheath of their own, called *perineurium* (Key and Retzius). This perineurium consists of bundles of fibrous connective tissue arranged in lamellæ, every two lamellæ being separated from one another by smaller or larger lymph spaces, which form an intercommunicating system, and anastomose with the lymphatics of the epineurium whence they can be injected. Between the lamellæ, and in the spaces, are situated flattened endotheloid connective-tissue corpuscles.

The nerve bundles are either *simple* or *compound*. In the former the nerve fibres are not subdivided into groups within the bundle, in the latter the bundles are subdivided by thicker and thinner septa of fibrous connective tissue connected with the perineurium. When a nerve bundle divides—as when a trunk repeatedly branches, or when it enters on its peripheral distribution—each branch of the bundle receives a continuation of the lamellar perineurium. The more branches the perineurium has to supply, the more reduced it becomes in thickness. In some of these minute branches the perineurium is reduced to a single layer of endothelial cells. When one of these small bundles breaks up into single nerve fibres, or into small groups of them, each of these has also a continuation of the fibrous tissue of the perineurium. In some places this perineural continuation is only a very delicate endothelial membrane as just mentioned, in others it is of considerable thickness, and still shows its lamellated nature. Such a lamellated sheath of single nerve fibres, or o a small group of them, represents what is called a *Henle's sheath.*

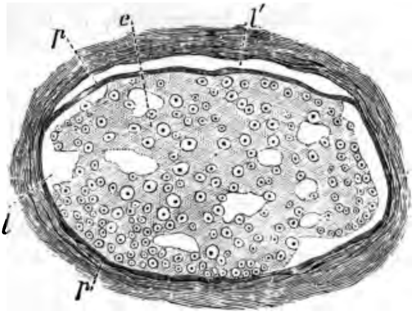


Fig. 97.—Transverse Section through a Nerve Bundle in the Tail of Mouse. (*Atlas.*)

p, Perineurium; *c*, endoneurium separating the medullated nerve fibres seen in cross-section; *l′*, lymph spaces in the perineurium; *l*, lymph spaces in the endoneurium.

138. The nerve fibres are held together or separated respectively within the bundle by connective tissue, called the *endoneurium* (Fig. 97). This is a homogeneous ground substance in which are embedded fine bundles of fibrous connective tissue, and connective-tissue corpuscles, and capillary blood-vessels arranged so as to form a network with elongated meshes. Between the perineurium and the nerve fibres are found here and there lymph spaces; similar spaces separate the individual nerve fibres, and have been injected by Key and Retzius. The endoneural lymph spaces communicate with those of the perineural sheath.

When nerve trunks anastomose so as to form a plexus—*e.g.* in the brachial or sacral plexus—there occurs a division, an exchange and re-arrangement of nerve bundles in the branches. A similar condition obtains in the ganglia of the cerebro-spinal nerves. Nerve trunks and nerve branches passing through a lymph cavity, such as the subdural spaces, or the subcutaneous lymph sacs, or the cisterna lymphatica magna in the frog, receive from the serous membrane an outer endothelial covering.

139. Most of the nerve fibres in the bundles of the cerebro-spinal nerves, with the exception of the olfactory nerve, are *medullated nerve fibres.* These are doubly-contoured smooth cylindrical fibres, varying in diameter between $\frac{1}{2000}$ or more and $\frac{1}{10000}$ of an inch. Within the same nerve, and even within the same nerve bundle, there occur fibres which are several times thicker than others, and it is probable that they are derived from different sources; this, for instance, is very conspicuous in the vagus nerve (Gaskell, Fig. 98). Schwalbe has shown that the thickness of the nerve fibre stands in a certain relation to the distance of its periphery from the nerve centre and to its functional activity.

A medullated nerve fibre in the fresh condition is a bright glistening cylinder, showing a dark double contour. Either spontaneously after death, or after reagents—as water, salt solution, dilute acids—or after pressure and mechanical injury, the outline of the nerve fibre becomes irregular; smaller or larger glistening dark-bordered droplets and masses appear, and gradually become detached. These droplets and masses are called myeline droplets, and are derived from the fatty substance or *myelin* constituting the medullary sheath or white substance of Schwann (see below). When a nerve fibre within the bundle undergoes degeneration during life, either after section of the nerve or after other pathological changes, or in the natural course of its existence (S. Mayer), the medullary sheath is the first to undergo change; it breaks up into similar smaller or larger globules or particles, which gradually become granular and absorbed. Later also the axis cylinder dwindles away, and only the neurilemma with the nucleated corpuscles persist.

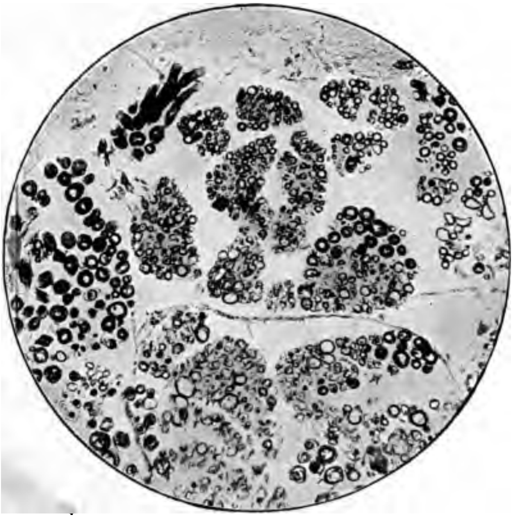


Fig. 98.—From a Transverse Section through the Vagus Nerve, showing in the nerve bundles nerve fibres (in cross-section) which differ markedly in size, some being much larger than others. (*Photo., highly magnified.*)

140. Each medullated nerve fibre (Figs. 99, 101) consists of the following parts: (*a*) the central *axis cylinder*, *axon* or *neuraxon*. This is the essential part of the fibre, and is a cylindrical or band-like,

pale, transparent structure, which in certain localities (near the terminal distribution, in the olfactory nerves, in the central nervous system), and especially after certain reagents, shows itself composed of very fine homogeneous or more or less beaded fibrillæ—the *elementary or primitive fibrillæ* (Max Schultze)—held together by a small amount of a faintly granular interstitial substance The longitudinal striation of the axis cylinder is due to its being composed of primitive fibrillæ. The thickness of the axis cylinder is in direct proportion to the thickness of the whole nerve fibre. The axis cylinder itself is enveloped in its own hyaline more or less *elastic sheath*—the *axilemma* (Kühne), composed of neurokeratin.

141. (*b*) The *medullary sheath*, or *myeline sheath*, or white substance of Schwann, is also called the medulla of the nerve fibre. This is a glistening bright fatty substance surrounding the axis cylinder, as an insulating hollow cylinder surrounds an electric wire. The medullary sheath gives to the nerve fibre its double or dark contour. Between the axis cylinder and the medullary sheath there is a small amount of albuminous fluid, which appears greatly increased when the former, owing to shrinking, stands farther apart from the latter.

142. (*c*) The *sheath of Schwann*, or the *neurilemma*, closely surrounds the medullary sheath, and forms the outer boundary of the nerve fibre. It is a delicate structureless membrane. Here and there between the neurilemma and the medullary sheath, and situated in a depression of the latter, is an oblong nucleus, surrounded by a thin zone of protoplasm. These nucleated corpuscles are the *nerve corpuscles* (Fig. 99), and are analogous to the muscle corpuscles, situated between the sarcolemma and the striated muscular substance. They are not nearly so numerous as the muscle corpuscles.

143. The neurilemma presents at certain definite intervals annular constrictions—the *nodes* or *constrictions of Ranvier* (Figs. 99, 100, 101)—and at these nodes of Ranvier the medullary sheath, but not the axis cylinder and its special sheath, is suddenly interrupted, and sharply terminates at the constriction. The neurilemma is at the same time thickened by annular permanent folds (see B in Fig. 101). The portion of the nerve fibre situated between two nodes is the *internodal segment.* Each internodal segment has generally one, occasionally more than one, nerve corpuscle. The medullary cylinder of each internodal segment is made up of a number of conical sections (Fig. 101, A) imbricated at their ends (Schmidt, Lantermann; and each such section is again made up of a large number of rod-like structures (Fig. 102) placed vertically on the axis cylinder (MacCarthy).

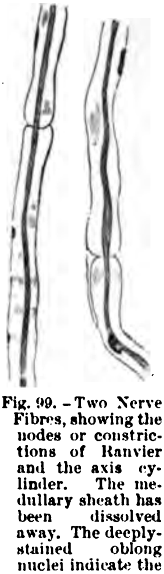


Fig. 99.—Two Nerve Fibres, showing the nodes or constrictions of Ranvier and the axis cylinder. The medullary sheath has been dissolved away. The deeply-stained oblong nuclei indicate the nerve corpuscles within the neurilemma. (*Atlas.*)

These rods are, however, connected into a network. The network itself is very likely the neurokeratin of Ewald and Kühne, whereas the interstitial substance of the network is probably the fatty substance leaving the nerve fibre in the shape of myeline droplets, when pressure or reagents are applied to the fresh nerve fibre.

144. Medullated nerve fibres *without any neurilemma,* and consequently without any nodes of Ranvier, with a thick more or less distinctly laminated medullary sheath, form the entire white substance of

the brain and spinal cord. In these organs, in the hardened and fresh state, numerous nerve fibres may be noticed, which show more or less regular varicosities, owing to local accumulations of fluid between the axis cylinder and medullary sheath. These are called *varicose nerve fibres.* They occur also in the branches of the sympathetic nerve.

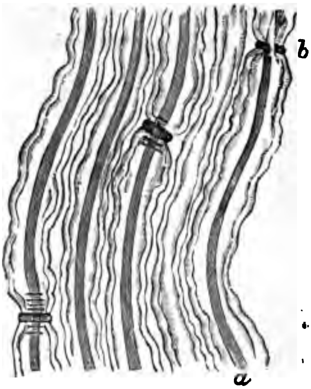


Fig. 100.—Medullated Nerve Fibres, after staining with nitrate of silver. (*Key and Retzius.*)

a, Axis cylinder; *b*, Ranvier's constriction.

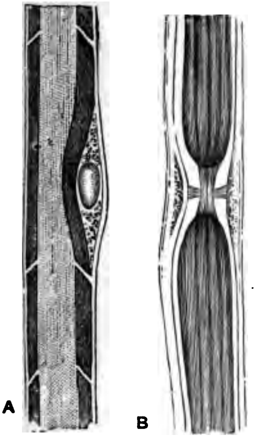


Fig. 101.—Medullated Nerve Fibres.

A, Medullated nerve fibre, showing the subdivision of the medullary sheath into cylindrical sections imbricated with their ends; a nerve corpuscle with an oval nucleus is seen between the neurilemma and the medullary sheath. B, medullated nerve fibre at a node or constriction of Ranvier; the axis cylinder passes uninterruptedly from one segment into the other, but the medullary sheath is interrupted. (*Key and Retzius.*)

The nerve fibres of the *optic* and *acoustic nerve* are medullated, but without any neurilemma; they are therefore without any nodes of Ranvier. Varicose fibres are common in them.

145. Medullated nerve fibres occasionally in their course divide into two medullated fibres. Such division is very common in

medullated nerve fibres supplying striped muscular tissue, especially at or near the point of entrance into the muscular fibres. (See below.) But also in other localities division of nerve fibres may be met with. The electric nerve of the electric fishes — *e.g.* malapterurus, gymnotus, silurus — shows such divisions to an extraordinary degree, one huge nerve fibre dividing at once into a bundle of minute fibres. Division of a medullated fibre takes place generally at a node of Ranvier. The branches taken together are generally thicker than the undivided part of the fibre, but in structure they are identical with the latter.

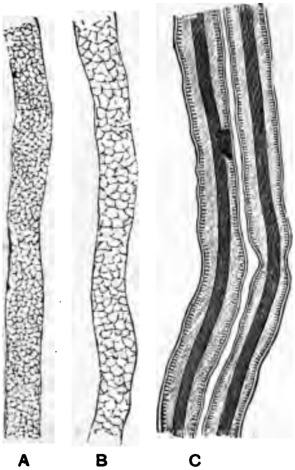


Fig. 102.—Medullated Nerve Fibres.

A, B, Showing on a surface view the reticulated nature of the medullary sheath; C, two nerve fibres showing the axis cylinder, the medullary sheath with their vertically-arranged minute rods, and the delicate neurilemma or outer hyaline sheath. (*Atlas.*)

146. When medullated nerve fibres approach their peripheral termination, they change sooner or later, inasmuch as their medullary sheath suddenly ceases; and now we have a *non-medullated* or grey (transparent) nerve fibre of Remak. Each of these consists of an axis cylinder, a neurilemma, and between the two a nucleated nerve corpuscle from place to place. Non-medullated nerve fibres always show the fibrillar nature of their axis cylinder. The olfactory nerve branches are entirely made up of non-medullated nerve fibres. In the branches of the sympathetic

most fibres are non-medullated. Non-medullated fibres do not show Ranvier's constrictions. Bundles of non-medullated fibres are grey, bundles of medullated fibres are white, when viewed in reflected light; the former being without medullary sheath allow light to pass through them, while the latter owing to their medullary (fatty) sheath reflect light strongly.

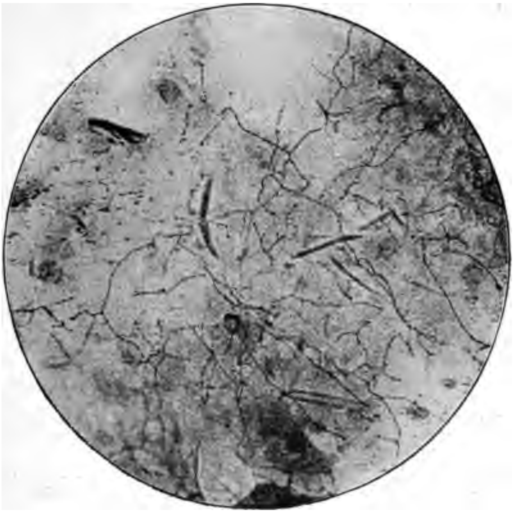


Fig. 103.—View of the anterior surface of Gold-stained Cornea of Guinea-pig, showing the rich distribution of the terminal nerve fibrillæ and their ramifications in the anterior epithelium of the cornea. (*Photo., highly magnified.*)

In the extra-vertebral course of many branches of the cerebro-spinal nerves—*e.g.* those supplying the limbs, the wall of the chest and abdomen—there occur non-medullated fibres generally in small groups;

these fibres are considered to be derived from the sympathetic system, having joined the cerebro-spinal nerves by the grey portions of the rami communicantes (Gaskell). The non medullated fibres near their terminal distribution always undergo repeated divisions. They form *plexuses*, large fibres branching into smaller ones, and these again joining. Generally at the nodal points of these plexuses there are triangular nuclei, indicating the corpuscles of the neurilemma.

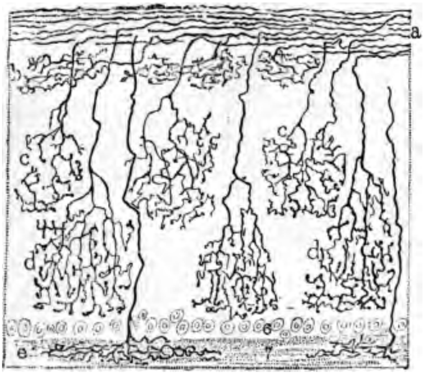


Fig. 104.—Dendritic terminations—Dendrons of Nerve Fibres. Transverse section of the optic lobe of a bird prepared by Golgi's method. (*R. y Cajal, from Quain.*)

a, Optic fibres ; *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*, dendrons of same in the different layers of the optic lobe ; 6 and 7 are the sixth and seventh layers respectively of the organ.

147. Finally the non-medullated nerve fibres leaving the plexuses ultimately lose their neurilemma and break up into their constituent small bundles and even single *primitive nerve fibrillæ*, which occasionally show regular varicosities (Fig. 105). Of course, of a neurilemma or the nuclei of the nerve corpuscles there is nothing left. The bundles of primitive fibrils

and also single fibrils branch and interlace, whereby a more or less dense dendritic ramification—*arborisation* or *dendron*—is produced (Fig. 104). The individual fibrils of the *dendron* are straight or twisted, and often provided with smaller or larger terminal knobs. In some localities—*e.g.* in the grey matter of the central nervous system—the number of fibrils con-

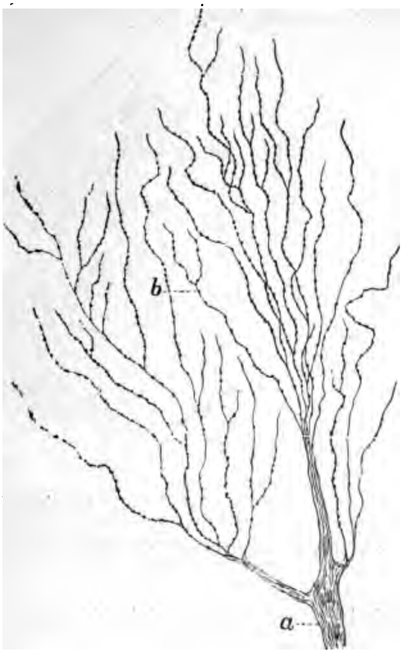


Fig. 105.—Nerve Fibres of the Cornea.

a, Axis cylinder near the anterior epithelium of the cornea splitting up into its constituent primitive fibrillæ; *b*, primitive fibrillæ.

stituting a dendron is large, and hence the dendron is conspicuous, in other localities the number of fibrils is relatively scanty—*e.g.* in the anterior epithelium of the cornea—and hence the arborising character of the dendron is not very conspicuous (Fig. 103).

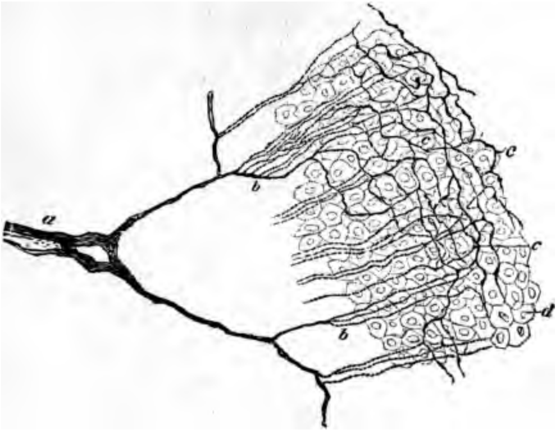


Fig. 106.—Intra-epithelial Nerve-termination in the Anterior Epithelium of the Cornea, as seen in an oblique section. (*Handbook.*)

a, Axis cylinder; *b*, sub-epithelial nerve fibrillæ; *c*, intra-epithelial ramification; *d*, epithelial cells.

Pronounced dendrons are found in the nerve termination in muscle and tendon (the endplates) in the branched processes (dendrites) of the ganglion cells in the central nervous system, as will be described and illustrated later.

In the skin, cornea and mucous membranes, the peripheral termination — *i.e.* the primitive fibrils and their ramifications, are intra-epithelial (Fig. 106), *i.e.* they are situated in the stratum Malpighii of the epidermis, in the epithelial parts of the hair follicle, in the anterior epithelium of the cornea, or in the epithelium of the mucous membranes. The primitive nerve fibrils lie in the interstitial substance *between* the epithelial cells, and some of them have been observed to end with minute

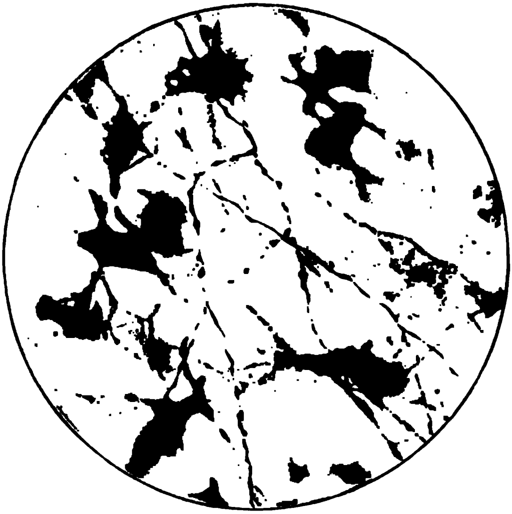


Fig. 107.—From gold-stained cornea of frog, showing the numerous beaded fine nerve fibrils and the branched corneal corpuscles. (*Photo., highly magnified.*)

knobs in the cell substance itself close to the nucleus (Pfitzner, Macallum).

148. Tracing then a nerve fibre, say one of common sensation, from the periphery towards the centre, we have isolated *primitive fibrils* or their ramifications; they form by aggregation *simple axis cylinders*, which vary in thickness according to the number of their

constituent primitive fibrils. These axis cylinders then become invested by neurilemma and nuclei, and form plexuses. By association they form larger axis cylinders, and these form typical *non-medullated nerve fibres* with neurilemma, and with the nuclei of nerve corpuscles (Fig. 106). Lastly, if a medullary sheath makes its appearance between the neurilemma and the axis cylinder of each fibre we get a *medullated nerve fibre.*

CHAPTER XV.

PERIPHERAL NERVE-ENDINGS.

149. In the preceding chapter we referred to the termination of the nerves of common sensation, as isolated primitive fibrillæ, and as ramifications and dendrons of these in the epithelium of the skin and mucous membranes, in the anterior epithelium of the cornea, and in the grey matter of the central nervous system. Besides these there are other special terminal organs of sensory nerves, probably concerned in the perception of some special quality or quantity of sensory impulses. These are all connected with a *medullated nerve fibre*, and are situated not in the epithelium of the surface but in the tissue, at greater or lesser depth. Such are the corpuscles of Pacini and Herbst, the end-bulbs of Krause in the tongue and conjunctiva, the genital end-corpuscles or end-bulbs in the external genital organs, the corpuscles of Meissner or tactile corpuscles, in the papillæ of the skin of the volar side of the fingers, the touch-cells of Merkel, the end-corpuscles of Grandry, in the beak and tongue of the duck.

150. The **Pacinian corpuscles.**—These are also called Vater's corpuscles. They occur in large numbers on the subcutaneous nerve fibres of the palm of the hand and foot of man, in the mesentery of the cat, along the tibia of the rabbit, in the genital organs of man (corpora cavernosa, prostate). Each corpuscle is oval, more or less pointed, and in some places (palm of the human hand, mesentery of the cat) easily perceptible to the unaided eye, the largest

being about $\frac{1}{20}$th of an inch long and $\frac{1}{30}$th of an inch broad; in other places they are of microscopic size. Each possesses a *stalk*, to which it is attached, and which consists of a single *medullated nerve fibre* (Fig. 108), differing from an ordinary medullated nerve fibre merely in the fact that outside its neurilemma there is present a thick laminated connective-tissue sheath. This is the *sheath of Henle*—continuous with the perineural sheath of the nerve branch with which the nerve fibre is in connection. This medullated nerve fibre within its sheath possesses generally a very wavy outline. The corpuscle itself is composed of a large number of lamellæ, or capsules, more or less concentrically arranged around a *central elongated or cylindrical clear space.* This space contains in its axis, from the proximal end—*i.e.* the one nearest to the stalk—to near the opposite or distal end, a continuation of the nerve fibre in the shape of a *simple axis cylinder.* But this axis cylinder does not fill out the central space, since there is all round it a space left filled with a transparent substance, in which, in some instances, rows of spherical nuclei may be perceived along the margin of the axis cylinder. At or near the distal end of the central space *the axis cylinder divides in two or*

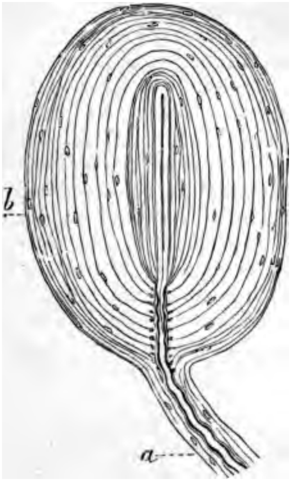


Fig. 108.—Pacinian Corpuscle, from the Mesentery of Cat.

a, Medullated nerve fibre; *b*, concentric capsules.

more branches, and these *terminate* in pear-shaped, oblong, spherical, or irregularly-shaped granular-looking *enlargements*.

151. The concentric *capsules* forming the corpuscle itself are disposed in a different manner at the periphery and near the central space from that in which they are disposed in the middle parts, in the former localities being much closer together and thinner than in the latter. On looking, therefore, at a Pacinian corpuscle in its longitudinal axis, or in cross-section, we always notice the striation (indicating the capsules) to be closer in the former than in the latter places. Each capsule consists of—(*a*) a hyaline, probably elastic, *ground substance*, in which are embedded here and there (*b*) *fine bundles of connective-tissue fibres;* (*c*) on the inner surface of each capsule, *i.e.* the one directed to the central axis of the Pacinian corpuscle, is a single layer of *nucleated endothelial plates.* The oblong nuclei visible on the capsules at ordinary inspection are the nuclei of these endothelial plates. There is no fluid between the capsules, but these are in contact with one another (Huxley). Neighbouring capsules are occasionally connected with one another by thin fibres.

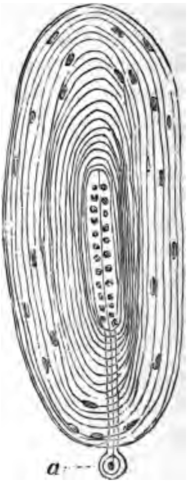


Fig. 109.—Herbst's Corpuscle, from the Tongue of Duck.
a, Medullated nerve fibre cut away.

152. In order to reach the central space of the corpuscle, the medullated nerve fibre has to perforate the capsules at one pole; thus a canal is formed in which is situated the medullated nerve fibre, and

as such, and in a very wavy condition, it reaches the proximal end of the central space. This part of the nerve fibre may be called the intermediate part. The lamellæ of the sheath of Henle pass directly into the peripheral capsules of the corpuscle.

Immediately before entering the central space, the nerve fibre divests itself of all parts except the axis cylinder, which, as stated above, passes into the central space of the Pacinian corpuscle. In some cases a minute artery enters the corpuscle at the pole, opposite to the nerve fibre; it penetrates the peripheral capsules, and supplies them with a few capillary vessels.

153. The **corpuscles of Herbst** are similar to the Pacinian corpuscles, with this difference, that they are smaller and more elongated, that the axis cylinder of the central space is bordered by a continuous row of nuclei, and that the capsules are thinner and more closely placed (Fig. 109). This applies especially to those near the central space, and here between these central capsules we miss the nuclei indicating the endothelial plates. Such is the nature of Herbst's corpuscles in the mucous membrane of the tongue of the duck, and to a certain degree also in those of the rabbit, and in tendons.

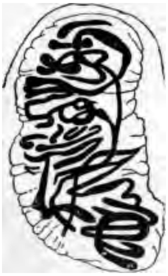


Fig. 110.—Tactile Corpuscle of Meissner from the Skin of the Human Hand. (*E. Fischer and W. Flemming.*) Showing the convolutions of the nerve fibre.

154. The **tactile corpuscles, or corpuscles of Meissner**, occur in the papillæ of the corium of the volar side of the fingers and toes in man and in apes; they are oblong, straight, or slightly folded. In man they are about $\frac{1}{250}$ to $\frac{1}{300}$ of an inch long, and $\frac{1}{500}$ to $\frac{1}{200}$ of an inch broad.

They are connected with a medullated nerve fibre—generally one, occasionally, but rarely, two—with a sheath of Henle. The nerve fibre enters the corpuscle, but usually before doing so it winds round the corpuscle as a medullated fibre once or twice or oftener, and its Henle's sheath becomes fused with the fibrous capsule or sheath of the tactile corpuscle. The nerve fibre ultimately loses its medullary sheath and penetrates into the interior of the corpuscle, where the axis cylinder branches; its branches retain a coiled course all along the tactile corpuscle (Fig. 110), anastomose with one another, and terminate in slight enlargements, pear-shaped or cylindrical. These enlargements, according to Merkel, are touch-cells. The matrix, or main part of the tactile corpuscle consists, besides the fibrous sheath with nuclei and numerous elastic fibres, of fine bundles of connective tissue, and of a number of nucleated small cells.

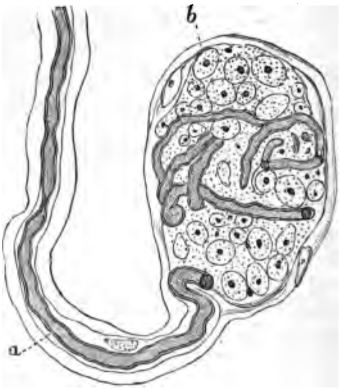


Fig. 111.—End-bulb of Krause.
a, Medullated nerve fibre: *b*, capsule of the corpuscle.

155. The **end-bulbs of Krause.**—These occur in the conjunctiva of the calf and of man, and are oblong or cylindrical minute corpuscles situated in the deeper layers of the conjunctiva, near the corneal margin. A medullated nerve fibre, with Henle's sheath, enters the corpuscle (Fig. 111). This possesses a nucleated capsule, and is a more or less laminated

(in man more granular-looking) structure, numerous nuclei being scattered between the laminæ. Of the nerve fibre, as a rule, only the axis cylinder is prolonged into the interior of the corpuscle. Occasionally the medullated nerve fibre passes, as such, into the corpuscle, being at the same time more or less convoluted. Having passed to near the distal extremity, it branches, and terminates with small enlargements (Krause, Longworth, Merkel, Key and Retzius).

The *end-bulbs in the genital organs*, or the *genital corpuscles of Krause*, are similar in structure to the simple end-bulbs. They occur in the tissue of the cutis and mucous membrane of the penis, clitoris, and vagina.

156. The **corpuscles of Grandry**, or *touch corpuscles of Merkel*, in the tissue of the papillæ in the beak and tongue of birds, are oval or spherical corpuscles of minute size, possessed of a very delicate nucleated membrane as a capsule, and consisting of a series (two, three, four, or more) of large, slightly-flattened, granular-looking, transparent cells, each with a spherical nucleus, and arranged in a vertical row (Fig. 112). A medullated nerve fibre enters the corpuscle from one side, and losing its medullary

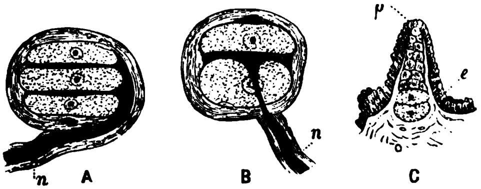


Fig. 112.—Corpuscles of Grandry in the Tongue of Duck. (*Izquierdo.*)

A, Composed of three cells; B, composed of two cells; C, showing the development of a Grandry's corpuscle from the epithelium covering the papilla, *p*; *e*, epithelium; *n*, nerve fibre.

sheath, the axis cylinder branches, and its branchlets terminate, according to some (Merkel, Henle), in the cells of the corpuscle (touch cells of Merkel); according to others (Key and Retzius, Ranvier, Hesse, Izquierdo), in the transparent substance between the touch cells, thus forming the "disc tactil" of Ranvier or the "Tastplatte" of Hesse. Neither theory seems to us to answer to the facts of the case, since we find that the branchlets of the axis cylinder terminate, not in the touch cells, nor as the disc tactil, but with minute swellings in the interstitial substance between the touch cells, in a manner very similar to what is the case in the conjunctival end-bulbs. According to Merkel, single or small groups of touch cells occur in the tissue of the papillæ, and also in the epithelium, in the skin of man and mammals.

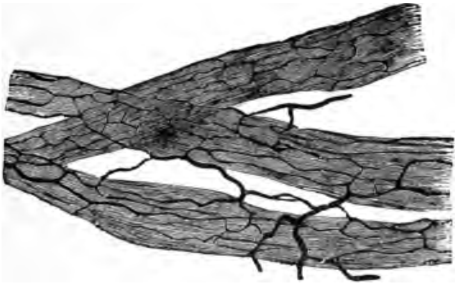


Fig. 113.—Bundles of Non-striped Muscular Tissue surrounded by Plexuses of Fine Nerve Fibres. (*Handbook.*)

157. In **articulations**—*e.g.* the knee-joint of the rabbit—Nicoladoni described numerous nerve branches, from which fine nerve fibres are given off. Some of these terminate in a network, others on blood-vessels, and a third group enter Pacinian corpuscles. Krause described in the synovial membranes

of the joints of the human fingers medullated nerve fibres which end in peculiar tactile corpuscles, called by him "articular nerve corpuscles."

158. The **nerve branches supplying non-striped muscular tissue** are derived from the sympathetic system. They are composed of non-medullated fibres, and the branches are invested in an endothelial sheath (perineurium). The branches divide into single or small groups of axis cylinders, which reunite into a plexus—the *ground plexus of Arnold*. Small fibres coming off from the plexus supply the individual bundles of non-striped muscle cells, and they form a plexus called the *intermediary plexus* (Fig. 113). The fibres joining this plexus are smaller or larger bundles of primitive fibrillæ; in the nodes or the points of meeting of these fibres are found angular nuclei. From the intermediate plexus pass off isolated or small groups of primitive fibrillæ, which pursue their course in the interstitial substance between the muscle cells; these are the *intermuscular*

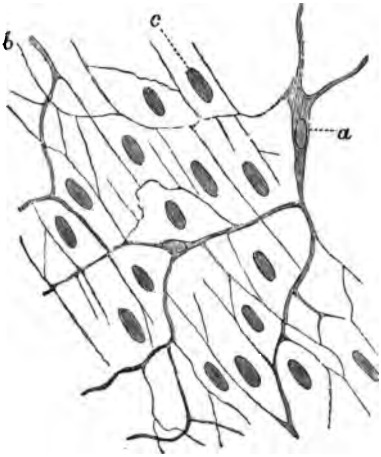


Fig. 114.—Termination of Nerves in Non-striped Muscular Tissue. (*Atlas.*)

a, Non-medullated fibre of the intermediary plexus; *b*, fine intermuscular fibrils; *c*, nuclei of muscular cells.

fibrils (Fig. 114). According to Frankenhaüser and Arnold, they give off finer fibrils, ending in the nucleus (or nucleolus). According to Elischer, the primitive fibrils terminate on the surface of the nucleus with a minute swelling.

In many localities there are isolated ganglion cells in connection with the intermuscular fibres.

159. The nerves of **blood-vessels** are derived from the sympathetic, and they terminate in arteries and veins in essentially the same way as in non-striped muscular tissue, being chiefly present in those parts (media) which contain the non-striped muscular tissue. But there are also fine non-medullated nerve fibres, which accompany capillary vessels—capillary arteries and capillary veins—and in some places they give off elementary fibrils, which form a plexus around the vessel (Fig. 115). In some localities the

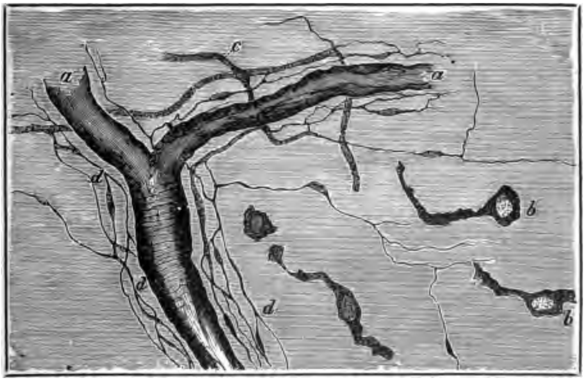


Fig. 115.—Plexus of Fine Non-medullated Nerve Fibres surrounding Capillary Arteries in the Tongue of Frog, after staining with chloride of gold. (*Handbook.*)

a, Blood-vessel; *b*, connective tissue corpuscles; *c*, thick non-medullated fibres *d*, plexus of fine nerve fibres.

vascular nerve branches are provided with small groups of ganglion cells.

160. In **striped muscle** of man and mammals, reptiles and insects, the termination of nerve fibres takes place, according to the commonly accepted view of Kühne, in the following manner (Fig. 116):—A medullated nerve fibre, enclosed within a lamellated sheath (Henle's sheath) divides at a node of Ranvier, each branch—a medullated nerve fibre—enters under a variable angle a striped muscular fibre, the neurilemma

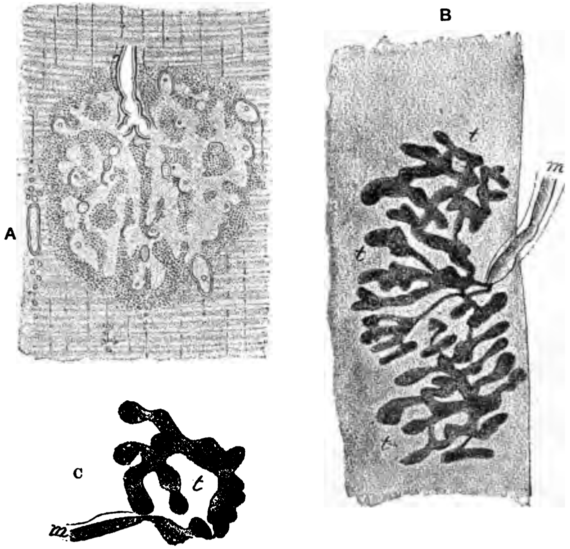


Fig. 116.—Nerve-endings in Striped Muscular Fibres. (*Kindly lent by Professor Kühne.*)

A, In fresh muscular fibre of Lacerta, × $\frac{600}{1}$; B, in gold-stained muscular fibre of lacerta, × $\frac{550}{1}$; C, in gold-stained muscular fibre of dog, × $\frac{1100}{1}$; *m*, medullated nerve fibre; *t*, termination of axis cylinder underneath the sarcolemma of the muscular fibre.

becoming fused with the sarcolemma, and the nerve fibre, either at the point of entrance or immediately afterwards, loses its medullary sheath, so that only the axis cylinder, with its axilemma, passes on, and then forms on the surface of the muscular substance a terminal arborisation or dendron, which is called the *nerve endplate.* Each axon, on entering, gives off by division several branches like antlers; in amphibia these branches are rodlike, long, and of the form of bayonets; in mammals they are crooked, hook-like. In all instances, however, the divisions are unsymmetrical. In many cases the arborisation of the endplate is embedded in a granular mass of protoplasm containing oblong nuclei. This nucleated protoplasm is identical with the substance of the sarcoglia, or the sarcoplasm mentioned on a former page. When the muscular fibre contracts, this endplate naturally assumes the shape of a prominence — *Doyère's nerve mount.* Each muscular

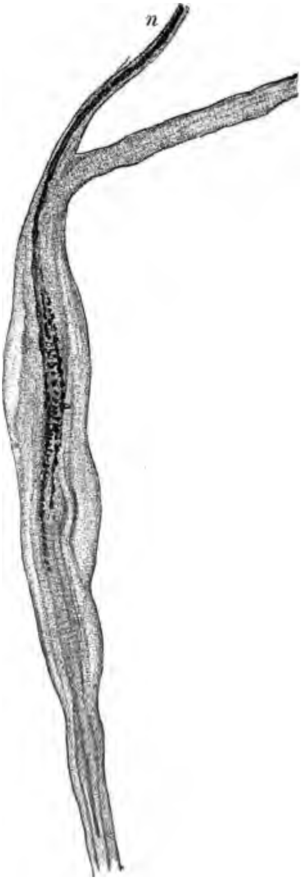


Fig. 117.—Muscle Spindle of the rabbit treated with gold chloride. (*Kölliker, II.*)

n, Nerve fibre, terminating in the middle part of the spindle as a spiral ending of fine fibrils.

fibre has at least one nerve endplate, but occasionally has several in near proximity. Each endplate is generally supplied by one nerve fibre, sometimes, however, by two. The contraction wave generally starts from the endplate. The *muscle* *buds* of Kölliker or *muscle spindles* of Kühne (mentioned on a former page) contain numerous medullated nerve fibres with lamellated Henle's sheath, and these nerve fibres terminate in the same manner, namely, by means of nerve endplates (Fig. 117). In these endplates the fine nerve fibres have a spiral arrangement (Ruffini). These are considered to be sensory end-organs. According to Kölliker, from the primary nerve ending of the mother fibre—*i.e.* of the undivided portion of the *spindle*—grow out the nerve endings for the thin daughter fibres.

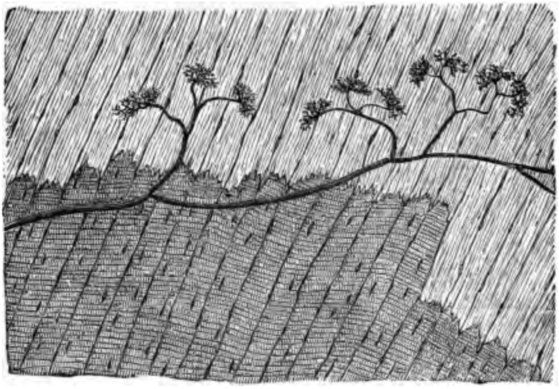


Fig. 118.—Termination of Medullated Nerve Fibres in Tendon, near the Insertion of the Striped Muscular Fibres. (*Golgi.*)

The nerve fibres terminate in peculiar arborising endplates of primitive fibrillæ.

Besides this intra-muscular termination, there is a plexus of fine nerve fibres, many of them said to terminate with free ends, situated outside the sarcolemma—*i.e.* intermuscular; such free ends are described by Beale, Kölliker, Krause, and others. Kölliker and Arndt consider these intermuscular fibres as sensory nerves.

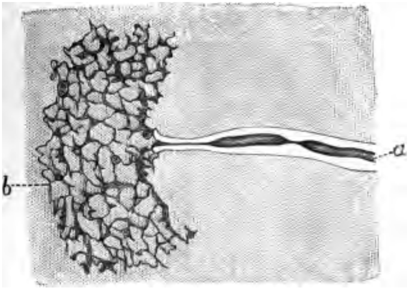


Fig. 119.—One of the Terminal Ramifications of the previous figure, more highly magnified.

a, Medullated nerve fibre; *b*, apparently reticulated endplate. (*Golgi.*)

161. **Tendons** are supplied with special nerve endings, studied by Sachs, Rollett, Gempt, Rauber, and particularly Golgi, whose work on this subject is extensive. These terminations are most numerous near the muscular insertion. They are of the following kinds:—(*a*) A medullated nerve fibre branches repeatedly, and the axis cylinder, after having lost the medullary sheath, breaks up into a small plate composed of a dendritic ramification of fine primitive nerve fibrils (Fig. 118). Owing to the number of the fibrillæ and their repeated crossing, it is difficult to say whether the appearances as shown in Fig. 119 correspond to a real network or to a dendron. This endplate is occasionally embedded in a granular-looking material, and thereby a similar organ as the nerve endplate in muscular fibres is produced (Fig. 119). (*b*) In the tendons of man and many mammals Golgi has shown that nerve fibres terminate in peculiar spindle-shaped

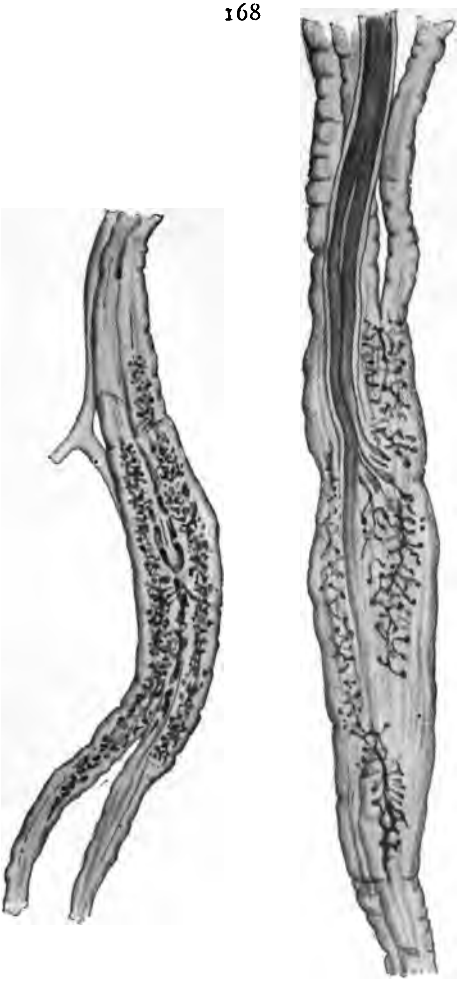


Fig. 120.—Two Tendon Spindles of Golgi in the rabbit, showing the distribution and spiral termination of the nerve fibres on the spindles. (*After Kölliker.*)

enlargements of tendon bundles (Fig. 120). These *tendon spindles* of Golgi consist each of two, three, or more tendon bundles within a common sheath; a bundle of fine medullated nerve fibres enters the spindle, their axis cylinders break up into primitive fibrillæ, which are arranged as a network and as spiral fibrillæ. (*c*) A medullated nerve fibre terminates in an end-bulb (Fig. 121), similar to those of the conjunctiva, or of a Herbst's corpuscle.

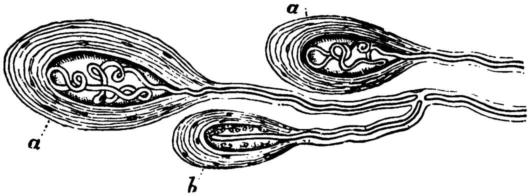


Fig. 121.—Termination of Medullated Nerve Fibres in Tendon. (*Golgi.*) *a*, End-bulbs with convoluted medullated nerve fibre; *b*, end-bulb similar to a Herbst's corpuscle.

CHAPTER XVI.

THE SPINAL CORD.

162. THE spinal cord is enveloped in three distinct membranes. The outermost one is the dura mater. This is composed of more or less distinct lamellæ of fibrous connective tissue with the flattened connective-tissue cells and networks of elastic fibres. The outer and inner surface of the dura mater is covered with a layer of endothelial plates.

163. Next to the dura mater is the extremely delicate arachnoid membrane. This also consists of bundles of fibrous connective tissue. The outer surface is smooth and covered with an endothelial membrane facing the space existing between it and the inner surface of the dura mater; this space is the *subdural lymph space.* The inner surface of the arachnoidea is a fenestrated membrane of trabeculæ of fibrous connective tissue, covered on its free surface—*i.e.* the one facing the *sub-arachnoidal lymph space*—with an endothelium.

164. The innermost membrane is the pia mater. Its matrix is fibrous connective tissue, and it is lined on its outer surface with an endothelial membrane. Also the inner surface facing the cord proper has an endothelial lining, but this is not as complete and continuous as that of its outer surface. Between the arachnoid and pia mater extends, from the fenestrated portion of the former, a spongy plexus of trabeculæ of fibrous tissue, the surfaces of the trabeculæ being covered with endothelium. By this

spongy tissue—the ***sub-arachnoidal tissue*** (Key and Retzius)—the sub-arachnoidal space is subdivided into a labyrinth of areolæ. On each side of the cord, between the anterior and posterior nerve roots, extends a spongy fibrous tissue, called *ligamentum denticulatum*, between the arachnoidea and pia. By it the sub-arachnoidal space is subdivided into an anterior and posterior division.

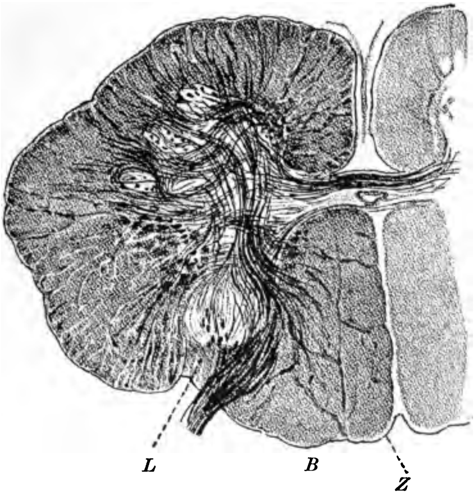


Fig. 122.—Transverse section through the Cervical Cord of a child, 2 years old, showing well the anterior white commissure and the numerous medullated fibres passing horizontally through the grey matter (collaterals) from and to the white columns. (*Weigert.*)

Z, Tract of Goll; B, tract of Burdach; L, tract of Lissauer.

165. The subdural and sub-arachnoidal spaces do not communicate with one another (Luschka, Key and Retzius).

The dura mater, as well as the arachnoid, sends prolongations on to the nerve roots; and the sub-dural and sub-arachnoidal spaces are continued into the lymphatics of the peripheral nerves.

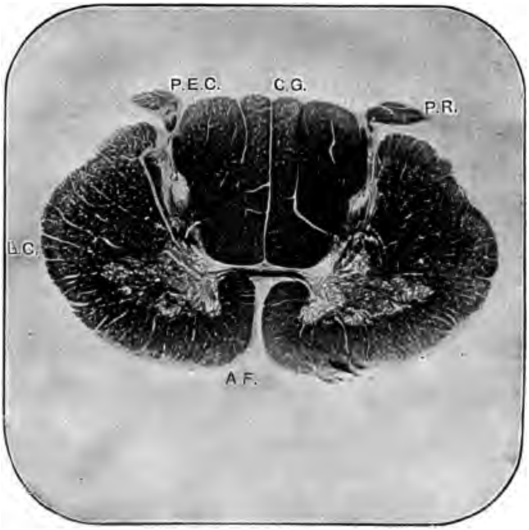


Fig. 123A.—Transverse section of the Spinal Cord in the Cervical region. (*Microphotograph of Weigert-Pal specimen.*)

P. E. C., Postero-external column; C. G., postero-median column or column of Goll; P. R., the issuing posterior root; L. C., lateral column; A. F., anterior or ventral fissure. The white matter is more deeply stained than the more central grey.

All three membranes contain their own system of blood-vessels and nerve fibres.

166. The cord itself (Fig. 122) consists of an outer or cortical part composed of medullated nerve fibres: the *white matter*, and an inner core of *grey matter*. On a transverse section through the cord the

contrast of colour between the white mantle and the grey core is very conspicuous. The relation between the white and grey matter differs in different parts; it gradually increases in favour of the former as we

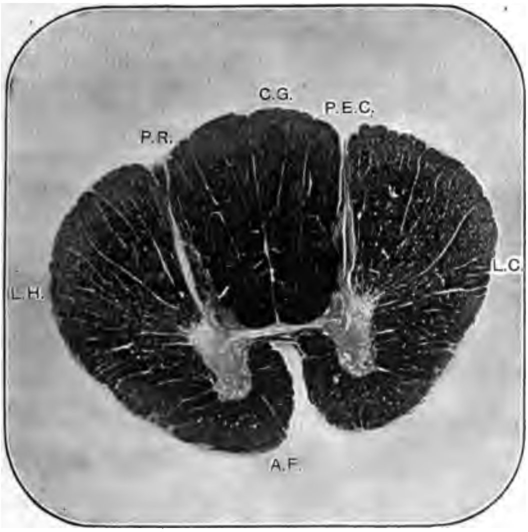


Fig. 123B.—Section of the Spinal Cord in the Dorsal region. (*Microphotograph of a Weigert-Pal specimen.*)

Note the small amount of grey matter which projects laterally at level L. H. to form a lateral horn. Note, too, at the same level on the median side of the posterior horn a definite mass, forming Clarke's columns. The lettering is as in the section through cervical region.

ascend from the lumbar to the upper cervical portion (Figs. 123A, 123B, 123C). The grey matter presents in every transverse section through the cord more or less the shape of a capital H; the projections being the *anterior* and *posterior horns* or cornua of grey matter, and the cross-stroke being the *grey commissure.*

In the centre of this grey commissure is a cylindrical canal lined with a layer of columnar epithelial cells; this is the *central canal;* the part of the grey commissure in front of this canal is the *anterior*, the rest the *posterior, grey commissure.* The shape of the whole figure of the grey matter differs in the different regions, and this difference is brought about by the breadth and thickness of the grey commissure as also of the grey horns themselves. In a section through the cervical region the grey commissure is long and thin; in the dorsal region it becomes shorter and thicker; and in the lumbar region it is comparatively very short and thick. Besides this, of course, the relative proportions of grey and white matter, as mentioned before, indicate the region from which the particular part of the cord has been obtained. In the lower cervical and lumbar regions where the nerves of the brachial and sacral plexus leave or join the cord respectively, this latter possesses a swelling, and the grey matter is there increased in amount, the swelling being in fact due to an accumulation of grey matter, with which additional numbers of nerve fibres become connected; but the general shape of the grey matter is retained.

167. The cornua of the grey matter are generally thickest in the line of the grey commissure: they become thinned out into anterior and posterior edges respectively, which are so placed that they point towards the antero-lateral and postero-lateral fissures. The anterior horns are in all parts thicker and project less than the posterior, and therefore the latter reach nearer to the surface, becoming attenuated and passing into the posterior nerve roots.

There is generally a third projection of grey matter—*the lateral horn* (see Fig. 123 B). This is, however, conspicuous only in the upper two-thirds of the thoracic cord.

168. The white matter is composed chiefly of medullated nerve fibres running a longitudinal course, and therefore, in a transverse section through the cord, appear in cross-section. They are arranged into columns, *one anterior*, *one lateral*, and *one posterior column for each lateral half of the cord*, the two halves being separated by the *anterior* and *posterior median longitudinal fissure*. The anterior median fissure is a real fissure extending in a horizontal

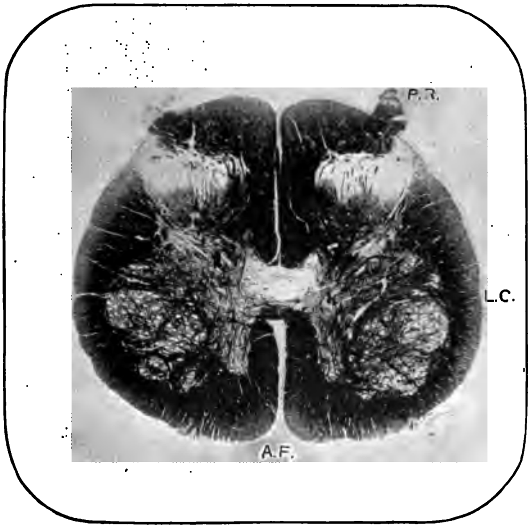


Fig. 123c.—Section through the Spinal Cord in the Sacral region. (*Microphotograph of a Weigert-Pal specimen.*)

The lighter stained grey matter is large in amount compared with the darker white matter. The tips of the posterior horns and around the central canal are very lightly stained owing to the presence of much *substantia gelatinosa*. Many medullated fibres are seen traversing the anterior horns.

direction from the surface of the cord to *near* the anterior grey commissure. It contains a prolongation of the pia mater and in it large vascular trunks. The posterior fissure is not in reality a space, but is filled up by neuroglia. It extends as a continuous mass of neuroglia in a horizontal direction from the posterior surface of the cord to the posterior grey commissure. The exit of the anterior or motor nerve roots and the entrance of the posterior or sensitive nerve roots are indicated by the *anterior lateral* and *posterior lateral* fissures respectively. These are not real fissures in the same sense as the anterior median fissure, but correspond more to the posterior median fissure, being in reality filled up with neuroglia tissue, into which extends a continuation from the pia mater with large vascular trunks. The white matter between the anterior median and anterior lateral fissure is the *anterior column*, that between the anterior lateral and posterior lateral fissure is the *lateral column*, and that between the posterior lateral and posterior median fissure is the *posterior column.*

169. Besides the septa situated in the two lateral fissures respectively, there are other smaller septa, neuroglia and prolongations of the pia mater, which pass in a horizontal and radiating direction into the white matter of the columns, and these are thus subdivided into a number of smaller portions; one such big septum is sometimes found corresponding to the middle of the circumference of one half of the cord. This is the median lateral fissure, and the lateral column is subdivided by it into an anterior and posterior division.

Similarly, the anterior and posterior columns may be subdivided into a median and lateral division (Figs. 123 A and 125).

170. Some of these various subdivisions bear

definite names (Türk, Charcot, Goll, Flechsig, Gowers) :—

(*a*) The median division of the anterior column is called the *direct* or uncrossed *pyramidal tract*, being

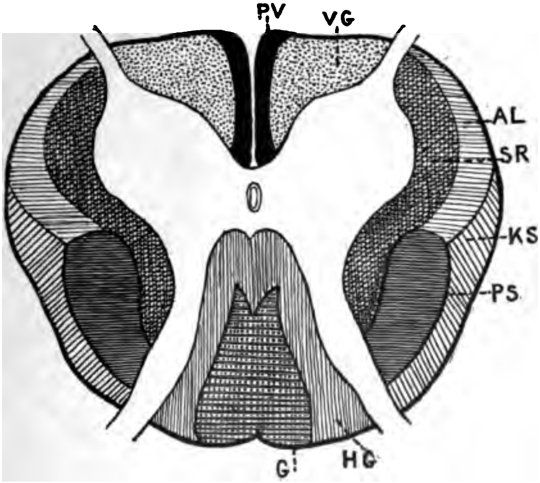


Fig. 124.—Scheme of the subdivision of the White Columns. (*After Fleschsig and Kahler, from Kölliker, II.*)

P V, Direct pyramidal tract of anterior white column ; V G, ventral ground tract of anterior white column ; A L, antero-lateral tract of lateral column. Gowers's tract ; S R, remainder of antero-lateral part of lateral column ; K S, direct cerebellar tract of lateral column ; P S, crossed pyramidal tract of lateral column ; H G, tract of Burdach of posterior white column ; G, tract of Goll in posterior column. Grey matter, grey commissure around central canal, anterior and posterior roots left unshaded.

a continuation of that part of the anterior pyramidal tract of the medulla oblongata (*see* below) that does not decussate in the medulla.

(*b*) The lateral division of the anterior column is the ventral or *anterior ground tract*.

(*c*) The *direct cerebellar fasciculus* or tract is the superficial portion of the postero-lateral column ; it is a direct continuation of the white matter of the cerebellum.

(*d*) The posterior division of the lateral column inside the cerebellar fasciculus is called the *crossed*

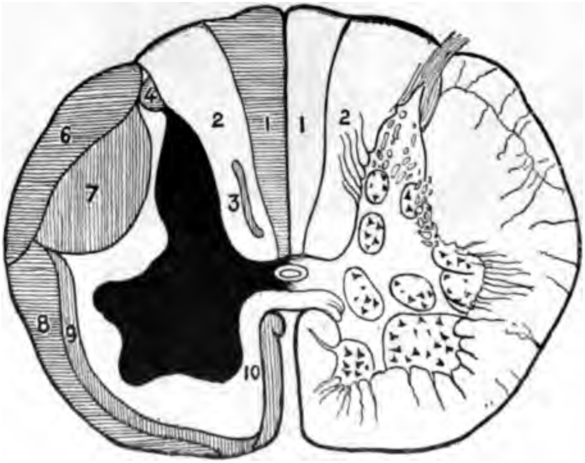


Fig. 125.—Section of Spinal Cord, one half of which (left) shows the tracts of the white matter; and the other half (right) shows the grouping of the ganglion cells in the grey matter (semidiagrammatic). (*After Sherrington, from Kirke's "Physiology."*)

7, 10, 9, and 3 are tracts of descending degeneration; 1, 4, 6, and 8 of ascending degeneration; 1, tract of Goll; 2, tract of Burdach; 3, comma tract; 4, tract of Lissauer; all these belong to the posterior white column; 6, direct cerebellar tract; 7, crossed pyramidal tract; 8, tract of Gowers; 9, descending antero-lateral tract; 10, direct pyramidal tract.

pyramidal fasciculus or tract, being a continuation of the decussated part of the anterior pyramidal tract of the medulla oblongata.

(*e*) The lateral division of the posterior column, with the exception of a small peripheral zone, is the *cuneiform* or *cuneate fasciculus*, or the *tract of Burdach.*

This part is connected directly with the median bundle of the posterior nerve roots, or rather by the numerous collaterals passing off from the posterior root fibres.

(*f*) The median division of the posterior column is called the *fasciculus or tract of Goll.*

(*g*) The *tract* or *fasciculus of Lissauer* (Fig. 125) is a small mass of white fibres situated between the outer superficial portion of the tract of Burdach and of the direct cerebellar tract, and close to the posterior lateral fissure.

In addition to these, a narrow mass of fibres in the depth of the tract of Burdach, near the grey commissure, represents a separate group, called the *comma-shaped tract:* and the superficial mass of white matter in the anterior half of the lateral column, which is called the *antero lateral ascending tract of Gowers* (*see* Fig. 124).

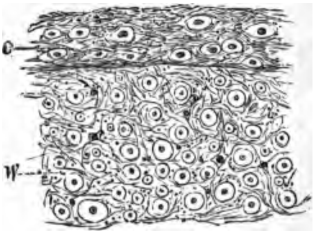


Fig. 126.—From a transverse section through a most peripheral part of the White Matter of the Cord. (*Atlas.*)

c, Special peripheral collection of neuroglia; *w*, white matter with the medullated nerve fibres shown in cross section, and neuroglia between them.

These various divisions can be traced from the medullata oblongata into the cervical, and more or less into the dorsal part of the cord; but farther down many of them, like the direct cerebellar tract and the tract of Goll, are lost as separate tracts, except the crossed pyramidal fasciculus.

Experiments have been made which demonstrate that these different tracts are physiologically of very different character. According to a well-established law—the Wallerian law—each nerve fibre has its nutritive centre in the ganglion cell with which it is connected, and if a nerve fibre is cut, that part which remains connected with the nutritive centre does not degenerate, while that part severed from the centre degenerates. Consequently, if by cutting the cord at a particular level some fibres remain intact above the section but degenerate below, they show *descending degeneration;* they have their nutritive centre above the section and are probably efferent fibres. On the other hand, those fibres which degenerate above, but remain intact below the section, show *ascending degeneration;* they have their nutritive centre below the section and are probably afferent fibres.

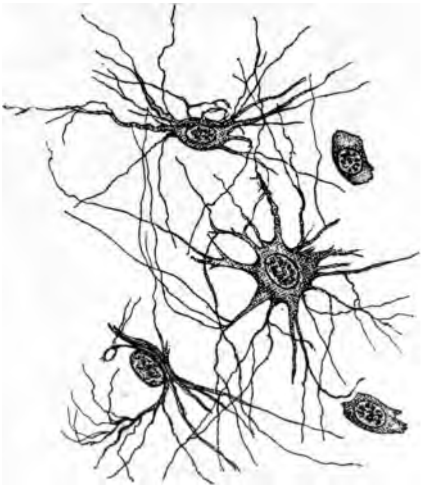


Fig. 127.—Stellate Neuroglia Cells of Golgi, with numerous ramifying processes; from the cord of ox. (*Kölliker, II.*)

By means of Weigert's method it has been possible to show (Weigert) not only that the nerve fibres constituting the white columns are grouped in different tracts but that in the embryo they obtain their medullary sheath at different but definite periods.

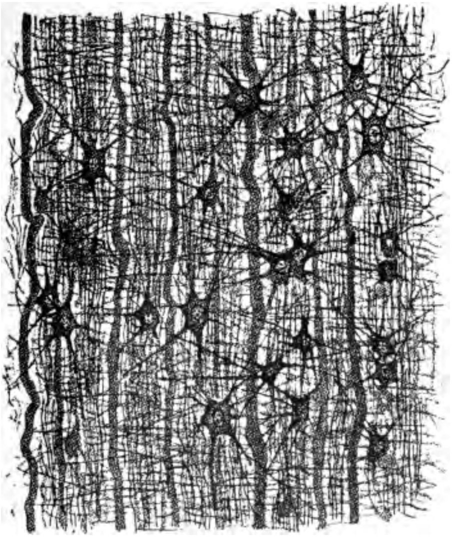


Fig. 128.—Longitudinal section through the Lateral White Column of the Cord of the Ox, showing the axis cylinders of the medullated nerve fibres, numerous fine longitudinal and transverse fibrils of the neuroglia, and the stellate neuroglia cells of Golgi. (*After Kölliker, II. Highly magnified.*)

Now in this way it has been made probable that the tracts marked in the figures in the above-named divisions of the anterior and lateral columns contain partly efferent, partly afferent fibres, while almost the whole of the fibres of the posterior columns are afferent; *see* explanation of figures.

171. **Structure of the cord.**—The most important and fundamental facts which have been brought to light within recent years concerning the intimate structure of the white and grey matter and of the mutual relations of the different parts and the different elements of the cord, the brain, the medulla, and the sympathetic system, are due to various new methods of histological examination, as also to the experimental methods of section of the cord and nerve roots in the living, and observing the after-effects as exhibited by degeneration of nerve tracts. As regards the histological methods, Weigert and Pal's method of staining medullated nerve fibres of the cord, Marchi's method of distinguishing between degenerated and healthy medullated fibres, and, above all, Golgi's silver method, by which nerve fibres and ganglion cells can be easily traced in their finest ramifications, have been the means of opening up an almost new field of accurate inquiry concerning all parts of the central nervous system as well as of the special senses. Golgi's silver method has enabled himself, and, to a very conspicuous degree, Rámón y Cajal and Kölliker, to bring to light facts concerning the intimate structure of the central nervous system, the ganglia, and the sense organs, which stand out in respect of clearness and trustworthiness. Other histologists, Lenhossek, Retzius, and others, have by this method also been enabled to contribute important facts.

172. The **ground substance** (Fig. 126) of both the white and grey matter—*i.e.* the stroma in which nerve fibres, nerve cells, and blood-vessels are embedded—is a peculiar kind of connective tissue, which is called by Virchow *neuroglia* and by Kölliker supporting tissue. It consists of three different kinds of elements: (*a*) a homogeneous transparent semi-fluid *matrix*, which in hardened sections appears more or less granular; (*b*) a network of very

delicate fibrils—*neuroglia fibrils*—which are similar in some respects, but not quite identical with elastic fibres. In the columns of the white matter the fibrils extend chiefly in a longitudinal direction, in the grey matter; they extend uniformly in all directions, and in the septa between the columns

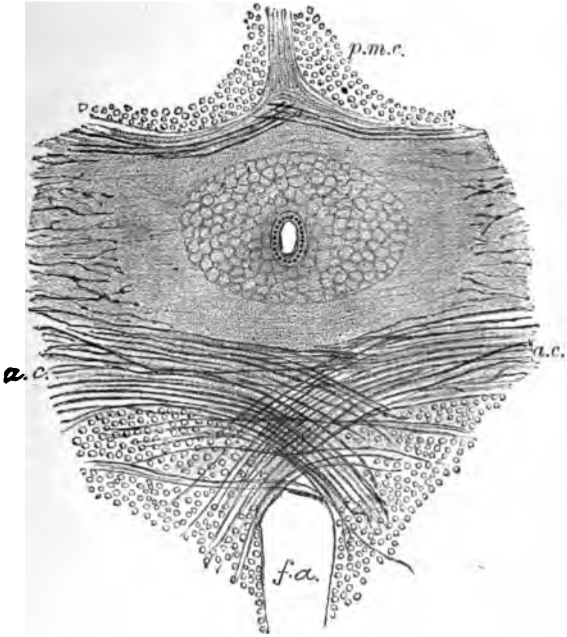


Fig. 129.—Cross-section of the central part of the Spinal Cord from the Lumbar region of an Adult, showing the central canal, its lining epithelium surrounded by neuroglia, forming the central grey nucleus. (*After Schäfer.*)

f.a., Anterior median fissure; *p.m.c.*, posterior white column; *a.c.*, anterior white commissure.

they extend for the most part radially. (*c*) Richly branched nucleated *cells* intimately woven into the network of neuroglia fibrils. These cells are the *neuroglia cells* or *glia cells.* Golgi was the first to show that though richly branched they do not anastomose with one another. The greater the amount of neuroglia in a particular part of the white or grey matter, the more numerous are these three elements (Figs. 127 and 128).

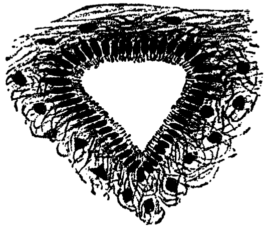


Fig. 130A.—Cross-section through central canal of the cord, showing the lining epithelium, from a child of six. (*After Schäfer.*)

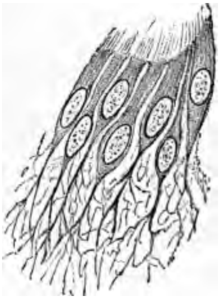


Fig. 130B.—Ciliated Epithelium lining the central canal of the cord in a child of six, more highly magnified than in Fig. 130A. (*After Schäfer.*)

In both the white and grey matter the neuroglia has a very unequal distribution; but there are certain definite places in which there is always a considerable amount—a collection, as it were, of neuroglia tissue. These places are: (*a*) underneath the pia mater—*i.e.* on the outer surface of the white matter: here most of the neuroglia fibrils have a horizontal direction; near the grey matter there is a greater amount of neuroglia between the nerve fibres of the white matter than in the middle parts of this latter; in the septa between the columns and between the divisions of columns of white matter ; at the exit of the anterior and the entrance of the posterior nerve roots.

(*b*) A considerable accumulation of neuroglia is present immediately around the epithelium lining the central canal ; this mass is cylindrical, and is called the *central grey nucleus* of Kölliker (Fig. 129). The epithelial cells lining the central canal are conical, their bases facing the canal, their pointed extremity being drawn out into a fine filament intimately interwoven with the network of neuroglia fibrils. In the embryo and young state (Figs. 130A and 130B), the free base of the epithelial cells has a bundle of cilia, but in the adult they are lost amongst the epithelial cells

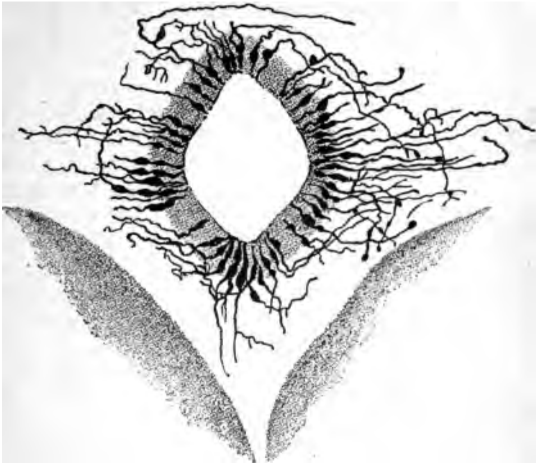


Fig. 131.—Central Canal of the Cord of a Child, 1½ year old ; the cells of ependyma are well shown, with their long filamentous processes. (*Kölliker, II.*)

lining the central canal; some show in preparations stained after Golgi's method processes of extreme length (Fig. 131).

(*c*) Another considerable accumulation of neuroglia exists near the dorsal end of the posterior grey horns, as the *substantia gelatinosa* of Rolando.

173. The **white matter** (Fig. 132) is composed, besides neuroglia, of medullated nerve fibres varying very much in diameter, and forming the essential and chief part of it. They possess an axis cylinder and a thick medullary sheath more or less laminated, but are devoid of a neurilemma and its corpuscles. Of course, no nodes of Ranvier are observable. In specimens of white matter of the posterior columns, where the nerve fibres have been isolated by teasing after hardening, many fine medullated fibres are met with which show the varicose appearance mentioned in a former chapter. The medullated nerve fibres, or rather the matrix of their medullary sheath, contains neurokeratin. The nerve fibres of the white matter run chiefly in a longitudinal direction, and they are separated from one another by the neuroglia. Here and there in the columns of white matter are seen connective-tissue septa with vessels, by which the nerve fibres are grouped more or less distinctly in divisions.

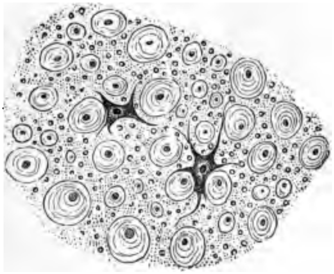


Fig. 132.—From a transverse section through the White Matter of the Cord.

Showing the transversely-cut medullated nerve fibres, the neuroglia between them with two branched neuroglia cells. (*Atlas.*)

174. Although most of the nerve fibres con-

stituting the columns of white matter are of a longitudinal direction—*i.e.* passing upwards or downwards between the grey matter of the cord on the one hand and the brain and medulla oblongata on the other—there are nevertheless a good many medullated nerve fibres and groups of nerve fibres which have an oblique or even horizontal course.

Thus: (1) The anterior median fissure does not reach the anterior grey commissure, for between its bottom and the latter there is *the white commissure* (*see* Fig. 129). This consists of bundles of medullated nerve-fibres passing in a horizontal or slightly oblique manner chiefly between the grey matter of the anterior horn of one side and the anterior white column, including the direct pyramidal tract, of the opposite side.

This anterior white commissure is in respect of position a continuation of the decussation of the pyramidal tract in the lower part of the medulla oblongata. As mentioned above, this latter passes down the cord as the crossed pyramidal tract in the inner part of the postero-lateral column. From this it follows that the fibres of the pyramidal tract of the medulla ultimately all cross over to the opposite side of the cord. The majority do this in the pyramidal decussation of the medulla, the minority descend in the cord as the direct pyramidal tract, but its fibres gradually along the cord cross over by the anterior white commissure.

(2) The medullated nerve fibres constituting the anterior roots of the spinal nerves leave the cord at and about the antero-lateral fissure; the fibres pass mostly in a somewhat oblique, some also in a horizontal direction through the white matter of the cord, and each of them originates, some sooner, some later, as the axon or axis cylinder process of a ganglion cell of the anterior grey horn. This is the fate of most of the anterior root fibres—that is to say, they are

primarily the axons of ganglion cells of the anterior grey horn of the same side; this axon becomes invested with a medullary sheath, and as an efferent medullated nerve fibre passes out through the anterior nerve roots. It is, however, probable that some of these fibres are axis-cylinder processes or axons of ganglion cells of the anterior horn of the opposite side, and as such pass through the anterior commissure, while a small number of anterior root fibres can be traced into the posterior grey horn, where they are evolved as the axis cylinder or axon of a ganglion cell of this part of the grey matter.

As will be mentioned presently, the grey matter of the cord contains, in the dorsal or thoracic portion (between the seventh cervical and second or third lumbar nerve), a special column of ganglion cells—Clarke's column; the axon of some of these cells appears to pass through the anterior grey horn to join the anterior root fibres.

But according to Flechsig, with whom Kölliker agrees, the axons of most of the ganglion cells of Clarke's column pass in a horizontal direction from the grey matter into the lateral white column, where they pursue their course as longitudinal fibres towards the cerebellum, thus forming the fibres of the direct cerebellar tract.

(3) The posterior roots. The medullated nerve fibres constituting the posterior roots are branches of the axis-cylinder process of the ganglionic cells of the spinal ganglion; they enter the cord as small bundles by the postero-lateral fissure, between the lateral and posterior columns of white matter, in a slightly slanting direction, and at the same time turned more towards the posterior column of white matter. Now the fibres of the posterior roots may be roughly grouped into a *lateral* and *median bundle*, the former containing predominantly fine medullated fibres, the

latter predominantly larger medullated fibres; the former as well as the latter, after their entry into the cord, sooner or later divide, each into an *ascending* and a *descending* medullated fibre. The ascending and descending fibres resulting from the division of the fibres of the lateral bundle form part of and pursue their longitudinal course in that portion of the posterior white column which lies next to the posterior grey horn and the lateral white column, and which is known as Lissauer's tract or Lissauer's bundle (*see* Fig. 122). The ascending and descending medullated fibres resulting from the division of the fibres of the median bundle also following a longitudinal course are distributed principally over, and form part of, the white matter of the posterior columns (Burdach's and Goll's tract). Some of these fibres are said, however, to enter directly into the grey matter of the posterior horn and to terminate there.

(4) All medullated fibres constituting the different columns of white matter and descending or ascending respectively in the cord send out at numerous levels horizontal fibres which enter or pass out from the grey matter. The discovery of these fibres by Golgi and Rámón y Cajal by means of the silver method constitutes a fundamental advance in our knowledge of the minute anatomy and physiology of the cord. These horizontal fibres which branch off from, or join respectively, the fibres constituting the different tracts of the white matter are called *collaterals* (*see* Figs. 122 and 123 c). The collaterals give off branches themselves. By means of the collaterals and their branches numerous connections are formed between the longitudinal fibres of the white columns on the one hand and the grey matter on the other. The collaterals terminate, or originate respectively, *near and around nerve cells in all parts of the grey matter by means of arborisations or dendrons* (Fig. 133).

175. As mentioned just now, collaterals are not limited to any one tract of the white columns, and are not limited to any particular level, but are given off or pass into respectively the longitudinal fibres constituting the white columns in general and at every level through which sections of the cord are made. Figs. 122 and 123c give a good representation of these facts.

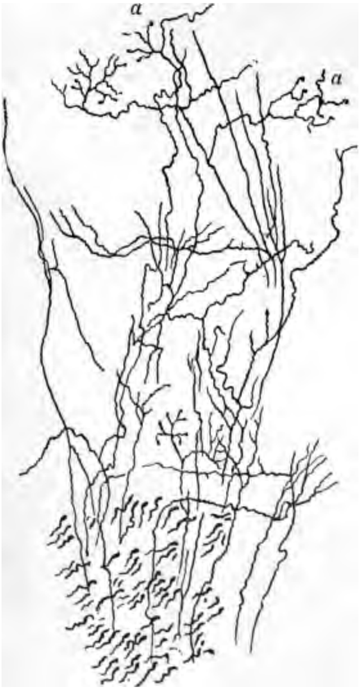


Fig. 133.—Collaterals passing from fibres of posterior column into the grey matter, and terminating at *a* by dendrons. From the cord of a newly-born child. (*After Kölliker, II.*)

Following, then, the longitudinal medullated fibres constituting those tracts of white matter, which were described above as descending fibres (showing descending degeneration) — *e.g.* the direct pyramidal tract, the crossed pyramidal tract, the inner portion of the anterior part of the lateral column—it is seen that at many points each sends out horizontal collaterals which enter the grey matter and terminate there as arborisations or dendrons close to, or around, ganglion cells ; and similarly the longitudinal medullated fibres constituting those tracts of white matter spoken of above as ascending tracts—*e.g.* the tract of Goll, of Burdach, of Lissauer, the direct cerebellar tract and the superficial parts of the anterior portion of the lateral column (Gowers's tract)—are connected, brought into relation, by means of collaterals and their dendrons, with the grey matter and with the ganglion cells situated in the latter. The bundles of fine nerve fibres, so conspicuous in every horizontal section, passing in a horizontal manner from the posterior columns through and around the *substantia gelatinosa* of Rolando of the posterior grey horn, are bundles of collaterals given off by the longitudinal fibres of the posterior columns.

176. The **grey matter** of the cord contains the same kind of neuroglia as the white matter—viz. neuroglia fibres and neuroglia cells ; the fibres do not, however, form longitudinal networks as in the white matter—due to the peculiar (longitudinal) arrangement of the nerve fibres—but are distributed more or less as a uniform network ; every section, therefore, be it longitudinal or transverse, shows the glia fibrils cut transversely, obliquely and longitudinally. The glia cells are the same in size and in their numerous branched processes as in the white matter.

In this matrix of neuroglia are embedded nerve cells or ganglion cells and nerve fibres and their ramifications. The ganglion cells are all possessed of several processes, and are therefore multipolar ; they differ in respect (*a*) of position, (*b*) of size, (*c*) of the structure, distribution and connections of their processes.

177. (*a*) **in respect of position,** the nerve cells form groups and aggregations which, in the longitudinal axis of the grey matter, are more or less

discontinuous, so that to each particular spinal nerve or segment corresponds a more or less separate mass. The following groups can be distinguished on each side (Fig. 125):—

(1) The *ventro-lateral group*, situated in that part of the anterior cornu which is in contact with the ventral portion of the lateral column;

(2) The *dorso-lateral group*, also situated laterally in the anterior cornu immediately behind or dorsally to the first-named group;

(3) The *ventro-median* group, situated in the foremost portion of the anterior cornu where this is in contact with the anterior column;

(4) The *dorso-median* group, immediately behind the former—*i.e.* next the anterior white commissure.

(5) As mentioned above, that portion of the grey matter which projects laterally between the anterior and posterior cornu of each side and about midway (Figs. 122 and 125)—*i.e.* the *lateral cornu*—contains in the upper two-thirds of the thoracic cord groups of ganglion cells which represent the cells of the lateral horn, but they are present only as scattered ganglion cells in the corresponding portion of the grey matter above and below the proper lateral horn (Waldeyer).

(6) Throughout the thoracic cord there is present a conspicuous group of ganglion cells, which group is in cross-section of a rounded or oval shape; this is the *posterior vesicular column of Clarke* or *Stilling's group*, and is situated at about the same level as the group of cells in the lateral horn; but while this latter is lateral, the column of Clarke is situated medially, and it has to be added that it really belongs more to the base of the posterior cornu. These two groups 5 and 6 belong therefore to the middle region of the grey matter.

(7) The posterior cornu contains in all parts only scattered cells not definitely grouped, like those

mentioned in the anterior cornu and the middle region of the grey matter. Also in the substantia gelatinosa of Rolando occur solitary ganglion cells. Amongst the cells of the posterior cornu the so-called *marginal cells* of Waldeyer and Lissauer deserve special mention; they are situated at the margin of the posterior horn, or rather of the substantia gelatinosa, where this is in contact with the dorsal and lateral columns of white matter. The marginal cells are long and spindle-shaped and different from most other cells of the posterior cornu in their being possessed of a distinct axon or axis-cylinder process.

178. (*b*) **In respect of size** the ganglion cells show considerable differences; the biggest cells are those of the anterior cornu mentioned as groups 1, 2, and 3; the cells of these groups measure about 70—130μ in diameter; while those of group 4, dorso-median group of the anterior horn, are considerably smaller, 30—80 μ; between these two sizes are the cells of the lateral horn and of Clarke's column, while those of the posterior cornu, with few exceptions, are comparatively small cells.

179. (*c*) **In respect of structure** each ganglion cell possesses a vesicular nucleus with a prominent nucleolus, and the substance of the cell is in all cases, when examined in the fresh state or in suitably prepared specimens, of the nature of a more or less fibrillated substance, between which a finely granular matrix can be recognised (M. Schultze). The fibrillæ are grouped in bundles, and appear continuous and radiating from around the nucleus towards and into the fibrillated processes; around the nucleus the fibrillæ appear more or less concentrically arranged. In the anterior cornu the ganglion cells contain normally pigment granules grouped near and around the nucleus (Klönne and Müller) (*see* Fig. 134).

Between the fibrillæ constituting the substance of the ganglion cells are found masses of granules (distinct from the just-mentioned pigment) which take the stains well: these are the *chromatic granules of Nissl.* In some ganglion cells they are distinct and conspicuous, in others less so. The presence of these chromatic granules indicates, it is suggested, a phase or phases of normal activity of the ganglion cells, whereas their disappearance and absence corresponds to a pathological state of diminished or abnormal function.

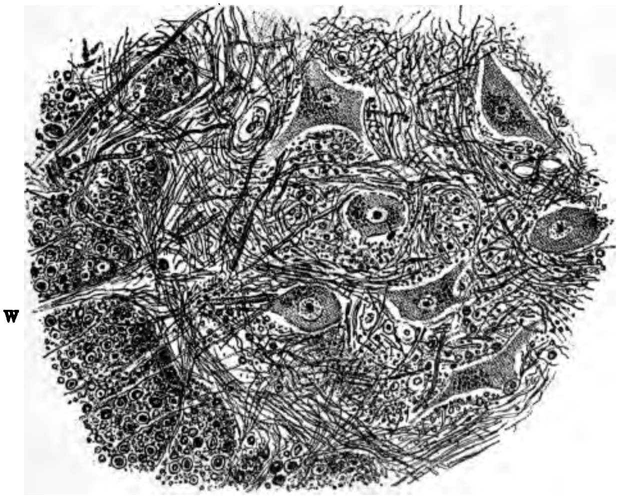


Fig 134.—Section through the Lower Lumbar Cord of Man. After a preparation of Klönne and Müller in Berlin. (*Kölliker, II.*)

w, White lateral column in cross-section; G, grey matter of anterior horn, showing ganglion cells with pigment granules, and many medullated nerve fibres.

180. The most important differences, however,

are noticed on the ganglion cells with regard to the **nature and connections of their processes.**

As mentioned on a previous page, all ganglion cells of the cord are multipolar; amongst the processes into which the substance of the cells is continued there is one, occasionally two, which become sooner or later the axis cylinder of a medullated nerve fibre; this is the axon or neuraxon of the ganglion

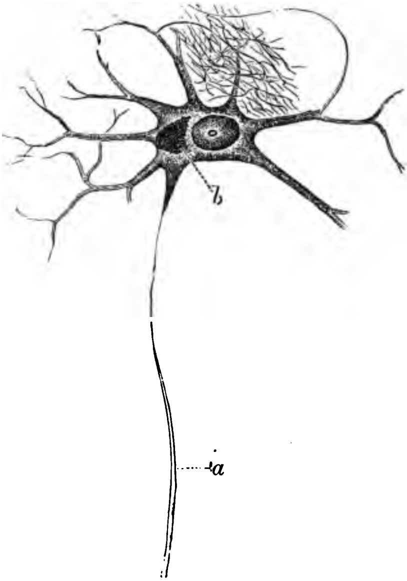


Fig. 135.—Isolated Ganglion Cell of the Anterior Horn of the Human Cord. (*Gerlach, in Stricker's "Manual of Histology."*)

a, Axis cylinder process; *b*, pigment. The branched dendrites of the ganglion cell break up into the fine arborisation shown in the upper part of the figure.

cell (Fig. 135). Such an axon is seen to come off from each of the ganglion cells of the anterior cornu

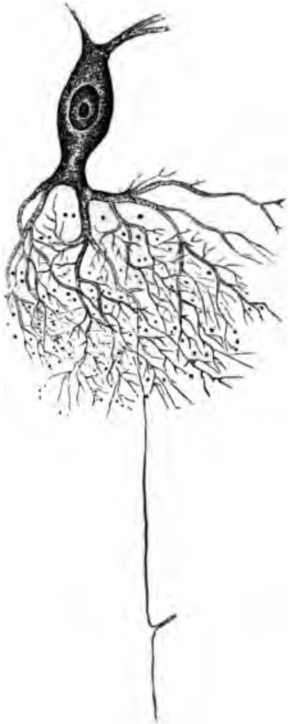


Fig. 136.—Isolated Multipolar Ganglion Cell of the Grey Matter of the Cord. (*Gerlach, in Stricker's Manual.*)

The dendritically-branched processes (dendrites) break up into the fine arborisation into which is seen to pass a fine nerve fibre and its ramification derived from a posterior nerve root fibre.

and of Clarke's column, and of some cells in the posterior cornu. The axon of most of the anterior cells is continued as the axis-cylinder process of a medullated nerve fibre passing out as an anterior root fibre. The axon of other cells in the anterior cornu, as also to a lesser extent of the posterior cornu (including those of the substantia gelatinosa), does not, however, pass into anterior root fibres, but becomes the axon of longitudinal medullated nerve fibres forming part of the lateral, and to a lesser extent the anterior, columns of white matter.

These important facts were discovered by Golgi and Rámón y Cajal, and were confirmed by Kölliker. According to Golgi and Rámón y Cajal, axis-cylinder processes or axons of ganglion cells from all parts of the grey matter may pass into the anterior commissure.

Cells of this character—*i.e.* possessing axons which pass as longitudinal medullated fibres into the white columns—are Kölliker's "*Tract cells.*"

181. Another very striking fact discovered by Golgi and by Rámón y Cajal is this: that the axon of the ganglion cells ramifies. In some, like those cells of the anterior cornu, whose axon passes into an anterior root fibre, the axon for some distance gives off few or no branches (Golgi's group A). In other cells, like those of the posterior cornu, the axon is much branched and its fibres are lost in the grey matter (Group B). The former are considered by Golgi as motor, the latter as sensory cells.

Besides the axon, all ganglion cells in all parts of the grey matter possess more or less numerous processes which, owing to their rich and dendritic branching and their distinctly fibrillated nature, are the protoplasmic or branched processes, or the *dendrites* (Fig. 136). In the cells of the anterior cornu, in those of Clarke's column and of the lateral horn, the dendrites are numerous and distinctly arborescent; they are less numerous in the cells of the posterior cornu; thicker branches give off laterally smaller branches, which by continued ramification become greatly attenuated and ultimately resolve themselves into arborescent terminations or *dendrons* (Fig. 136).

While the dendrites and their terminal dendrons of most of the ganglion cells are distributed in the grey matter, Golgi has proved that of some cells some of the dendrites pass into and are distributed amongst the nerve fibres of the white columns, a fact which Kölliker has emphasised, and which particularly holds good for the cells of the lateral horn in the cervical cord of the ox. (Fig. 137.)

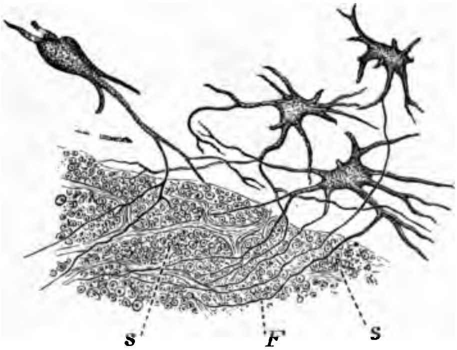


Fig. 137.—From the Lateral Horn of the Cervical Cord of the Ox. Highly magnified. (*Kölliker, II.*)

s, Lateral column of white matter in cross-section; *F*, fine dendrites of the ganglion cells penetrating into the white column.

182. Besides the ganglion cells, their axons, dendrites and dendrons, the grey matter contains nerve fibres of a different origin and connection. As mentioned on a former page collaterals of longitudinal fibres of all white tracts enter, or pass out respectively from the grey matter; here they ramify and terminate by arborisations or dendrons, which

are either intermingling with, or surrounding the arborising dendrons of the dendrites of ganglion cells or surround the body of the ganglion cells. Owing to the great number of such collaterals, as mentioned on a former page, their arborisations or dendrons form a considerable portion of the grey matter.

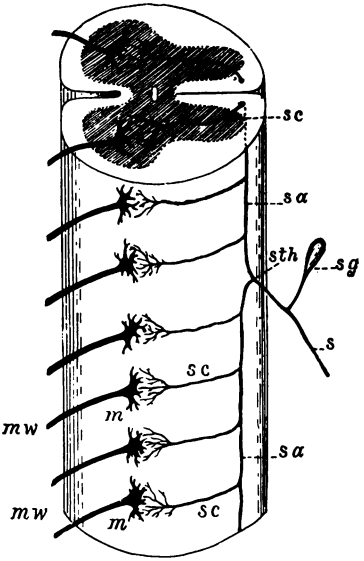


Fig. 137A.—Scheme of the Elements of the Cord concerned in Reflex Actions. Longitudinal view. (*Kölliker, II.*)

s g, Ganglion cell of a spinal ganglion; *s*, sensory fibre coming from the periphery; *s t h*, division of a posterior root fibre into *s a*, an ascending and descending fibre; *s c*, collaterals of same passing to motor ganglion cells, *m*; *m w*, motor (anterior) root fibres being axons of anterior nerve cells.

Sherrington suggests the term of *synapsis* (σύν and ἅπτω) as indicating the contiguous but not continuous relation of the arborising terminations of axons surrounding the arborising dendrites or the body of a ganglion cell. Such synapsis would then occur everywhere in the central nervous system (cord, brain, medulla, sympathetic ganglia, retina, etc.) where neuraxons and their collaterals of a near or distant ganglion cell arborise (terminate) around dendrites or the cell body of a ganglion cell.

A second, also considerable, portion of the grey matter is made up of dendrons, the developing fibres of which are not collaterals but are direct continuations of longitudinal fibres of the white columns; thus the descending branches of posterior root fibres terminate in this way in the grey matter, many of the main fibres of the anterior and particularly the lateral columns pass into or pass from the grey matter, and after a shorter or longer course, either on the same side or after crossing through the anterior or posterior commissure terminate as dendrons around ganglion cells or intermingle with the arborisations of dendrites of ganglion cells. The manner of the most probable connections and actions of the grey matter of the cord are illustrated by the accompanying diagrams (Figs. 137A and 137B), copied from Kölliker.

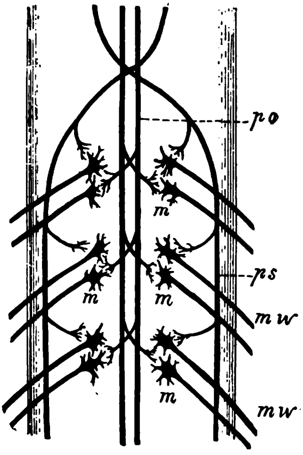


Fig. 137B.—Scheme of the Conduction of Impulses in Voluntary Movement. (*Kölliker, II.*)

p s, Fibres of the crossed pyramidal tract in the cord; these fibres had crossed (pyramidal crossing) in the medulla; collaterals of these fibres pass into and terminate in the grey matter of the cord; *p o*, fibres of the direct pyramidal tract in the cord, collaterals cross in the cord; *m*, nerve cells in the anterior grey horns; *m w*, axons of same forming the fibres of the motor (anterior) roots.

Before the introduction of the method of Weigert, and its modification by Pal (by which the medullary sheath of nerve fibres is stained), it was unknown that the grey matter of the cord contains medullated nerve fibres to any large extent. By the above methods, if successfully applied to the examination of suitably stained sections of the cord, it is shown that the grey matter contains a really astonishing number of medullated nerve fibres, running singly or in small bundles, horizontally and obliquely. All the above collaterals, as also the continuations of the fibres passing from the white columns into the grey matter, or *vice versâ*, are medullated fibres (*see* Figs. 122 and 123A).

183. The large vascular branches enter the white matter of the cord from, or pass out by way of the pia mater, being invested in neuroglia continuous with the tissue of the pia mater. By continued division they resolve themselves into fine branches, which pass into, or pass from, the network of capillaries.

The capillaries are more abundant and form a more uniform network in the grey than in the white matter. In the latter most of them have a course parallel to the nerve fibres, *i.e.* longitudinally. The blood-vessels and the ganglion cells are ensheathed in lymph spaces (perivascular and pericellular spaces).

CHAPTER XVII.

THE MEDULLA OBLONGATA OR SPINAL BULB.

184. As the cervical portion of the spinal cord passes into the medulla oblongata its parts alter in position and relation. It is possible, to a large extent, to recognise in the bulb, regions which correspond to different areas of the cord. Many of the cord areas are, however, lost in the bulb, and on the other hand, many new areas appear.

185. The *anterior or ventral fissure* is continued as far as the bulb extends. The *posterior or dorsal fissure* of the cord is also continued for a certain distance along the medulla, but this widens out in the upper part of the bulb into the lower end of the *fourth ventricle*. The line of origin of the anterior roots of the spinal cord is continued into the medulla, being marked out by the exit of the roots of the hypoglossal nerve. In the upper portion of the medulla this line of origin develops into a marked fissure. The shallow groove existing dorsally between the postero-median and postero-external columns of the cord is even better marked in the bulb, and divides the *funiculus gracilis* (median) from the *funiculus cuneatus* (external). The *postero-lateral* groove into which the posterior roots pass to the cord is continued up as the external boundary of the *funiculus cuneatus* and the internal boundary of yet another longitudinal projection, leading up to a prominence, the *tubercle of Rolando*. In the upper portion of the cervical cord there project from the lateral columns the roots of the spinal

accessory nerve. The line of origin of these roots is continued up along the lateral surface of the bulb and there arise successively along this line the roots of the *spinal accessory*, *the vagus*, and the *glosso-pharyngeal*. At the junction of the bulb with the pons the *seventh* nerve passes out in the same line, and passing through the substances of the pons the *fifth* nerve possesses a corresponding origin.

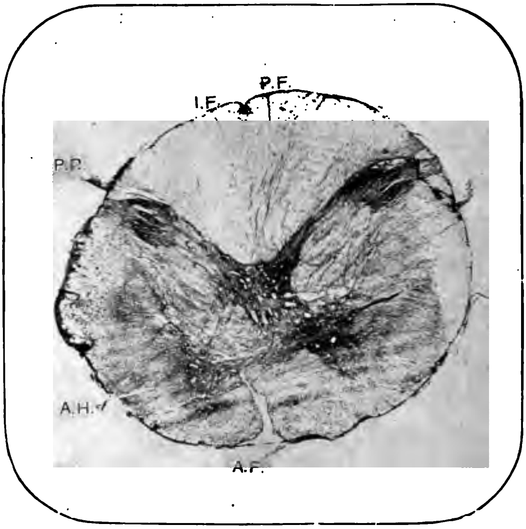


Fig. 138.—Section through the Lower End of the Pyramidal Decussation. The section is slightly distorted. (*Microphotograph of section stained with aniline blue-black.*)

A. F., Anterior or ventral fissure lying obliquely on account of fibres passing from crossed pyramidal tract on left side to anterior column on right; P. F., posterior fissure; I. F., corresponds to septum between Goll's column and postero-external column; P. R., posterior root of first cervical nerve; on the left side at level A. H. the anterior horn is separated from rest of grey matter. The substantia gelatinosa at tip of posterior horn is increased, and the angle between the posterior horns is greater than below.

186. It will be found most convenient in order to determine the relation of the different regions in the bulb with those of the cord, to examine the appearances presented by successive sections of the bulb, cut in a dorso-ventral direction, and commencing at a level immediately above the cervical spinal cord.

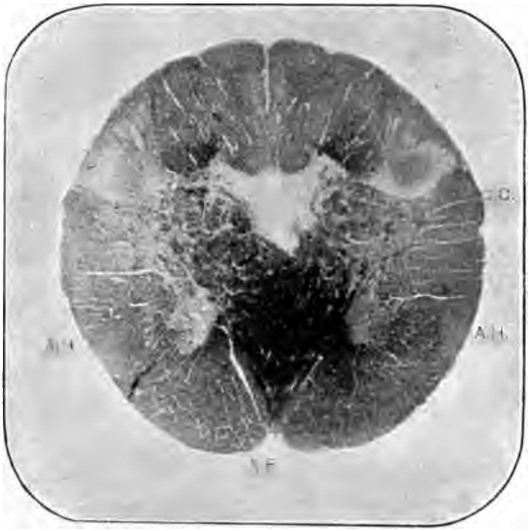


Fig. 139.—Section through the Upper Part of the Pyramidal Decussation in the Medulla Oblongata. (*Microphotograph of a Weigert-Pal specimen.*)

A. F., Remains of anterior fissure; the dark mass immediately above consists of the decussating pyramidal fibres; at the level A. H. is a light mass on either side representing the remains of anterior horn; at the level C. C. in the middle line is the grey matter round the central canal; the posterior nuclei are not clearly distinguishable.

187. **The region of the pyramidal decussation** (Figs. 138 and 139).—In this region the fibres

of the crossed pyramidal tract, lying in the dorso-lateral portion of the cord, take on an oblique course and, passing across the middle line, again resume their direct course in what would correspond in the cord to the anterior or ventral column. In their passage across to the other side of the medulla these fibres separate off the head of the anterior horn so that the grey matter of the *caput* lies in the anterior area disconnected from the main mass of the grey matter. The angle formed by the median boundaries of the two posterior

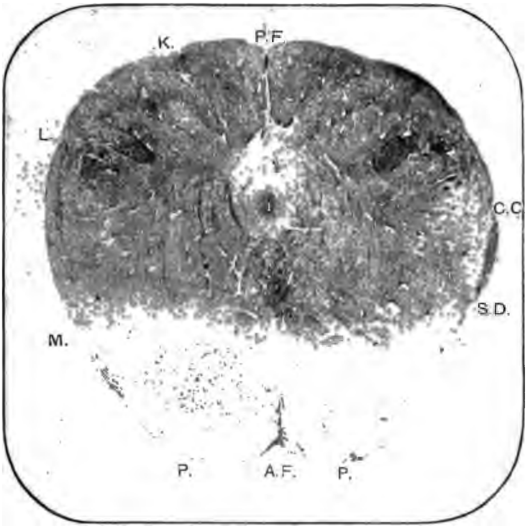


Fig. 140.—Section through the Medulla Oblongata at the level of the Sensory Decussation. (*Photograph of a Weigert-Pal specimen.*)

The section has not involved the olives; the pyramids are completely formed and project at P, and extend inwards as far as the level M, meeting in the middle line. At level of C.C. on middle line is the central canal, and at a short distance from this are seen numerous fibres arching round and decussating on middle line at level S.D.; K, lies between funiculi gracilis and cuneatus.

horns increases very considerably, so that these horns come to lie more transversely across each half of the medulla than was the case in the cord. There develop also from this inner margin of the posterior horns, in the upper part of the pyramidal decussation, certain protuberances of grey matter; a median mass projecting into the funiculus gracilis and known as the *nucleus of the funiculus gracilis* and a more externally situated mass, projecting into the funiculus cuneatus, and known as the *nucleus of the funiculus cuneatus.* The substantia gelatinosa at the tip of the posterior horn also becomes more conspicuous and causes the medulla to project in this region, forming the funiculus of Rolando. Higher up this projection becomes even more conspicuous and is known as the *tubercle of Rolando.* In the region of the pyramidal decussation the substantia gelatinosa of Rolando is separated from the surface by a longitudinal mass of medullated fibres which pass to the origin of the fifth nerve. This mass of fibres is spoken of as *the ascending root of the fifth nerve.*

188. **The region between the upper end of the pyramidal decussation and the commencement of the olives** (Fig. 140).—In this region the central canal is seen to lie more posteriorly corresponding to its gradual approach towards the posterior surface. The pyramids occupy well defined positions on the ventral side of the bulb immediately abutting on the anterior fissure and bounded laterally by the fibres of the hypoglossal nerve coursing from the nucleus of the twelfth, across the medulla. There is to be seen lying in the lateral region between the substantia gelatinosa of Rolando and the fibres of the twelfth, a mass of cells, which correspond to some extent to the more dorsal portion of the separated anterior horn, but which in part is to be regarded as a new formation.

This mass of cells is spoken of as the *lateral nucleus.* It is to be noticed that the posterior white matter is gradually undergoing absorption, being invaded by the grey matter of the corresponding nuclei. The grey matter of these nuclei gradually becomes more marked, the nucleus of the funiculus gracilis early absorbing the white matter of the column and lying quite close to the surface. The nucleus of the funiculus cuneatus lies rather more deeply, but is gradually invading the white substance. The central portion of the medulla becomes broken up, and fibres are seen passing in an arched manner from the nucleus gracilis mainly, and, to some extent, from the nucleus cuneatus towards the middle line. These arched fibres on reaching the middle line, for the most part bend longitudinally, and thus form a mass of fibres lying dorsal to the pyramids, and spoken of, higher up, as *the inter-olivary layer.* This decussation of fibres passing from the gracile and cuneate nuclei is sometimes referred to as the *superior or sensory decussation.*

189. **The region of the lower portion of the olives** (Fig. 141).—A few millimetres higher up than the last section the olives are seen to be distinctly formed, though they have not reached their greatest size and though the central canal is still closed. The central canal has at this level approached yet more closely to the posterior surface. Each lateral half of the bulb may be more or less distinctly marked off into three areas: a *median area* lying between the middle line and the roots of the twelfth nerve as they course across the bulb from the hypoglossal nucleus; a *lateral area,* lying between the roots of the twelfth and those of the eleventh, which issue more laterally; and an area, posterior to the eleventh roots, which may be called the *posterior area.* The lateral nucleus lies in the dorsal portion of the lateral area. The main

mass of the olive lies in the ventral portion of the lateral area, but two additional masses, similar in structure to the olive, may also be seen, one lying in the lateral area, dorsal to the main olive, known as the *dorsal accessory olive*, and the other lying in the median area, separated

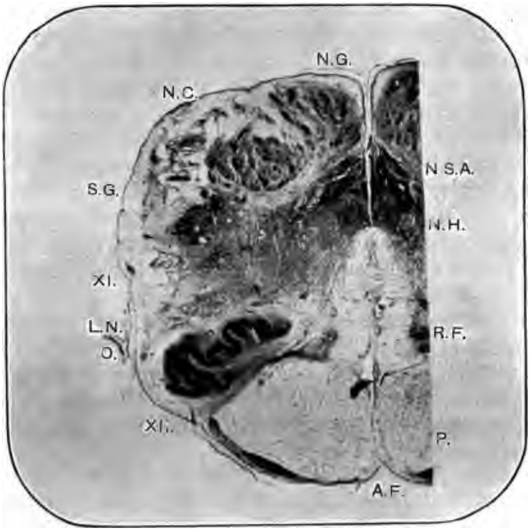


Fig. 141.—Section through the Medulla Oblongata at level of commencement of Olives. (*Microphotograph of a specimen stained with aniline blue-black.*)

The central canal is not yet opened out, and is at level of N.S.A.; the posterior grey matter is arranged in three masses, N.G., nucleus gracilis, N.C., nucleus cuneatus, and S.G., the substantia gelatinosa of Rolando: with respect to grey matter round central canal, that at level N.S.A., has cells forming nuclei of the XI, that at level N.H. forming nuclei of XII; XI is placed against the line of issue of the spinal accessory, XII against hypoglossal; the grey matter lying slightly beneath surface at level L.N. is the lateral nucleus; O, is at level of the twisted dark band, the olive; the large light areas at level of P are the pyramids; the area more dorsal at level R.F. is the reticular formation, in the middle line of which is the raphe (above A.F.).

from the main olive by the roots of the hypoglossal nerve and known as the *mesial accessory olive.* The more central portion of the section is seen to be broken up by fibres passing horizontally, separating others which are proceeding longitudinally; and yet other strands are to be noticed intersecting both of these. Nerve cells are scattered through this area, and more conspicuously in its lateral portions, and these nerve cells with attendant neuroglia may be regarded as representing the much diffused grey matter of the ventral horn which was separated by the decussation of the pyramidal fibres. This broken tissue is spoken of as the *reticular formation,* the more lateral portion, which appears darker on account of the nerve cells being more numerous, being referred to as the *grey* reticular formation, and the central part as the *white* reticular formation. In the middle line, where the reticular formations of either side are continuous, the decussation of the fibres coursing transversely, and the presence of many fibres running in a dorso-ventral direction, give a somewhat peculiar appearance to the reticular region. The narrow intermediate band is called the *raphe,* and it contains a larger proportion of nerve cells than the remainder of the median reticular formation. The lateral nucleus is still prominent at this level, the substantia gelatinosa of Rolando and the ascending root of the fifth are also seen. This latter is gradually becoming separated from the surface by a band of fibres running longitudinally but somewhat obliquely which represents the commencement of the *restiform body* or *inferior peduncle of the cerebellum.* The longitudinal fibres lying outside the lateral nucleus represent the upward continuation of the direct cerebellar tract and these fibres gradually pass into the restiform body. Fibres are seen proceeding in a ventral direction from the raphe, originating in part from cells of the raphe but having some connection probably with the nuclei gracilis and cuneatus, and these fibres passing from the anterior fissure encircle the pyramids and olives and pass towards the commencing restiform bodies. These fibres are spoken of as *external arcuate fibres.* There is to be seen at about this level for the first time a somewhat compact bundle of longitudinal fibres lying between the central canal and the substantia gelatinosa, though considerably nearer the former. This bundle is surrounded by grey matter, with the cells of which the fibres are connected. The fibres of the bundle mainly pass out with the roots of the glossopharyngeal nerve and it therefore has been called the *ascending root of the glossopharyngeal;* the names *fasciculus solitarius* and *respiratory bundle* are sometimes applied to the same tract. In addition to the nerve cells already referred to other important masses of cells are now to be seen distinctly. (*a*) *The nucleus of the twelfth nerve.* This consists of a group of nerve cells representing, probably, the most dorsal portion of the separated anterior horn, lying slightly ventral to the central canal. The cells are multipolar and vary in size from 40–70μ, and the neuraxons of these cells, after a somewhat irregular course, become the fibres of the hypoglossal nerve. The fibres on each side pass in a ventro-lateral direction across each half of the medulla and issue from the groove lying immediately lateral to the pyramids. (*b*) *The nucleus of the eleventh nerve.* It must be noted that the eleventh, tenth, and ninth nerves pass off at different levels from a group of cells longitudinally continuous. This group of cells can be spoken of as the combined nucleus of the spinal accessory (more correctly the *bulbar* accessory), the vagus and the glossopharyngeal. It is not possible to define precisely the divisions of the nucleus corresponding to each nerve. In the region of the medulla we are now describing, however, the roots belong to the spinal accessory nerve. Here the nucleus, consisting of a mass of somewhat spindle-shaped cells, 30–40μ long and 12–20μ wide, occupies a position dorsal to the twelfth nucleus and adjacent to the central canal. From this nucleus fibres may be traced passing laterally across each half of the medulla, and emerging from the bulb between the restiform body and the olive. (*c*) *The nucleus of the funiculus gracilis.* (*d*) *The nucleus of the funiculus cuneatus.* There may be seen external to this nucleus an isolated mass of cells, this is to be regarded as an accessory cuneate nucleus. (*e*) *The lateral nucleus.*

190. **The region of the middle of the lower half of the fourth ventricle** (Fig. 142).—At this level the central canal has opened out into the fourth ventricle. This fourth ventricle is furnished with a lining membrane, consisting of columnar cells (which may be ciliated), resting upon neuroglia. This lining membrane is spoken of as the *ependyma.* With the opening out of the central canal the gracile and cuneate nuclei have retreated from their median position and come to lie in the dorso-lateral region. The two gracile nuclei therefore are separated from one another by the width of the fourth ventricle. The nucleus of the twelfth nerve lies now in the median position at the dorsal surface, and in this locality a slight bulging into the ventricle exists which corresponds to the funiculus teres. Lateral to the nucleus of the twelfth lies the combined nucleus of the eleventh, tenth and ninth, here corresponding to the vagus nerve. The restiform body has increased in size and has now largely absorbed the direct cerebellar tract. The *olives* are also much more prominent, and have here reached their full development. These bodies each consist of a lamina of grey matter folded back upon itself, enclosing a space filled with white

matter. The convex portion of the fold corresponds to the external protuberance. This lamina has, in addition to the main fold, numerous secondary longitudinal

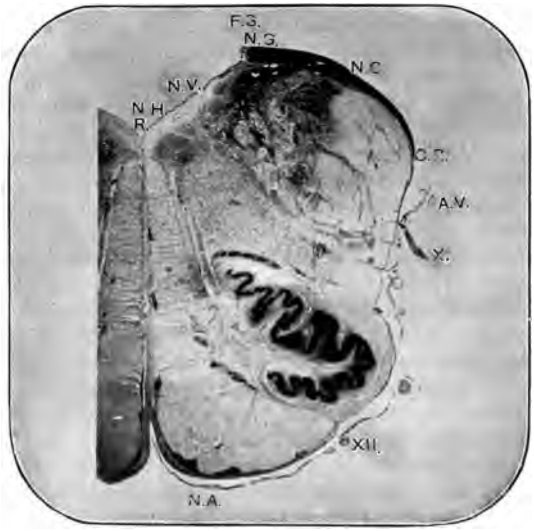


Fig. 142.—Section through the Medulla Oblongata at level of middle of Olives. (*Microphotograph of a specimen stained with aniline blue-black.*)

R lies over the raphe; a mass of grey matter just beneath N. H. is nucleus of the XIIth, beneath N. V. is nucleus of the Xth; beneath N. G. and N. C. are the nuclei of the fasciculi gracilis and cuneatus; C. R. lies against the light mass of the restiform body, slightly deeper at level A. V. is the ascending Vth; X is placed against the issuing X., and running down towards XII, from nucleus of the XIIth are the fibres of the XIIth; N. A. is against grey matter forming the nuclei of the external arciform fibres; the olive is seen lateral to the roots of XIIth as a deeply stained undulating band; a part is separated on the dorsal side (the dorsal olive) and a small part lies on median side of roots of XIIth (the median accessory olive); at level of C. R. and immediately beneath F. S. is a light circular area, the fasciculus solitarius; the grey matter lying at level of X and a little below the surface is the lateral nucleus.

folds, so that in transverse section it presents the appearance of a wavy band of grey matter passing from the formatio reticularis towards the surface, and then arching back it continues its wavy course towards the region from which it started. Internally there pass into the interior of the olive tracts of white fibres which radiate outwards towards the concave surface of the lamina. The lamina itself is composed largely of neuroglia, broken by nerve fibres passing across, there are also present many multipolar nerve cells. These cells possess axis-cylinder processes which possibly pass down into lateral columns of the cord and become connected with motor cells in the grey matter. They are themselves connected with nerve fibres which, springing originally from the cells of Purkinje in the cerebellum, course through the restiform body and, becoming cerebello-olivary fibres in the medulla, pass across the opposite olive. It may also be that the olives are connected by longitudinal fibres with the cerebral hemispheres.

It is possible to classify to some extent the numerous fibres passing transversely across the medulla in this region.

Somewhat lower than the transverse section we are at present considering were decussating fibres from the gracile and cuneate nuclei, called *internal arcuate fibres*, forming the inter-olivary layer. With the development of the restiform body and the olives, other fibres proceeding transversely become prominent. The *external arcuate fibres* may be held to comprise three minor groups. (*a*) Those passing from the raphe and encircling the pyramids and olives. Amongst these fibres in the upper part of the bulb are a mass of nerve cells known as the *nucleus arciformis*. (*b*) Fibres passing from the lateral tract into the restiform body. These are largely the more superficial of the fibres of the direct cerebellar tract. (*c*) Fibres passing dorsally from the gracile and cuneate nuclei to the restiform body of the same side. These fibres are also spoken of as superficial dorsal arcuate fibres. In addition to the so-called arcuate fibres there are other fibres which have a somewhat arched course, but which are best separated into a distinct class, and spoken of as *cerebello-olivary fibres.* These include a majority of the fibres forming the restiform body. They pass from the restiform body either laterally to the ascending root of the fifth, or to some extent intersecting it, and proceed towards the dorsal lamina of the olive. Most of the fibres then penetrate the grey matter (a few perhaps becoming lost therein), and passing into the white core of the olive emerge at the olivary peduncle and proceed to the raphe. The more dorsal of these fibres passing from the restiform body do not intersect the olive; the more ventral pass round the olive (and are hence regarded by some as external arcuate fibres), and entering between the olive and pyramid pass to the raphe. Having crossed the raphe these fibres either bend longitudinally or pass to the olivary grey matter. The longitudinal fibres lying between the olives in the ventral portion of the formatio reticularis are known as the *inter-olivary layer.* This diffuse column of fibres becomes more distinct higher up, and is then known as the *fillet* or *lemniscus.* In the posterior part of the formatio reticularis near the raphe, a fasciculus of longitudinal fibres is gradually becoming more distinct. This is known as the *posterior longitudinal bundle*, and is to be regarded as representing a part of the anterior or ventral column of the cord. The hypoglossal nucleus lies now on the floor of the ventricle, and external to it lies the *nucleus of the vagus.* The cells forming this nucleus may be divided into two groups, a more median and a more lateral. The median group consists of the larger cells. In addition to this superficial nucleus there lies in the formatio reticularis, midway between the fibres of the twelfth and eleventh nerves, a second nucleus known as the *nucleus ambiguus* or *motor nucleus of the tenth.* Fibres from this nucleus pass dorsally towards the main vagus nucleus, and issue with the vagus roots. Fibres from the fasciculus solitarius also pass out with the vagus. The vagus fibres thus have three centres of origin.

A section taken somewhat higher than that just considered would show the issue of the glossopharyngeal nerve. A majority of the fibres of the fasciculus solitarius pass out with the glossopharyngeal, running first towards the main nucleus, and then turning back and coursing with the fibres of the ninth nerve. There are also to be seen at this level, rather more distinctly than in the lower section, lying somewhat external to the fasciculus solitarius, and near to the grey matter corresponding to the nucleus gracilis, some scattered longitudinal bundles of fibres, which are connected with the auditory nerve, and are known as the *ascending root of the eighth.*

CHAPTER XVIII.

CONTINUATION OF THE MEDULLA OBLONGATA THROUGH THE PONS VAROLII AND THE REGION OF THE CRURA.

191. **The region of the middle of the fourth ventricle** (Fig. 143).—A dorso-ventral section passing through that part of the fourth ventricle across which the striæ acusticæ course would be somewhat below the precise middle of the ventricle, but may be conveniently considered first. Such a section would not involve the pons varolii and would probably just miss the exit of the sixth nerve. In such a section the upper part of the diminishing olive would be seen still. The formatio reticularis occupies the median portion of each half, and, laterally, the restiform body is here at its maximal size. Coursing ventro-laterally with respect to the restiform body are seen the higher roots of the ninth nerve; on the median side of this there appears the ascending root of the fifth. On the median side of the dorsal portion of the restiform body are seen longitudinal fibres belonging to the ascending root of the eighth nerve, and lying somewhat dorsal to this are nerve cells belonging to the same nerve. The dorsal edge of the section appears to be composed of transverse fibres coursing from the raphe round the restiform body and directed towards the exit of the eighth nerve. These are the *striæ acusticæ.*

Lying on the ventro-lateral side of the restiform body is a mass of nerve cells connected with the fibres of the acoustic nerve and called the *ventral ganglion* of the eighth. A section taken slightly higher would involve the pons and show some slight

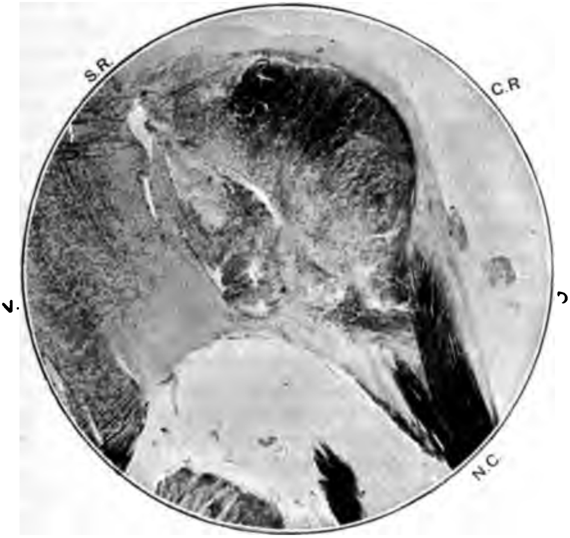


Fig. 143.—Part of a transverse section of the Medulla Oblongata through the exit of the Auditory Nerve. (*Microphotograph of a Weigert-Pal specimen.*)

The section is slightly oblique, and hence at the level D the cochlear nerve (N. C.) is seen dividing into ascending (the more median) and descending (the more lateral) divisions. The half-moon-shaped mass, dark in colour at level C. R., is the restiform body. The dark mass lying in centre of the photograph at level of V is the ascending root of the fifth nerve. The lighter substance at level of D lying mainly on inner side of the cochlear nerve is the ventral ganglion, the cells of the tuberculum acusticum are in the lighter substance, rather above the level of D, and lateral to the cochlear nerve. S. R., lateral portion of striæ acusticæ.

changes when compared with the section just described. The most conspicuous difference in the higher section consists in the presence of a prominent mass of transverse fibres passing across on the ventral aspect and breaking up the pyramids into smaller bundles. The auditory nerve is to be seen issuing as before, and on the median side of the eighth a second nerve, the seventh, passes out. It must be remembered that neither the sixth nor the seventh nerves pass by direct dorso-ventral courses outwards. The seventh nerve originates from a nucleus lying in the formatio reticularis midway between the ventral acoustic nucleus and the raphe, and at about the same level as the nucleus. The fibres from the facial nucleus at first pass dorsally and then turn longitudinally and pass for a short distance upwards, becoming involved in the nucleus of the sixth. After a short upward course they turn back again towards the lower region of the bulb, and, taking gradually a more ventral direction, finally emerge near the exit of the eighth nerve. There also pass out with the facial nerve fibres derived from the hinder portion of the nucleus of the third nerve. These fibres supply the orbicularis palpebrarum and frontalis muscles. The nerve cells composing the nucleus of the seventh are about 40-60μ in size, their neuraxons are directed dorsally to form the nerve fibres of the facial nerve.

A mass of grey matter is also seen lying slightly median, and ventral to the seventh nucleus. This mass of grey matter contains nerve cells, and is known as the *superior or little olive.* This, in adults, is about 4–5 mm. in length, but is better developed in lower animals. The cells are similar to those of the olive, about 30–40μ in diameter, with neuraxons and much-branching dendrites. Another mass of cells is to be made out on the ventro-median aspect of the superior olive. This is known as the *trapezoid nucleus.* Fibres may be seen proceeding from the ventral nucleus of the eighth, and passing on the ventral side of the superior olive and the trapezoid nucleus. These fibres constitute the *trapezium*, and form the most dorsal portion of the transverse fibres of the pons.

The connection of the auditory nerve with its different origins is now to be described. There are three main nuclei from which origin takes place:—(*a*) the *ventral or accessory nucleus* lying near the place of exit of the nerve, and, from its resemblance to a spinal ganglion, sometimes called the *acoustic ganglion;* (*b*) a mass of cells lying on the floor of the fourth ventricle, midway between the restiform body and the median furrow, called the *dorsal median nucleus;* and (*c*) a mass of cells lying near the ascending root of the eighth, between the median nucleus and the restiform body, but somewhat deeper than the former, called the *dorso-lateral nucleus* or *nucleus of Deiters.* The ventral nucleus is really divisible into two; a more lateral portion and the main ventral nucleus. The lateral portion forms the *tuberculum acusticum.* The eighth nerve can be seen to consist of two parts, one part passes to the median side of the restiform body, the other to the lateral aspect. The former is called the *vestibular* nerve, and the latter the *cochlear* nerve, corresponding to the destination of these two divisions. The cochlear nerve has finer fibres than the vestibular, the fibres of the former being $1–2{\cdot}5\mu$, those of the latter $2–4\mu$. The fibres of both nerves divide, like a spinal posterior root fibre, into an ascending and descending branch after entering the medulla. The ascending branches of the cochlear nerve pass to the ventral nucleus, the descending branches to both the tuberculum acusticum and the ventral nucleus. From the ventral nucleus fibres pass as already stated into the trapezium and become connected in part with the cells of the superior olive and the nucleus trapezoides. The cells of the tuberculum acusticum, and partly also those of the ventral nucleus, originate the fibres composing the *striæ acusticæ.* (Fig. 152.) The fibres, therefore, coursing round the restiform body, though apparently the continuation of the cochlear nerve, are really the neuraxons of cells of

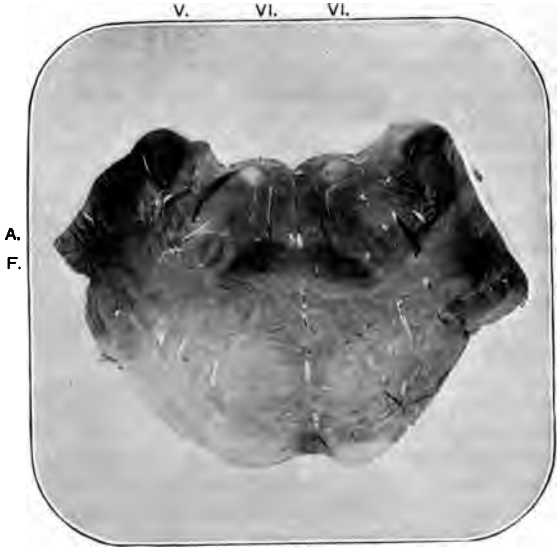


Fig. 144.—Section through the Sixth Nucleus and Genu of Seventh. (*Photograph of a Weigert-Pal preparation.*)

The lower half constitutes the bulk of the pons proper, with laterally the middle peduncles; the two symmetrical dark masses at level F are the longitudinal fibres of the fillet; on the left side and lateral to the fillet is seen a darkish mass with a lighter centre, the superior olive. The floor of the fourth ventricle forms the median part of the upper edge. two symmetrical light masses beneath VI are the VIth nuclei. Fibres from the inner side are seen passing downwards near the middle line, these are the fibres of the VIth. The fibres of the VIIth are seen passing apparently from the outer side of the VIth nucleus on the left side. The nucleus of the VIIth lies on dorsal side of the olive. The darkest tissue lying beneath V and at level A constitutes the somewhat scattered fibres of the ascending root of VIth. The genu of the VIIth is between the nucleus of VIth and the median sulcus and is better seen in the enlargement of this region. (Fig. 145).

the tuberculum acusticum and ventral nucleus, which are connected with the terminal arborescences of fibres composing the cochlear nerve. The vestibular

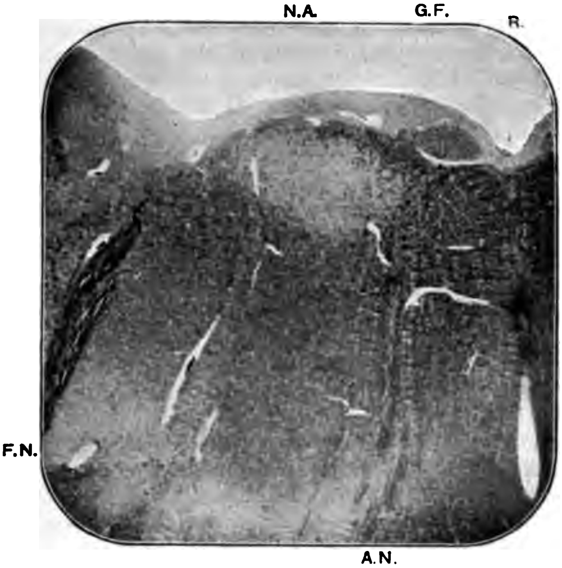


Fig. 145.—Section through the Nucleus of the Sixth, being a part more highly magnified of Fig. 144. (*Microphotograph, of a Weigert-Pal specimen.*)

The letters N. A., G. F., and R. lie over the cavity of the fourth ventricle. R lies above the raphe. A dark circular patch a little below G. F. corresponds to the genu of the VIIth nerve. N. A. lies above a circular light area which is the nucleus of the VIth. F. N. lies against the lower end of a darkly stained mass of fibres which can be dimly traced round the nucleus of the VIth towards the outer side of the genu of VII. This corresponds to the facial nerve just before it issues from the medulla. Fibres are seen passing from inner side of VIth nucleus towards A. N., the fibres of the VIth nerve.

nerve fibres also divide, on entering the bulb, into ascending and descending branches. These different branches become connected with the cells of the dorso-median nucleus, Deiters's nucleus, and the cells around the ascending root of the eighth. As regards the further course of the striæ acusticæ, these bundles show many fibres passing vertically into the central mass of the bulb or the *tegmentum*, as it is termed; other fibres of the striæ acusticæ decussate at the raphe, some pass thence towards the superior olive and turn longitudinally, others pass towards the restiform body.

192. **Region of nucleus of seventh nerve.** The nucleus of the seventh extends towards the mid-brain, almost to the upper limit of the nucleus of the sixth. A section taken through the junction of the upper and middle thirds of the fourth ventricle would pass through both these nuclei, showing the appearance seen in Fig. 144. The fibres here are seen passing from the nucleus of the seventh towards that of the sixth, which is seen on the floor of the fourth ventricle. Towards the inner side of this a more or less prominent mass of fibres of the seventh turn longitudinally, forming the *genu* of the seventh (Fig. 145), and there are seen laterally fibres about to pass out of the bulb, belonging to this same nerve.

The nucleus of the sixth or *abducens* nerve consists of multipolar cells, about 40–50 μ in diameter. The neuraxons of these cells pass from the median side ventrally towards the pons and run through this with an oblique backward course so as to issue at the lower edge of the pons in line with the roots of the twelfth. The nucleus is connected with the superior olive by a bundle of fibres, which is called the *pedicle of the superior olive.* Other connections exist with the pyramidal bundles and the posterior longitudinal bundle.

193. **The region of the upper end of the fourth ventricle.** (Fig. 146.)—A section through the nuclei of the fifth nerve would show the

characters of a transverse section in this region. The origins of the fifth seen in this section consist of two more or less distinct masses of cells, the outer being described as the sensory nucleus, the inner as the motor nucleus. From these masses of cells nerve fibres are seen to pass in a ventro-lateral direction to the fifth nerve. The more exact origin of this nerve may be now referred to. In the first

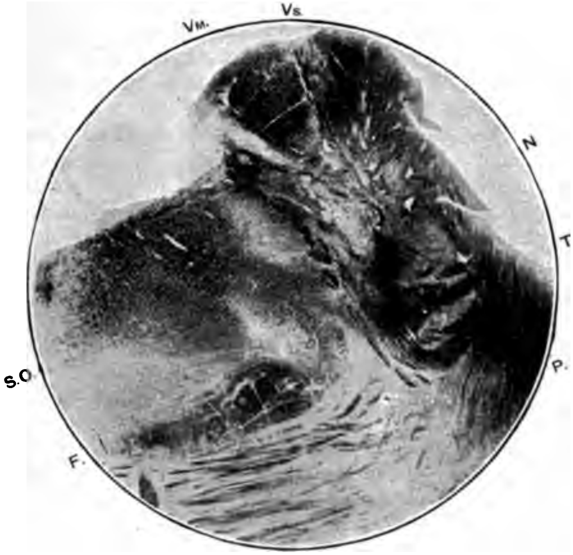


Fig. 146.—Section through the Nucleus of the Fifth Nerve. (*Microphotograph of a Weigert-Pal preparation.*)

Below is seen a small part of the pons proper, and at P are fibres passing circumferentially towards the pons. At level F is a dark mass on left side of middle line of section, the fillet (above this and near the centre of the microphotograph) at level S.O. is the superior olive. At level N. and beneath VM. and VS. are the two nuclei of the Vth; from these and between these, at level T, are seen fibres passing downwards towards the pons fibres—these form the Vth nerve.

place the nerve consists of two parts, the motor and the sensory divisions. The *sensory division* proceeds from the Gasserian ganglion, and, on reaching the deeper layers of the pons, the different fibres divide into ascending and descending portions, like an ordinary sensory nerve. The descending portions form a bundle of fibres, the so-called *ascending* root of the fifth, which has been referred to in most of the regions already described. This can be traced down distinctly as far as the pyramidal decussation. The bundle diminishes in amount on tracing it downwards, and is always associated with a mass of grey matter lying on the median side, the substantia gelatinosa. In this substantia gelatinosa are cells round which the fibres of the "ascending" root form arborescences. At the level of the exit of the fifth these cells of the substantia gelatinosa are more evident, and are referred to as the *chief sensory nucleus*. The ascending branches of the bifurcating sensory root become connected with the cells of the chief nucleus. From the cells lying in the substantia gelatinosa against the "ascending" fifth along its whole length there pass, towards the middle line, arched fibres, which cross the raphe, then become longitudinal in their course and enter the fillet. On their way towards the upper part of the brain these fillet fibres of the fifth give off numerous collaterals which are connected with cells in the reticular formation. The *motor root* springs from the motor nucleus. This occupies the position somewhat of an upward continuation of the seventh nucleus. It consists of large multipolar cells ($50-70\mu$) having, however, blunt, unbranched processes. The fibres forming the motor root are partially decussated, so that the root on one side is composed of fibres derived from the motor nuclei of both sides. There are connections between the motor and sensory nuclei which may furnish the path for reflex masticatory action. There must also exist connections with fibres of the pyramidal system. Passing dorsally between the two nuclei are seen fibres which turn longitudinally and form a small tract traceable, upwards, about as far as the anterior corpora quadrigemina. This is known as the "*descending*" *or cerebral root of the fifth.* It will perhaps be well to describe its course here. In the region of the posterior corpora quadrigemina it lies near the dorsal angle of the superior cerebellar peduncle and dorso-lateral to the outer angle of the posterior longitudinal bundle. It is separated from this bundle by a mass of pigmented cells, known as the *substantia ferruginea* (Fig. 147). The "descending" root can be traced upwards as a bundle of large fibres against which lies scattered round or spindle-shaped nerve cells, less deeply pigmented than those of the substantia ferruginea. Passing to the level of the anterior corpora quadrigemina, the root can be seen for some distance, lying at the edge of the grey matter surrounding the Sylvian aqueduct and near the upper end of the anterior corpora quadrigemina it becomes lost. Returning to other structures seen at the level of the exit of the fifth nerve, it will be well to refer to the appearance now presented by the *fillet.*

In the middle of the fourth ventricle the *fillet* consists of a mass of longitudinal fibres lying on either side near the middle line and separating the formatio reticularis from the transverse fibres of the pons. In the sub-pontine region the fillet fibres lie between the olives, forming the inter-olivary layer. In the upper portion of the fourth ventricle the fillet on either side divides into two masses, one part lying between the superior olive and the middle line, forming the *median fillet,* the other lying dorsal to the superior olive and known as the lateral fillet.

The fibres of the median fillet are derived originally from the nuclei of the funiculi gracilis and cuneatus as well as from the nuclei of the vagus, glasso-pharyngeal, and vestibular nerve. The lateral fillet probably originates (1) from fibres of the trapezium, passing from the ventral acoustic ganglion of the opposite side and, therefore, connected with the cochlear root of the eighth; (2) from the superior olives on both sides and, higher up, from a collection of cells in the course of the lateral fillet, known as the *nucleus of the lateral fillet*; (3) from longitudinal fibres lying against the superior olive, which increase in number on proceeding upwards; (4) possibly, from fibres derived from the striæ acusticæ, which have passed ventrally into the tegmentum and turned into the tract of the fillet.

The *pons* proper is made up of numbers of transverse fibres passing laterally from the middle peduncles of the cerebellum on one side to that on the other. In crossing ventrally upon what is the continuation of the substance of the bulb these fibres divide the pyramids into groups of longitudinal fibres. The more dorsal of these transverse fibres (those lying immediately adjacent to the upward continuation of the formatio reticularis) are known by the special name of the *trapezium*. Amongst the transverse fibres of the pons are numerous scattered masses of grey matter with which many of the longitudinal fibres become connected.

194. **The region of the posterior corpora quadrigemina and upper part of the pons.**—The first section taken is immediately below (distal) the posterior corpora quadrigemina. The fourth ventricle has here narrowed to form the commencement of the *aqueduct of Sylvius*. Surrounding the channel is the ependyma enveloped on all sides by a considerable thickness of grey matter. In that

portion lying on the ventral side may be seen masses of cells forming the commencement of the nuclei of the fourth nerve. Lying again ventral to this grey matter are two prominent longitudinal bundles on

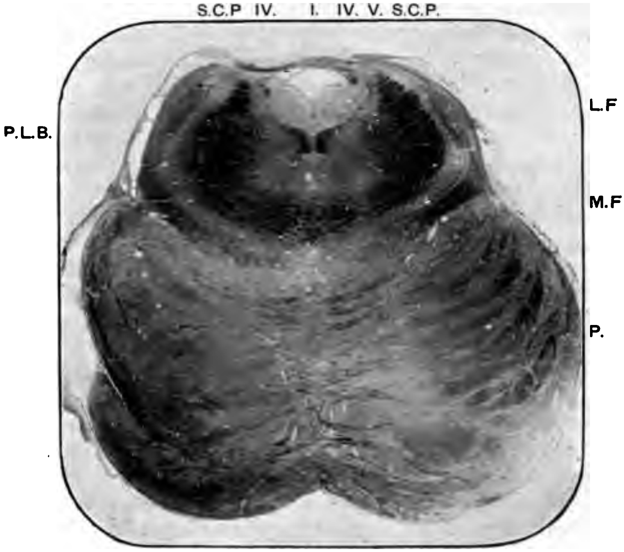


Fig. 147.—Section through the Pons Varolii immediately below the Posterior Corpora Quadrigemina. (*Photograph of a Weigert-Pal specimen.*)

The main mass of the section forms the fibres of the pons (P). The two large dark masses in the upper part (under S. C. P.), the lower ends meeting in middle line, are the superior cerebellar peduncles or brachia conjunctiva. The area included between their lower halves forms the tegmentum. The quadrangular space below I is the Sylvian aqueduct. Decussating in the valve of Vieussens above are seen fibres of the IVth nerve, the two small dark masses below IV being the main trunks lying obliquely. Lying a short distance below the aqueduct at P. L. B. are two dark comma-shaped masses, the posterior longitudinal bundles. The two elongated dark masses one lying against L. F., the other passing between the pons fibres and the superior cerebellar peduncles opposite M. F. are the lateral and median fillets. The darkish mass lying below V, just on the median side of the upper part of the peduncle is the descending root of Vth.

either side of the middle line, tapering towards the lateral region. These are the posterior longitudinal bundles. Near the lateral tapering end of these bundles may be seen the *descending root of the fifth* nerve, separated by a mass of cells forming the *substantia ferruginea* or *locus cœruleus.* Lying to the median side of the root of the fifth may be seen bundles of white fibres passing into the *superior medullary velum* or *valve of Vieussens*, decussating here (Fig. 147) and issuing laterally as the fourth nerve. Lying again ventrally and laterally to the posterior longitudinal bundles, and separated from them by what is an upward continuation of the reticular formation, are the upward prolongations of the *superior cerebellar peduncles* or *brachia conjunctiva.* There at the level of the nuclei of the fifth nerve, in section, two semicircular masses lie immediately lateral to the side of the fourth ventricle. Passing upwards, they gradually take a more ventral position till, as in the present section, they commence to fuse in the middle line. At a short distance externally and ventrally to the superior cerebellar peduncle is seen another band of longitudinal fibres. This band is of considerable thickness between the peduncle and the lateral surface, then passing ventrally it narrows somewhat, and widens again to a fairly broad band lying on the dorsal side of the pons proper. This is the *fillet* or *lemniscus*, the lateral portion with nerve cells forming its nucleus being the *lateral fillet*, that portion lying adjacent to the pons being the *median fillet.* Ventrally to this again is the substance of the pons proper, having the characters described in § 193.

A section slightly higher would pass through the posterior corpora quadrigemina. Here, there would appear two protuberances, dorso-laterally to the aqueduct. The lateral fillet forms connections with these bodies. The pons proper is here somewhat smaller, the upper limit being approached. The two superior cerebellar peduncles gradually lessen in width, their lateral extensions disappearing by degrees. The nucleus of the fourth nerve consists of a mass of large multipolar cells lying in the grey matter on the ventral side of the aqueduct and near the middle line, and reaching from the upper to almost the lower extremity of the posterior corpora quadrigemina. The fibres from these cells take a somewhat oblique backward course to the lower limit of the posterior corpora quadrigemina where they decussate, as already described. In the region of the posterior corpora quadrigemina the posterior longitudinal bundle is very prominent. The basal ends of the ependyma lining the aqueduct are frequently continued into a set of fine fibres which pass through the grey matter (and even beyond) and give a radially striated appearance to the region adjacent to the aqueduct.

195. **The region of the anterior corpora quadrigemina and the crura cerebri.**—At this level (Fig. 148) the pons has disappeared, and its position is occupied by two well-marked protuberances on the ventral side, spoken of as the *crura cerebri.* Lying dorsally to the crus on each side is a broad band of black pigmented cells, forming the *substantia nigra.* The grey matter around the aqueduct is considerable, the posterior longitudinal bundle is somewhat less conspicuous than below and forms a narrow band lying at the ventral edge of the central grey matter. Large nerve cells lie in the ventral portion of this grey matter, forming the nuclei of the third nerve, the fibres of which can be seen passing ventrally in many bundles. In the middle line between these roots a well-marked raphe is visible. Lying midway between the central grey matter and the substantia

nigra is a large mass of cells, known as the red nucleus. In man this nucleus consists of cells varying in size from 20–75μ. These nuclei have some

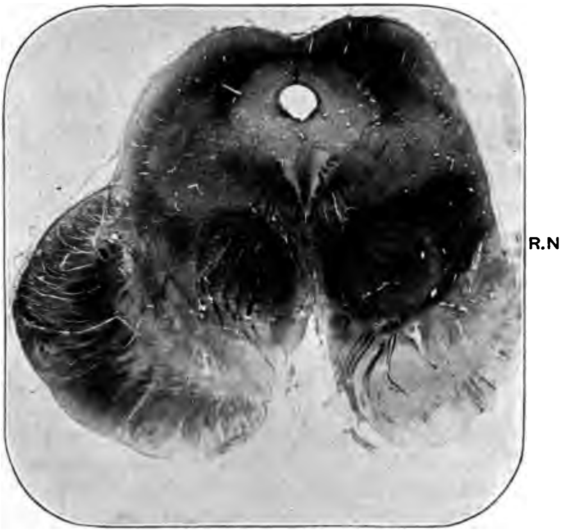


Fig. 148.—Section through the Anterior Corpora Quadrigemina. (*Photograph of a Weigert-Pal preparation.*)

The section is somewhat oblique, being slightly higher on the right side than the left. The symmetrical projections above are the anterior corpora quadrigemina. The opening between them is the Sylvian aqueduct. The lighter substance around this is the grey matter surrounding the iter. The darker masses forming the lower boundary of this grey matter arranged in discrete areas on right side are the posterior longitudinal bundles, lying in which are cells forming the nucleus of the third nerve. The bundles of fibres passing in an arched manner downwards from the third nucleus are the fibres of the third nerve. At level R. N. on right side is a large dark mass lying in a still darker patch, having the fibres of the third passing through its median region. This is the commencement of the red nucleus, which is not yet evident on the left side, where a corresponding dark mass consists of the decussated fibres of the superior cerebellar peduncle. On the left side lying below and laterally to this mass and light in shade is the substantia nigra, this forms the base of a projection (the crus cerebri), in which the fibres of the pyramids and other fibres pass longitudinally. The dark band somewhat arched passing upwards to the anterior corpus quadrigeminum from the dark mass of the superior cerebellar peduncle is the fillet.

connection with the superior cerebellar peduncles, which terminate here in their upward course. Laterally, the fillet is seen passing dorsally towards the prominent *anterior corpus quadrigeminum.* A small portion of the *brachium* of the latter may also be seen. The upward continuation of the reticular formation corresponds to the mass between the ventral aspect of the central grey matter and the substantia nigra, and is called the *tegmentum.* The locus cœruleus is no longer seen, but the descending fifth is still apparent.

Structure of the anterior corpus quadrigeminum. Externally there is a thin layer of white matter about 30-40μ in thickness. This is known as (*a*) the *stratum zonale.* The white fibres in this layer pass through the superior brachium from the optic tracts. From the layer many fibres enter the inner layers, and in them form dendritic ramifications. (*b*) The *stratum cinereum.* In this layer are numerous cells, whose neuraxons pass inwards. (*c*) The *stratum albo-cinereum externum.* This layer contains numerous small and large cells and nerve fibres. The nerve fibres enter the layer largely from the optic tract by the superior brachium. A considerable amount of decussation of these fibres occurs on the median side with those of the opposite corpus quadrigeminum anterius. (*d*) The *stratum albo-cinereum internum.* (*Stratum lemnisci.*) This layer is subdivided into three minor layers : (α) the fillet layer, formed from a continuation of the dorsal part of the median fillet and from the lateral fillet ; (β) a layer of grey matter ; (γ) a layer of arched fibres bordering the central grey matter and decussating in the middle line. All these layers are pervaded by radial fibres passing from the central grey matter.

The *optic lobes* of birds have been more fully examined as regards the various layers and their connections. Different authors divide these structures in various different layers. Adopting Kölliker's description, a vertical section may be regarded as showing—(1) a superficial layer of fibres from the optic tract; (2) and (3) layers of grey matter or molecular layers: in (2) the optic nerve fibres form their dendritic ramifications; (4) a layer of white fibres arranged in a kind of lattice work; (5) an inner layer of white fibres in which course the cerebral visual fibres; (6) a layer of grey matter lying against the ependyma of the ventricle of the optic lobes. The connections of the cells and fibres of this layer have been established by Golgi's method by Rámón y Cajal and v. Gehuchten.

In the corpora quadrigemina important connections are made by the fillet fibres. Some of these connections have already been referred to (§193). The fillet fibres in their upward course give off collaterals which ramify or actually terminate themselves in the cells of the nucleus of the lateral fillet. Many of the fillet fibres terminate in dendritic ramifications in the cells of the posterior corpora quadrigemina, many others pass into the anterior. The cells of the lateral nucleus originate fibres which pass possibly towards the cerebrum; some, however, descend towards the superior olive. Some of the fibres entering both corpora quadrigemina decussate dorsally and pass to the opposite corpora. There may also be some connection amongst the fillet fibres with those of the superior cerebellar peduncle.

The *nucleus of the third nerve* has been described as consisting of many various groups of cells. It is to be regarded as mainly one nucleus, extending through the whole length of the anterior corpus quadrigeminum and somewhat above it. It consists of a main mass with two less distinct masses: a dorsolateral with large cells, and a dorso-median with smaller cells. At its cerebral end there is a central mass having large cells. It has been suggested that the dorso-median group of small cells supplies the internal muscles of the eye (sphincter, ciliary). The nucleus is presumably connected with the pyramidal tracts. Arborescences around cells of the third nucleus are to be seen in new-born animals, and the fibres forming them may be followed to the raphe, crossing here and coursing ventrally. Connections also exist with the posterior longitudinal bundle. This bundle is to be regarded as the upward continuation of part of the anterior column of the cord, forming short longitudinal commissures. It is associated with the hypoglossal nucleus, those of the vago-accessory, the fifth and the acoustic (vestibular branch). Connections also exist with the sixth, fourth, and third nuclei. The posterior longitudinal bundle furnishes, therefore, commissural connections between the different eye muscles. Connections of the third nucleus also exist with the optic nerves.

The *brachia* passing to the corpora quadrigemina are spoken of as the superior or anterior and the inferior or posterior. The fibres of the superior pass to the lateral corpus geniculatum and to the occipital tract. The fibres of the inferior brachium are connected with the median corpus geniculatum and possibly may pass through the tegmentum by the internal capsule to the temporal region.

That portion of a transverse section through the region of the corpora quadrigemina which projects ventrally into the two crura is sometimes spoken of as the *crusta*, being separated from the remainder (*tegmentum*) of the region ventral to the aqueduct by the substantia nigra. The crusta contains, in addition to the fibres derived from the pyramids which occupy a central portion in each crus, other fibres derived from the pons. Those on the median side pass to the frontal region, those on the lateral portion to the temporal and occipital regions. Some fibres on the median side are derived from the median fillet.

CHAPTER XIX.

THE CEREBRUM AND CEREBELLUM.

196. THE structure of the dura mater, arachnoidea, and pia mater of the brain is similar to that of the same membranes of the cord.

As has been shown by Boehm, Key and Retzius, and others, the deeper part of the dura contains peculiar ampullated dilatations connected with the capillary blood-vessels, and forming in fact the roots of the veins.

The *glandulæ Pacchioni*, or arachnoidal villi of Luschka, are composed of a spongy connective tissue, prolonged from the sub-arachnoidal tissue and covered with the arachnoidal membrane. These prolongations are pear-shaped or spindle-shaped, with a thin stalk. They are pushed through holes of the inner part of the dura mater into the venous sinuses of this latter, but are covered with endothelium. Injected material passes from the sub-arachnoidal spaces through these stalks into the villi. The spaces of their spongy substance become thereby filled and enlarged, and finally the injection matter enters the venous sinus itself. The pia cerebralis is very rich in blood-vessels, like that of the cord, which pass to and from the brain substance. The capillaries of the pia mater possess an outer endothelial sheath. The plexus choroideus is covered with a layer of polyhedral epithelial cells, which are ciliated in the embryo and in the young subject.

197. As was mentioned of the cord, so also in the

brain the subdural lymph space does not communicate with the sub-arachnoidal spaces or with the ventricles (Luschka, Key and Retzius). Nor does there exist a communication between the sub-arachnoidal space and a space described by His to exist between pia mater and brain surface, but doubted by others. The relations between the cerebral nerves and the membranes of the brain and the lymph spaces of both, are the same as those previously described in the case of the cord and the spinal nerves.

The pia mater passes with the larger blood-vessels into the brain substance by the sulci of the cerebrum and cerebellum.

In the white and grey matter of the brain we find the same kind of supporting tissue that we described in the cord as neuroglia. In the brain also it is composed of a homogeneous *matrix*, of a network of *neuroglia fibrils*, and of branched, flattened neuroglia cells, called *Deiters's cells.*

In the white matter of the brain the neuroglia contains between the bundles of the nerve fibres rows of small nucleated cells; these form special accumulations in the bulbi olfactorii, and in the cerebellum. Lymph corpuscles may be met with in the neuroglia, especially around the blood-vessels and ganglion cells.

All the ventricles, including the aqueductus Sylvii, are lined with a layer of neuroglia, being a direct continuation of that lining the fourth ventricle, and this again being a direct continuation of the central grey nucleus of the cord. Like the central canal of the cord, also, the ventricles are lined with a layer of ciliated columnar, or short columnar epithelial cells.

The blood-vessels form a denser capillary network in the grey than in the white matter; in the latter the network is pre-eminently of a longitudinal arrangement, *i.e.* parallel to the long axis of the bundles of the nerve fibres. In the grey cortex of the hemispheres of the cerebrum and cerebellum, many of the capillary blood-vessels have an arrangement vertical to the surface, but are connected with one another by numerous transverse branches.

The blood-vessels of the brain are situated in spaces, *perivascular lymph spaces*, traversed by fibres passing between the adventitia of the vessels, and the neuroglia forming the boundary of the space. There are no separate lymphatic vessels in the grey or white substance.

198. The **white matter** consists of medullated nerve fibres, which like those of the cord possess no neurilemma or nuclei of nerve corpuscles, and no constrictions of Ranvier. The nerve fibres are of very various sizes, according to the locality. Divisions occur very often. When isolated the fibres show the varicosities mentioned in the cord.

The **grey matter** consists, like that of the cord and medulla, of a basis of neuroglia in which are embedded nerve cells. The dendritic ramifications from the nerve cells, with medullated and non-medullated nerve fibres, form a large proportion also of the grey matter.

With regard to the structure of the ganglion cells of the brain and medulla, what has been mentioned of the ganglion cells of the cord holds good as to them. Like the former, those of the medulla and brain are situated in pericellular lymph spaces (Obersteiner).

199. We now proceed to consider in detail the structure of the different parts of the cerebellum and cerebrum.

The **cerebellum** is composed of laminated folds, or convolutions, and these again are composed of secondary folds, each of which consists of a central tract of white matter covered with grey matter. The tracts of white matter of neighbouring convolutions of one lobe or division join, and thus form the principal tracts of white matter.

The white matter of the cerebellar hemisphere is

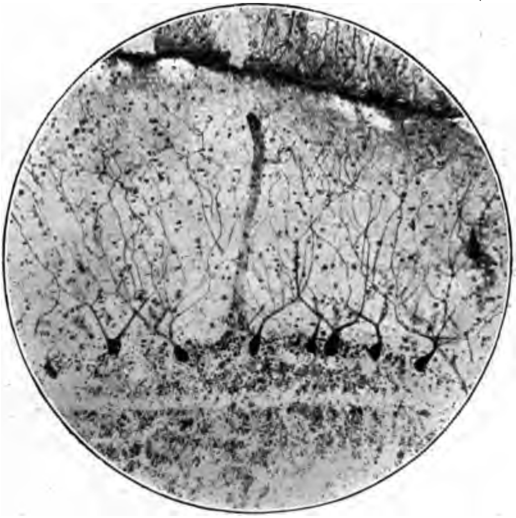


Fig. 149.—Photogram through the grey matter of the cerebellum of the dog, showing the layer of Purkinje's ganglion cells with their dendrites ramifying in the grey cortex. (*Low magnification.*)

connected (*a*) with the medulla oblongata by the corpus restiforme, this forming the inferior peduncle of the cerebellum; (*b*) with the cerebrum by the processus cerebelli ad cerebrum, this forming the superior peduncle; and (*c*) with the other cerebellar hemisphere by the tracts connecting with the pons varolii; these are the pedunculi cerebelli ad pontem, or the middle peduncles.

200. On a vertical section through a lamina of the cerebellum (Fig. 149), the following layers are seen: (*a*) the pia mater covering the general surface, and penetrating with the larger blood-vessels into the superficial substance of the lamina; (*b*) a thick layer of cortical grey matter; (*c*) the layer of Purkinje's ganglion cells; (*d*) the nuclear layer; and (*e*) the central white matter.

201. The layer of ganglion cells of Purkinje is the most interesting layer; it consists of a single row of large multipolar ganglion cells, each with a large vesicular nucleus. Each possesses also a thin axis-cylinder process, directed towards the depth, the cell sending out in the opposite direction—*i.e.* towards the surface—a thick process which soon branches like the antlers of a deer, the processes being all very long-branched and pursuing a vertical course towards the surface; sooner or later they all break up into the fine nervous network of the grey cortex. The longest processes reach near to the surface. The layer (*b*) above mentioned—*i.e.* the cortical grey matter—is in reality the terminal nerve network for the branched processes of the ganglion cells of Purkinje. Sankey maintained, before the adoption of more modern methods of research, that in the human cerebellum there are also small multipolar ganglion cells connected with the processes of Purkinje's cells.

202. The connections and distributions of the different cells of the cerebellum have been exhibited to a considerable extent by the labours of observers who have followed the methods of Golgi. A scheme of the main points on these results is shown in Figs. 150 and 151. Fig. 150 indicates the appearance represented in a section across a lamina, Fig. 151 corresponds to a section taken in

the direction of a lamina. Considering the cells of Purkinje first, they are seen to possess a very extensive dendritic ramification, viewed transversely, passing through the whole thickness of the molecular layer, as the cortical grey matter is sometimes called. This ramification is less extensive viewed in the longitudinal section of a lamina (Fig. 150). The neuraxon

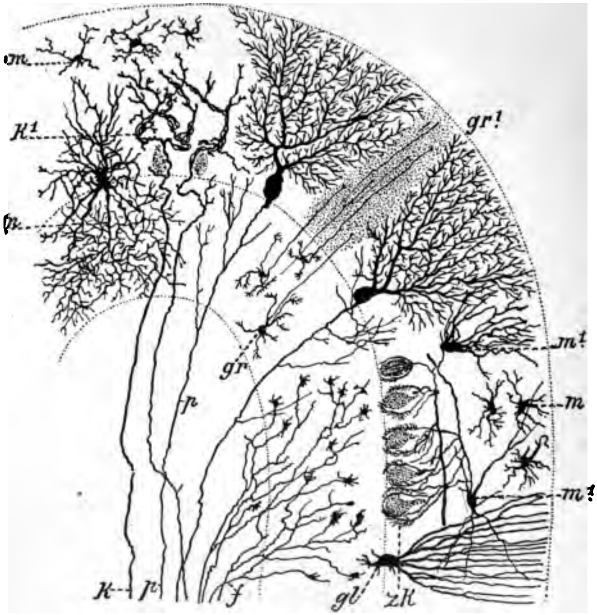


Fig. 150.—Scheme of the Connection of the Cells in the Superficial Grey Substance of the Cerebellum. (*After Kölliker.*)

p, Neuraxons of Purkinje's cells with collaterals : *k*, tendril-like fibres with k^1 their terminations ; *gl*, glia cells ; *f*, moss fibres ; *m*, small cells of the molecular layer ; m^1, large cells of the same layer (basket cells) forming synapses round Purkinje's cells, *zk* ; *gr*, cells of the nuclear layer with neuraxons passing into molecular layers, here turning horizontally and giving a punctated appearance in cross-section ; *n*, the luxuriant branching of a Golgi's cell of the second type.

passes through the nuclear layer obliquely, giving off collaterals which to some extent re-enter the molecular layer, then the axon passing from the nuclear layer enters the central white matter. There are also seen in the molecular layer other fairly conspicuous cells (*m'*), which are termed *basket cells.* These cells have dendrites which ramify amongst those of the Purkinje's cells, and a neuraxon which gives off collaterals, and these again form arborescences around the Purkinje cells. Other smaller cells (*m*) have processes all of which ramify in the neighbourhood of the cell. On the border line between the nuclear and molecular layers may be seen large multipolar cells

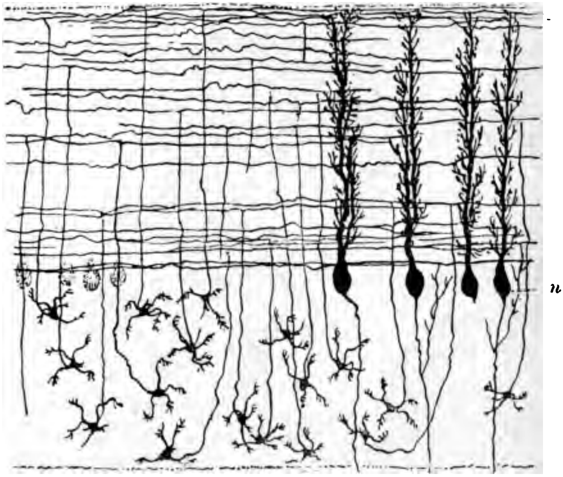


Fig. 151.—Longitudinal Section of the Grey Substance of the Cerebellum. (*After Kölliker.*)

The restricted branching of the cells of Purkinje (*n*) is seen. The nuclear cells below are seen sending axons upwards into the molecular layer which divide dichotomously, and run longitudinally.

(sometimes spoken of as *Golgi's* cells*), which exhibit a dendritic ramification in the nuclear layer, and in which the neuraxon, on entering the molecular layer, divides up not far from the main cell. In the nuclear layer are numerous small cells (*gr*), the dendrites dividing very near to the cells, the neuraxons,

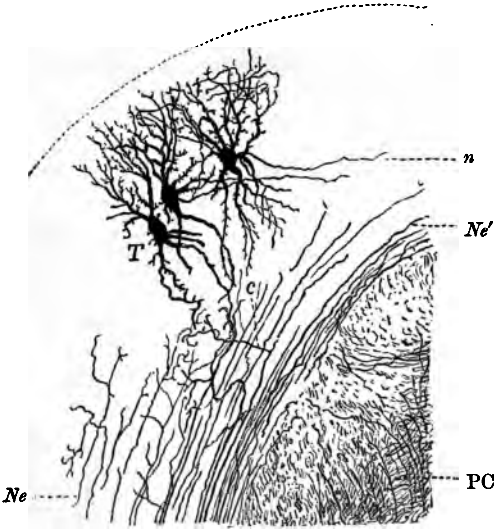


Fig. 152.—From a Transverse Section through the Edge of the Restiform Body, PC, and the Tuberculum Acusticum of the new-born Cat. (*Golgi. Kölliker, II.*)

Ne, Nerve fibres of the cochlear nerve : *Ne'*, the same fibres passing round the peduncle; *c*, collaterals ; *T*, large ganglion cells of the tuberculum ; *n*, their axons becoming fibres of the striæ acusticæ.

---

* Though referred to frequently as "*cells of Golgi*," these are more correctly described as "*cells of the second type of Golgi.*" Some authors use the term "cells of Golgi" to refer to *neuroglia cells.*

however, pass into the molecular layer and bifurcate longitudinally (Fig. 150) at various levels. The so-called "molecular" condition of the cortical grey matter is largely due to the appearance of these fibres being cut across as well as to the sections of the processes of the cells of Purkinje. The central white matter shows other fibres than those representing the neuraxons of the Purkinje cells (Fig. 151). One set of these terminate in arborescent tufts in the nuclear layer, and are referred to as *moss fibres* (*f*). Another set pass into the molecular layer and break up on connection with the dendrons of the cells of Purkinje. These are spoken of as *tendril fibres*. These two sets of fibres are to be regarded as conducting to the grey matter of the cerebellum. In addition to the proper nerve cells already described, may be seen *neuroglia cells* (*gl*). These are also present in the central white matter (Fig. 152).

203. **The structure of the cerebral convolutions in general.**—In a vertical section through a cerebral convolution one is able to see with the naked eye a central core of white matter surrounded by a cap of grey or reddish-grey matter, which again, on careful observation, can be seen to consist of several alternate strata of lighter or darker substance. The exact appearance of these different layers varies in different parts of the cerebral hemispheres.

In general, a vertical section of a convolution shows three main layers: (1) a *superficial molecular* layer, (2) a layer of *pyramidal cells*, (3) a layer of *polymorphous cells*. These layers are subdivisible into several others in different parts of the hemispheres (Fig. 153).

204. **Structure of the cerebral convolutions in the region of the Rolandic fissure.**—In this region one can distinguish six layers, showing

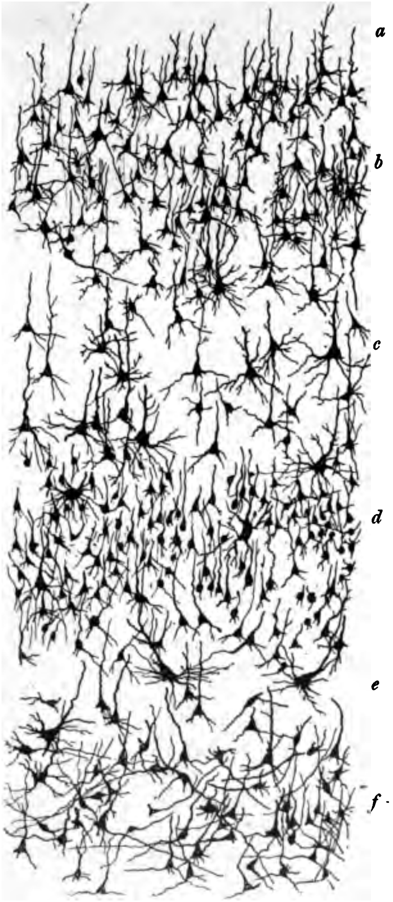


Fig. 153.—Vertical Section through the Grey Cerebral Cortex in the Parietal Region. *(Kölliker, II.)*

a, Superficial white layers; *b*, outer layer of small pyramidal cells; *c*, outer layer of large pyramidal cells; *d*, inner layer of small pyramidal cells; *e*, inner layer of large pyramidal cells; *f*, polymorphous cells.

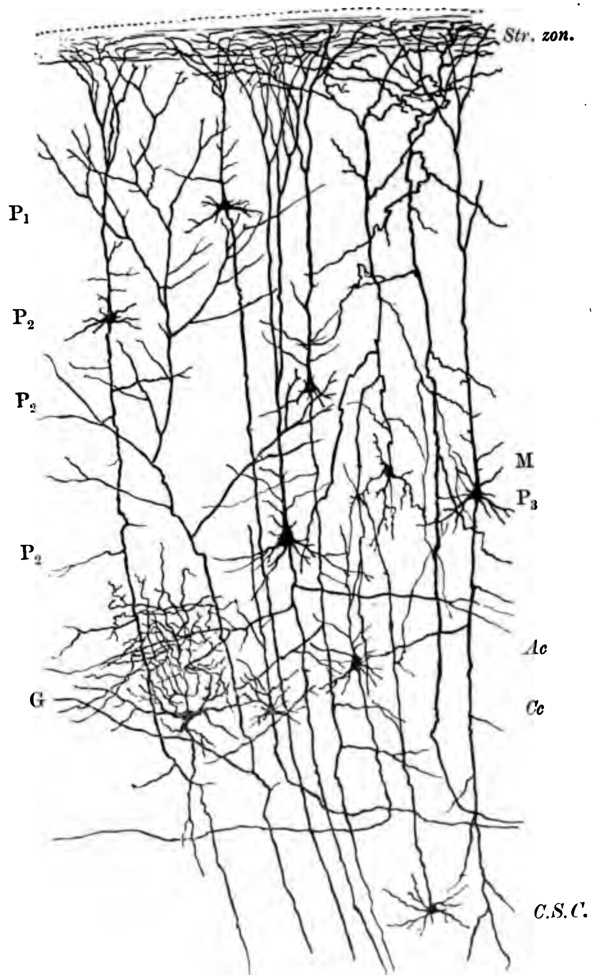


Fig. 154.—For description see next page.

different characters. Superficially is the *stratum zonale* or *molecular layer* (*a*), then the *outer layer of small pyramidal cells* (*b*), then (*c*) the *outer layer of large pyramidal cells*, followed by (*d*) the *inner layer of small pyramidal cells*, then (*e*) the *inner layer of large pyramidal cells*, and, adjacent to the white matter (*f*), the layer of *polymorphous cells.* These cells are, to some extent, separated into vertical columns by intercolumnar bundles of nerve fibres. There are also, running horizontally, following the contour of the gyrus, other more or less defined bundles of fibres. Some of these run in the superficial molecular layer; two other bands are disposed tangentially, in the pyramidal cell layer, the more superficial being the band of Vicq d'Azyr or Gennari, the deeper that of Baillarger. In general, the neuraxons of the cells descend towards, and finally, pass into the white matter (Fig. 154). There are some cells in the cortex which do not conform to this rule. Amongst the pyramidal cells may be found cells known as Martinotti's cells, from which the neuraxons ascend towards the superficial molecular layer. Cells known as Golgi's cells are also to be found, with neuraxons passing towards the surface and dividing up not far from the cell. The general relation of the different cells and fibres is shown in the accompanying scheme (Fig. 154)

Description of Fig. 154 (*p.* 245).

Fig. 154.—Scheme of the Connection of the Cells of the Cerebral Cortex. (*After Kölliker.*)

P_1,P_2, Smaller and larger pyramidal cells, the neuraxons passing downwards on their way to the inner capsule; P_3, pyramidal cells forming a termination in the corpus striatum; at level M a *cell of Martinotti* with neuraxon passing upwards and terminating in stratum zonale; at level G a *Golgi cell* (2nd order) with much-branched neuraxon immediately above it; *Ac*, *association* cell, on inner side of G is a cell (*Cc*) with neuraxon passing into corpus callosum; *C.S.C.*, a cell of corpus striatum with neuraxon passing into cortex; R.F., a fibre from the fillet passing up into the cortex, one of Rámón y *Cajal's fibres*; *Str. zon.*, stratum zonale, or superficial white layer.

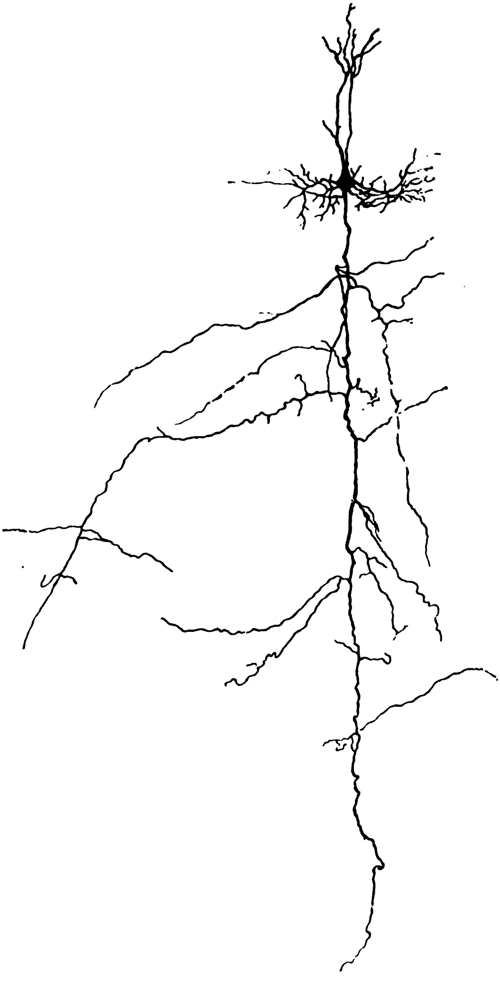


Fig. 155.—Pyramidal Cell of the Cortex of the Brain, its axon giving numerous collaterals. (Kölliker, II.)

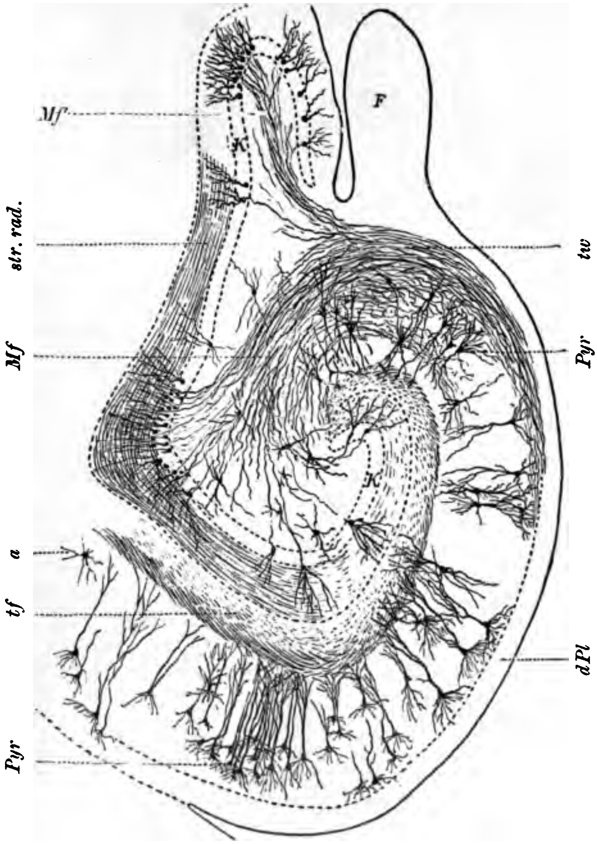


Fig. 156.—Fascia Dentata and adjoining part of Cornu Ammonis of Human Embryo. (*After Kölliker.*)

***Mf.*, Moss fibres (main bundle, an accessory bundle passing out to the right); *str. rad.*, stratum radiatum of fascia dentata; *a*, cell with ascending axon (cell of Martinotti); *Pyr.*, pyramidal cells; *F*, fimbria; *K*, nuclear layer; *tf*, tangentially coursing fibres of stratum zonale; *d.Pl.*, dorsal layer; *tw*, deep root of alveus.**

from Kölliker. The pyramidal cells have a conspicuous apical process, which passes vertically, giving off lateral processes, and forms a system of dendrites in the superficial molecular layer. Other dendritic ramifications occur closer to the cell and the neuraxon passes towards the white matter, giving off collaterals as it traverses the grey substance (Fig. 155). Some of the pyramidal cells (*Cc*) have neuraxons which pass to the opposite hemisphere in the corpus callosum, and not towards the inner capsule, through which a large number of the neuraxons course. Some pyramidal cells again probably have their neuraxons terminating in connection with cells of the corpus striatum (P^3). The connections of a cell of Martinotti are seen (M), and those of a Golgi cell (G). Fibres conducting towards the cortex are represented by (1) Rámón y Cajal's fibres (R.F.), passing from the fillet and subdividing in the cortex; (2) fibres from cells of the corpus striatum (*C.S.C.*) passing up into the grey matter of the cortex in a similar manner.

205. **Structure of the hippocampus major and the fascia dentata** (Fig. 156).

The hippocampus as it projects into the ventricle is invested beneath the ependyma with a layer of white fibres called the *alveus*. Lying against the alveus are pyramidal cells, the neuraxons of which pass into it; the conspicuous apical process passes through a large portion of the thickness of the hippocampus, giving it a radiate appearance (the *stratum radiatum*), and forming a dendritic ramification above this in the *stratum lacunosum*. Tracing the substance of the hippocampus towards the *fascia dentata*, these pyramidal cells become less conspicuous and are not to be regarded as forming any definite layer in this region. The fascia dentata has externally a superficial layer or *stratum zonale* into which pass the dendritic ramifications of a layer of small cells, the *stratum granulosum.* From these small cells neuraxons pass to the central substance of the fascia dentata, and from this also many so called "moss fibres" issue, passing to the granular layer (*Mf* and *Mf'*).

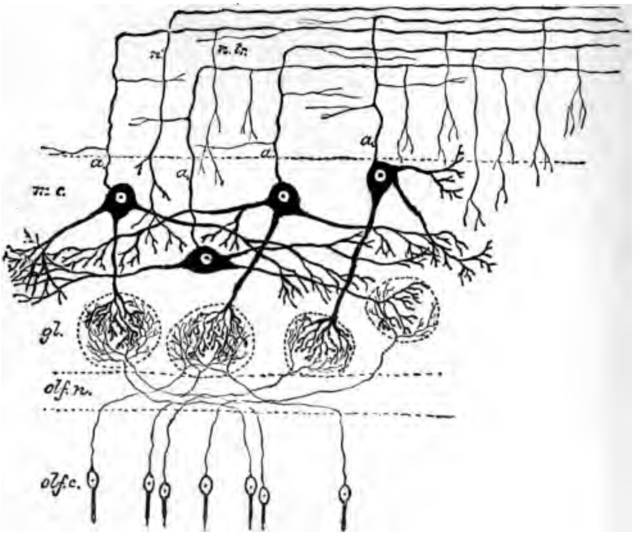


Fig. 157.—Diagram of the Probable Connections of Cells and Fibres in the Olfactory Bulb. (*After Schäfer.*)

olf.c., Sensory cells of the olfactory epithelium; *olf.n.*, deepest layer of the bulb composed of the olfactory nerve fibres which are prolonged from the olfactory cells; *gl.*, olfactory glomeruli, containing dendrons of both the olfactory nerve fibres and the mitral cells; *mc*, mitral cells; *a*, their axons; *n.tr.*, nerve fibres of the bulb becoming continuous with the olfactory tract.

206. **Structure of the olfactory bulb** (Figs. 157 and 158).—A vertical section through the olfactory bulb indicates considerably more development on the side lying against the cribriform plate than

on the dorsal side. Passing from the surface lying on the ethmoid bone, one can make out the following layers: (1) Bundles of olfactory nerve fibres; (2) the zone of olfactory glomeruli; (3) a layer pervaded by many irregular fibres, giving it the character of a molecular layer, and containing the so-called *mitral* nerve cells; (4) a nuclear layer composed of small cells; (5) a layer of longitudinal nerve fibres; (6) the neuroglia forming the central substance. The

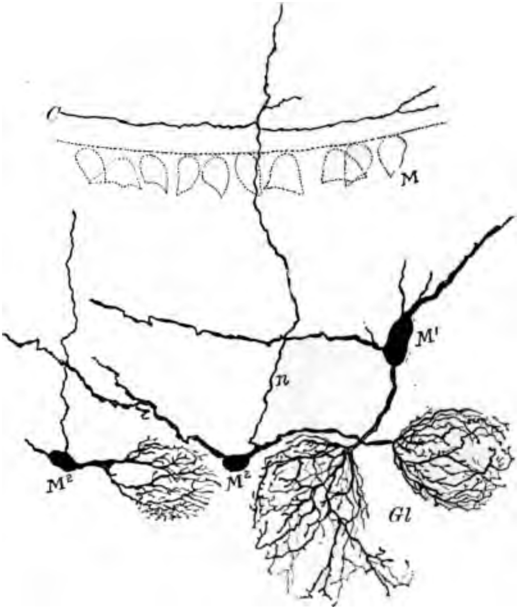


Fig. 158.—From the Olfactory Bulb of a Mouse 24 days old. (*Highly magnified. Golgi. Kölliker, II.*)

C, Collaterals; *Gl*, glomeruli; *M*, mitral cells; *M'*, large brush cell; *M²*, small ditto; *n*, neuraxon.

connection of these mitral cells is indicated in Figs. 157 and 158. One or two processes pass horizontally and an axis-cylinder process passes through the nuclear layer towards the layer of longitudinal nerve fibres. One conspicuous process passes towards the glomeruli and, entering one of the masses, forms a dendritic clump. Similarly axons from the olfactory cells in the nose pass to these glomeruli and form dendritic clumps. These glomeruli are definite localities where connections are established between cells of the olfactory bulb and the olfactory mucous membrane.

CHAPTER XX.

THE CEREBRO SPINAL GANGLIA.

207. THE ganglia connected with the posterior roots of the spinal nerves, and with some of the roots of the cerebral nerves — Gasserian, otic, geniculate, ciliary, Meckel's ganglion, the ganglia of the branches of the acoustic nerve, the submaxillary ganglion, etc.—possess a capsule of fibrous connective tissue continuous with the epineurium of the afferent and efferent nerve trunks (Fig. 159). The interior of the ganglion is subdivided into smaller or larger divisions, containing nerve bundles with their perineurium, or larger and smaller groups of ganglion cells. In the spinal ganglia these latter are

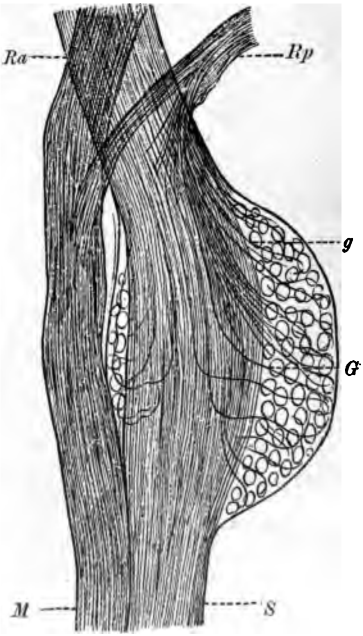


Fig. 159.—Spinal Ganglion of the Lumbar Region of a Puppy. (*Kölliker, II.*)
G, Ganglion with its cells and their axons; *Rp*, posterior; *Ra*, anterior branch; *M*, motor; *S*, sensory root.

generally disposed about the cortical part, whereas the centre of the ganglia is chiefly occupied by bundles of nerve fibres.

208. The ganglion cells differ very greatly in size—some being as big, and bigger, than a large multipolar ganglion cell of the anterior horn of the cord, others much smaller (Fig. 162). Each cell has a large oval nucleus, including a network with one or two large nucleoli.

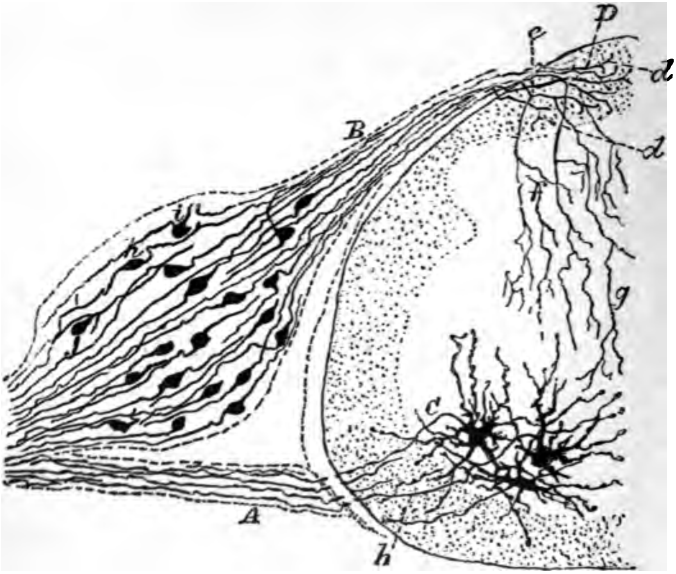


Fig. 160.—Transverse Section of the Spinal Cord of a Chick of the 9th day of incubation. (*After Rámón y Cajal, from Quain's "Anatomy."*)

A, Axons—anterior root fibres—issuing from large ganglion cells of anterior horn, *C*; *B*, posterior root fibres passing from the bipolar ganglion cells (*h*, *i*) of the spinal ganglion into the posterior white column *D*, where they bifurcate to become longitudinal; *e*, *f*, *g*, collaterals from these fibres; *b*, fibres of anterior white column in cross-section.

Its substance shows a distinct fibrillation. Each cell of the spinal ganglia in man and mammals is *unipolar* (Fig. 162), flask- or pear-shaped, and invested in a hyaline *capsule*, lined with a more or less continuous

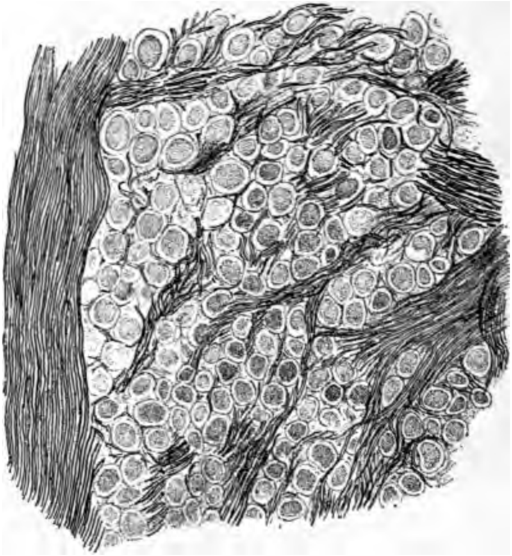


Fig. 161.—From a Longitudinal Section through the Gasserian Ganglion of the Calf. (*Kölliker, II.*)

layer of *nucleated endothelial cell plates.* The single process of the ganglion cell is finely and longitudinally striated, and is an axis-cylinder process. Immediately after leaving the cell body it is much convoluted (Retzius); it is then covered with a medullary sheath, and so becomes a medullated nerve fibre. The capsule of the ganglion cell is continued on the axis cylinder process, and, farther on, on the medullated nerve fibre, as the neurilemma; the endothelial plates of the capsule pass into the nerve corpuscles lining the neurilemma, their number greatly diminishing (Fig. 162).

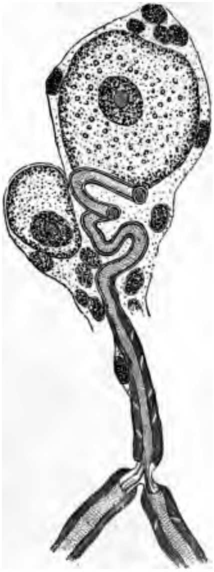


Fig. 162. — Large and Small Ganglion Cell of the Ganglion Gasseri of Rabbit. (*Key and Retzius.*)

The axis cylinder, after leaving the cell, becomes convoluted and transformed into a medullated nerve fibre, which divides into two medullated fibres.

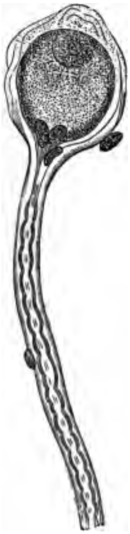


Fig. 163.—Isolated Ganglion Cell of Spinal Ganglion of Toad. (*Key and Retzius.*)

The axis cylinder process becomes transformed into a medullated nerve fibre. The capsule of the cell is prolonged as the neurilemma of the nerve fibre.

209. In the rabbit this medullated nerve fibre at its first node of Ranvier, which is not at a great distance from the ganglion cell, divides into two medullated nerve fibres in the shape of T; one branch

passes to the cord as a posterior root fibre, the other to the periphery (Fig. 163). In man, this T-shaped division has also been observed by Retzius, but, though highly probable, it cannot be said to have been actually proved that in rabbit or man every axis-cylinder process shows this T-shaped division. Retzius observed this T-shaped division also in the Gasserian, geniculate, and vagus ganglia in man.

The ganglion cells are not unipolar in all cerebral ganglia; in the ciliary and optic ganglia there are ganglion cells which are multipolar.

210. Numerous ganglia of microscopic size are to be found in the submaxillary (salivary) gland; they are of different sizes, and are in reality ganglionic enlargements of larger or smaller nerve bundles. Each ganglion is invested in connective tissue continuous with the perineurium, and the ganglion cells are unipolar, and of the same nature as those described above, each cell being possessed of an axis-cylinder process, which becomes soon a nerve fibre. At the back of the tongue there are similar small microscopic ganglia.

CHAPTER XXI.

THE SYMPATHETIC SYSTEM.

211. The sympathetic nerve branches exactly resemble the cerebro-spinal nerves in their connective-tissue investments (epi-, peri-, and endoneurium), and in the arrangement of the fibres in bundles (Fig. 164, A). Most of the nerve fibres in the bundles are non-medullated or Remak's fibres (Fig. 164A), each being an axis cylinder invested in a neurilemma, with

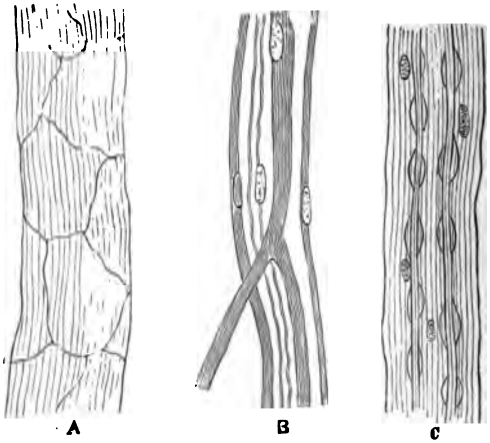


Fig. 164.—Sympathetic Nerves. (*Atlas*.)

A, Small bundle invested in an endothelial sheath, perineurium; B, one medullated and three non-medullated nerve fibres of various sizes; the largest shows division; C, two varicose nerve fibres.

oblong nuclei indicative of nerve corpuscles (Fig. 164, B). But there are some medullated nerve fibres to be met with in each bundle, at least, of the larger nerve trunks. These in some cases show the medullary sheath more or less discontinuous, and with a varicose outline (Fig. 164, C), owing to a uniform local accumulation of fluid between it and the axis cylinder. The small or microscopic bundles of nerve fibres possess an endothelial (perineural) sheath. The small and large branches always form *plexuses.*

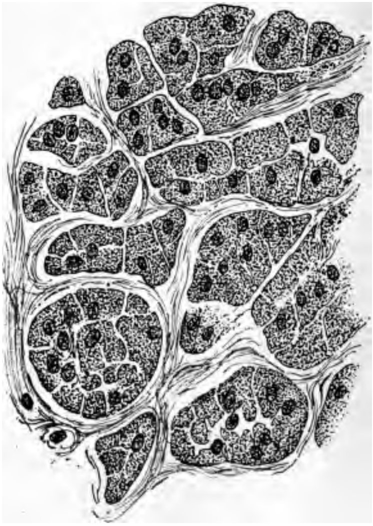


Fig. 164A.—Cross-Section through part of Branch of the Splenic Nerve of the Ox, showing bundles of non-medullated or Remak's fibres in cross-section ; the nerve fibres being composed of fibrillæ appear granular in cross-section ; the nuclei here shown belong to the neurilemma of the fibres. (*Kölliker, II.*)

212. The *ganglia* of the sympathetic chain (Fig. 165)—lateral ganglia, as also the further sympathetic ganglia—the collateral ganglia like the semilunar and the cardiac ganglia, and the peripheral ganglia, like those on and in the abdominal viscera, are microscopic in size, but possess in a general way the same structure as the cerebro-spinal ganglia. The ganglion cells are bipolar, or more commonly multipolar. Such are the

microscopic ganglionic enlargements on many of the sympathetic nerve branches in the thoracic and abdominal organs.

They occur in some organs very numerously—*e.g.* alimentary canal, urinary bladder (Fig. 166 and Fig. 167), respiratory organs, salivary glands—and are of all sizes, from a few ganglion cells placed between, or laterally to, the nerve fibres of a small bundle, to oval, spherical, or irregularly-shaped masses of ganglion cells placed in the course of a large nerve bundle, or situated at the point of anastomosis of two or more nerve branches (Fig. 167).

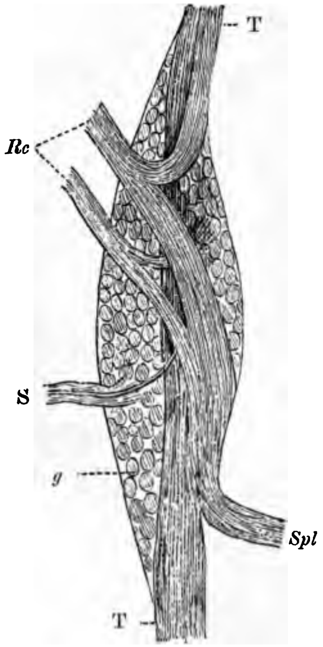


Fig. 165.—Sixth Ganglion Thoracicum of the Left Sympathetic of the Rabbit. (*Kölliker, II.*)

Rc, Rami communicantes; S, branch of ganglion containing two coarser and several finer fibres: *Spl*, splanchnicus; T, sympathetic trunk; *g*, ganglion cells.

213. The ganglia in connection with the plexuses of nerve branches of the heart, the ganglia in the plexus of non-medullated nerve fibres existing between the longitudinal and circular coat of the external muscular coat in the alimentary canal, known as the plexus myentericus of Auerbach, the ganglia in the plexus of

nerve branches of the submucous tissue in the alimentary canal, known as Meissner's plexus (Fig. 172), the ganglia in the nervous plexuses in the outer wall of the bladder, in the bronchial wall, and in the trachea, and lastly the ganglia in connection with the nerves supplying the ciliary muscle of the eye, all belong to the sympathetic system.

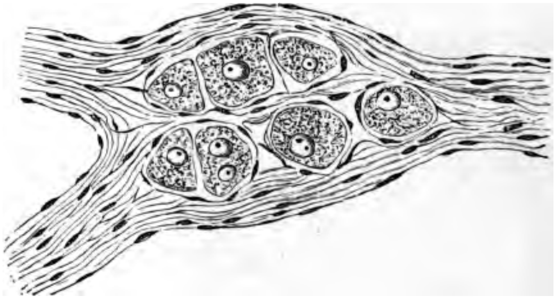


Fig. 166.—Group of Ganglion Cells interposed in a Bundle of Sympathetic Nerve Fibres ; from the Bladder of Rabbit. (*Handbook.*)

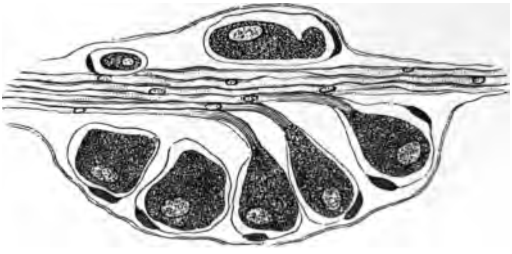


Fig. 167.—Small Collection of Ganglion Cells along a small Bundle of Sympathetic Nerve Fibres in the Bladder of Rabbit. (*Atlas.*)

Each ganglion cell possesses a capsule. The substance of the ganglion cell is prolonged as the axis cylinder of a nerve fibre.

The ganglion cells (Fig. 170) are of very different sizes, each possessing a large oval or spherical nucleus with one or two nucleoli. Their shape is spherical or oval, flask-shaped, club-shaped, or pear-shaped; they possess either one, two, or more processes, being uni-, bi-, or multipolar. The cell is invested in a capsule lined with nucleated cells, both being continued on the processes as neurilemma and nerve corpuscles respectively.

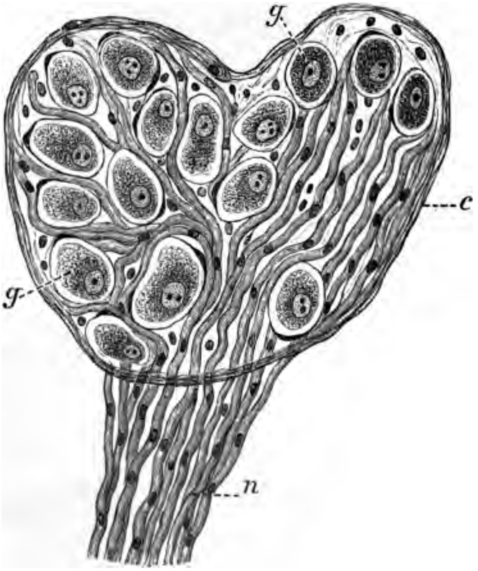


Fig. 168.—Microscopic Ganglion in the Submaxillary Gland of Dog. (*Atlas.*)

c, Connective tissue surrounding the ganglion; *g*, the ganglion cells with their capsule; *n*, nerve fibres.

214. By the aid of Golgi's method it has been *definitely* established (Go[illegible] Rámón y Cajal, Retzius)

that, like the ganglion cells in the cord, the cells in the ganglia of the sympathetic system possess one axis-cylinder process, axon or neuraxon, which remains unramified (Rámón y Cajal, Van Gehuchten,

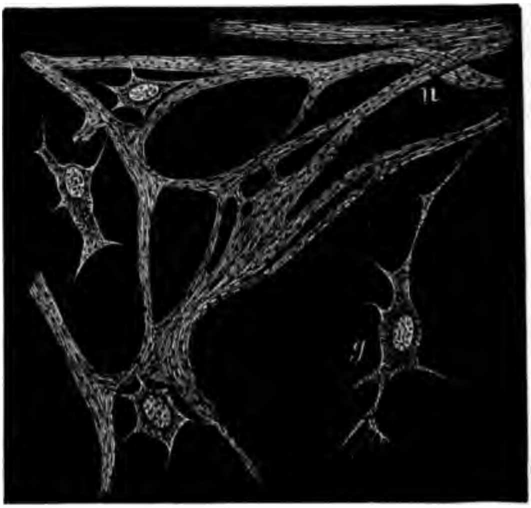


Fig. 169.—Plexus of Auerbach in Rectum of Toad. (*Atlas.*)
n, Nerve branches; *g*, ganglion cell.

L. Sala. Von Lenhossek, Kölliker), though sometimes it is possessed of nodose swellings (Fig. 171). It passes into the periphery as a non-medullated fibre (as, for instance, the non-medullated fibres passing from the lateral ganglia of the sympathetic back to the spinal nerves as the grey ramus communicans); or as a medullated fibre (as for instance, the medullated fibres passing from the ciliary ganglion into the ciliary nerves). The *post-ganglionic fibres* of Langley are fibres which originate as the neuraxon of a sympathetic ganglion cell (in the lateral, collateral or peripheral ganglia, as the case may be), and hence pass into muscle (wall of intestine, blood-vessels, the viscera). The ganglion cells in the microscopic peripheral ganglia are also multipolar, although there occur amongst them bi- and unipolar cells (Rámón y Cajal, Dogiel, Kölliker).

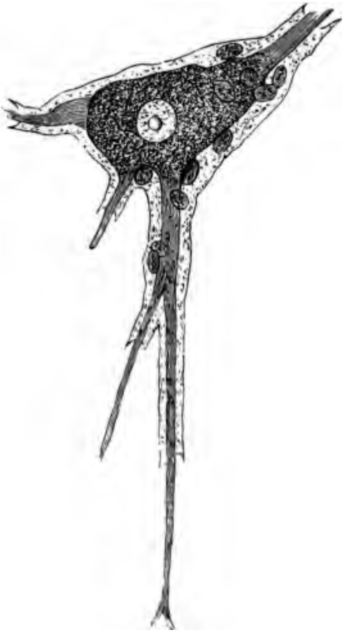


Fig. 170.—Sympathetic Ganglion Cell of Man. (*Key and Retzius.*)

The ganglion cell is multipolar: each process receiving a neurilemma from the capsule of the cell becomes a non-medullated nerve fibre.

Besides the neuraxon or axon the sympathetic ganglion cells possess ramifying processes — dendrites, which resolve themselves like those of the cells of the grey matter of the central nervous system into fine fibres, some of them forming more or less distinct arborisations or dendrons (Fig. 171). An interesting relation exists between the medullated nerve fibres which pass into a sympathetic ganglion from a spinal nerve [motor fibres passing from anterior roots, as also sensory fibres from the posterior roots and spinal ganglia], as, for instance, those passing from the motor roots by the white rami communicantes into the lateral and farther into the collateral ganglia, *i.e.* the *præ-ganglionic fibres* of Langley; these fibres terminate (Van Gehuchten, L. Sala, Dogiel, Von Lenhossek) as fine ramifications between and around the ganglion cells, or they form curious, more or less dense, convolutions and plexus surrounding the body of the ganglion cell — *circumcellular plexus*, as is shown in Fig. 173 (Kölliker).

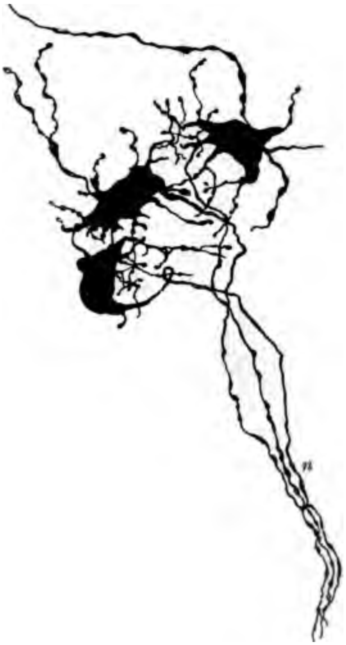


Fig. 171.—Three Multipolar Ganglion Cells with their Axon, *n*. From the Ganglion Semilunare of Dog one day old. (*Kölliker, II.*)

215. By the observations of Beale, Arnold, Axel, Key and Retzius, it was known that in the ganglion cells of the sympathetic nerves of the frog, the ganglion cell substance passes on as a straight neuraxon which continues its course peripherally as a non-medullated nerve fibre surrounded by a nucleated sheath or neurilemma—continued from the capsule of

the ganglion cell. This straight process is entwined by a thin spiral fibre which, farther away from the body of the ganglion cell, is a medullated fibre ; it ramifies on the substance of the ganglion cell (Fig. 174).

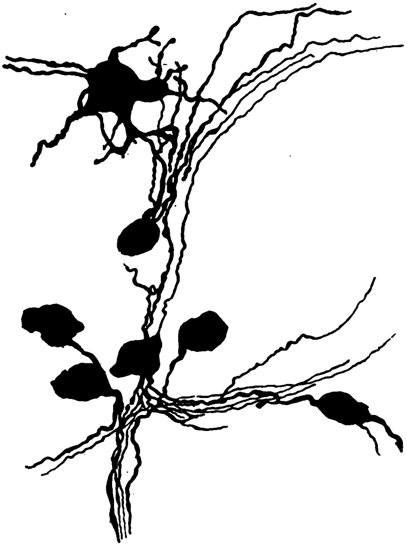


Fig. 172.—Group of Ganglion Cells from the Plexus of Meissner of a Puppy ; amongst them a Multipolar and several Unipolar Cells. (*Kölliker, II.*)

Arnold, then Ehrlich and further Retzius (the last two by injection of methylene blue into the blood-vessels of the living frog) have shown this spiral fibre (stained blue) to terminate on and around the substance of the ganglion cell as an arborisation; a condition which occurs in many parts of the central nervous system (anterior grey cornu, cerebellum, *sympathetic* ganglion cells, previously mentioned, etc.), that is to say, the body of a ganglion cell becomes surrounded and ensheathed as it were by a dendron of an afferent nerve fibre, the difference being that in the sympathetic cells of the frog this afferent (medullated) fibre entwines *as the spiral fibre* the efferent axon (non-medullated) of the ganglion cell.

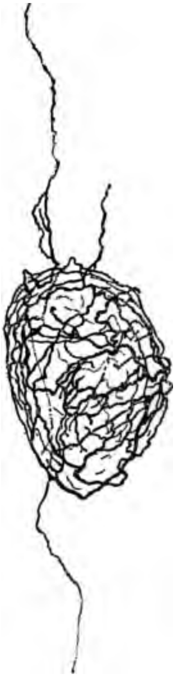


Fig. 173.—Circumcellular Plexus from the Ganglion Cervicale Supremum of Calf. (*Kölliker, II.*)

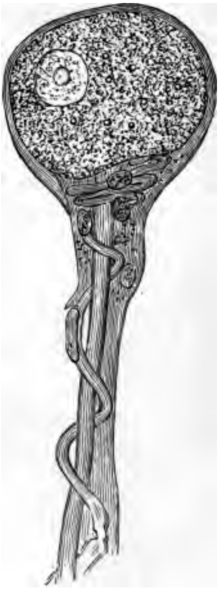


Fig. 174.—Sympathetic Ganglion Cell of Frog, showing the straight process and the spiral fibre; the latter becomes a medullated fibre. (*Key and Retzius.*)

CHAPTER XXII.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS AS TO THE ANATOMICAL CONSTITUTION AND NATURE OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM.

216. We are now in a position to summarise the general structure and relation of the constituent parts of the nervous system.

The nervous system consists of nerve cells or ganglion cells and of nerve fibres—the cells forming the centres, the fibres the conducting paths. The ganglion cells form an integral part of the central nervous system—brain, medulla, and cord—as also of the ganglia of the sympathetic and of the peripheral collections and special nerve end-corpuscles in the various viscera and in the sense organs. The nerve fibres, on the other hand, are all, as far as at present known, axons or neuraxons—that is to say, prolongations of the substance of the ganglion cells; by these axons near and distant centres, or ganglion cells, are brought in relation to one another, as also by the peripheral terminations of the axons with muscles, skin, mucous membranes, glands, etc. The whole nervous system may be considered as consisting of a collection of units (Rámón y Cajal), each such unit being called a *neuron* (Waldeyer). A neuron, then, is a ganglion cell with all its processes, axon or axons, and dendrites—be they short or long—as well as all the ramifications and terminations of such axons and dendrites. While of many parts of the nervous

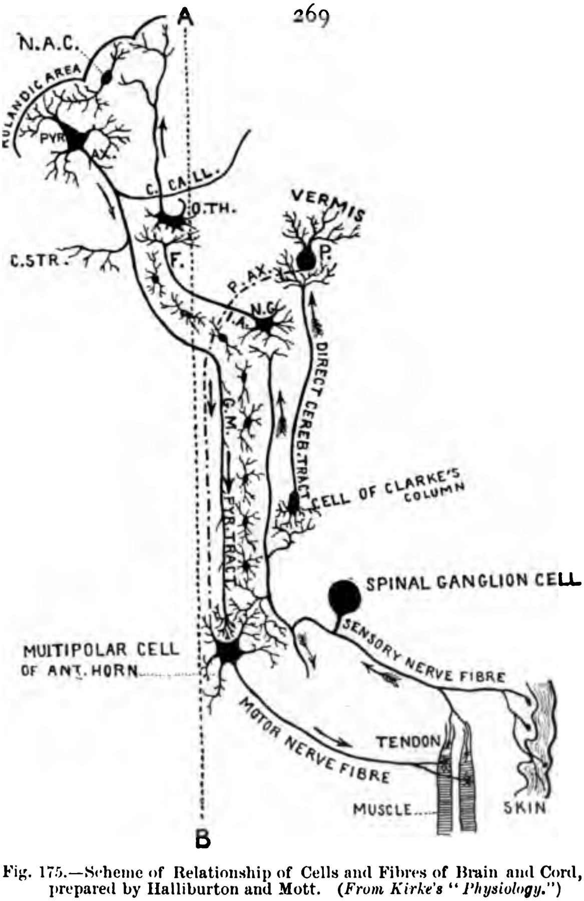


Fig. 175.—Scheme of Relationship of Cells and Fibres of Brain and Cord, prepared by Halliburton and Mott. (*From Kirke's "Physiology."*)

AB, Middle line through brain medulla and cord; PYR, pyramidal ganglion cell of the cerebral cortex in the Rolandic area; AX, axon of this same ganglion cell, a collateral of this axon passes in the corpus callosum (C. CALL.) to terminate in the cortex of the other cerebral hemisphere; C.STR., is the corpus striatum; N.A.C., ganglion cell in the cerebral cortex (nerve unit of association of Cajal), around which arborises an axon coming from a ganglion cell of the optic thalamus; O.TH., thalamus opticus; F, mesial fillet; N.G., nucleus gracilis of the medulla; I.A., axon of a ganglion cell in the nucleus gracilis, passing to the other side as an internal arcuate fibre; P, ganglion cell of Purkinje in the cortex of cerebellum; P.AX., its axon; G.M., succession of *cell stations (units)* in the grey matter of the cord to the optic thalami.

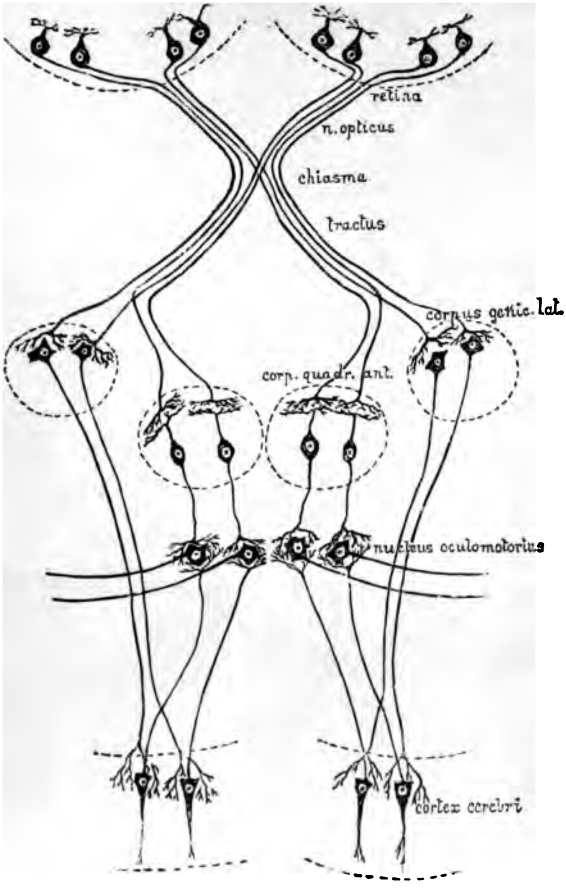


Fig. 176.—Diagram of the probable Connections and Relations of the Optic Nerve Fibres between the Ganglion Cells of the Retina and the Cortex Cerebri. (*After Schäfer.*)

Between the ganglion cells of the retina and the lateral corpus geniculatum or anterior corpus quadrigeminum respectively is the first neuron; between the corpus quadrigeminum anterius and the nucleus oculomotorius is a second neuron, so also between the lateral corpus geniculatum and the cortex cerebri; between the nucleus oculomotorius and the cortex cerebri on the one hand and the axons of the ganglion cells of the nucleus oculomotorius by the nerve fibres constituting the oculomotor nerve terminating in the muscles supplied by this on the other hand is a third neuron.

system the constituent units or *neurons* are understood and traced out, there are other parts in which the constituent neurons have not been as yet fully worked out. Of the former it has been established by the new methods that the older theory as to anatomical continuity between different parts of the nervous system—*i.e.* the units or *neurons*—is not correct; but, on the contrary, that the processes (axons as well as dendrites) of one ganglion cell *form only contact* with those of others, as also with peripheral organs, *without direct continuity* (Fig. 175). Thus, for instance, it has been shown that there exists no direct or uninterrupted continuity between a motor (pyramidal) ganglion cell, say of the limb centres in the grey cortex of the brain, and the nerve fibres which terminate as motor end-plates or dendrons in the muscles of the limbs, but that the whole of this path is made up of a *succession or chain of neurons or units;* and similarly beginning with a dendritic nerve termination in the epithelium of the skin of the limbs up to the arborising termination of nerve fibres in the sensory centres of the grey cortex of the brain, we have no anatomical continuity, but a succession or chain of units or neurons.

In each case, a ganglion cell with its axon, inclusive of its collaterals, and its dendrites, is possessed of arborisations or dendrons which do not form continuity with, but are only in close contiguity to, the arborising axons, or dendrites respectively of another unit or neuron (synapsis). A further point that has been established is this, namely, all nerve fibres, be they medullated or non-medullated, afferent or efferent fibres, be they of a relatively short course —*e.g.* those beginning and ending within the central nervous system—or do they extend over long distances like those passing out from, or passing into, the cord, medulla, and brain as spinal and cranial nerves respectively, are, in reality, axons or direct prolongations of the substance of ganglion cells, which, after a longer or shorter course, terminate as arborisations or dendrons in the periphery or in the central nervous system, as the case may be.

217. We will illustrate, by selecting a few from the many known examples, the nature and extent of such neurons:—

(1) A motor neuron of the grey cortex cerebri consists of the following parts (Fig. 175): (*a*) the cell body of a pyramidal ganglion cell; (*b*) its dendrites, with their arborisations in the grey cortex; (*c*) the axon given off as the median basilar process and its collaterals becoming medullated nerve fibres of the white substance of the cortex, passing further through the internal capsule, the pons, the anterior pyramidal tract of the medulla, the direct or crossed pyramidal tract of the cord, and forming the final arborisations or dendrons of them and their collaterals in the anterior cornu around the body and dendrites of the ganglion cells in the grey matter of the cord.

(2) A motor neuron of the grey anterior cornu of the cord consists of: (*a*) a ganglion cell in the anterior grey cornu of the cord; (*b*) its dendrites terminating *in situ* as arborisations or dendrons; (*c*) the axon passing out as a medullated nerve fibre through the anterior root, and further through a spinal nerve, and terminating finally in the periphery in a striped muscle fibre as a dendron—*i.e.* the nerve end-plate.

(3) A sensory neuron: (*a*) a ganglion cell of the spinal ganglia; (*b*) the afferent nerve fibre—*i.e.* the distal portion of the T-shaped division of the axon, coming from the periphery—*e.g.* the skin—by way of a medullated nerve fibre of a spinal nerve; in the skin it terminates or originates either in or around special nerve end-corpuscles or as ramifying fibrillæ in the

epithelium of the surface; (*c*) the efferent fibre—*i.e.* the proximal branch of the axon of the spinal

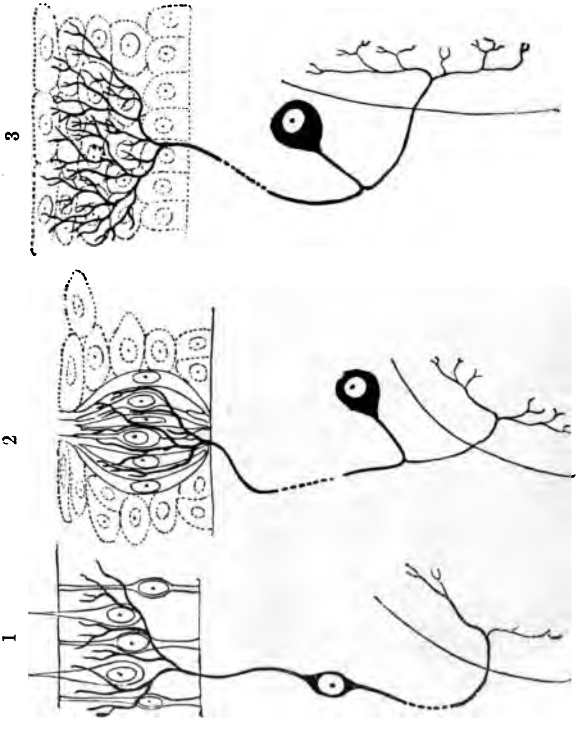


Fig. 177.—Diagram showing the Mode of Termination of Sensory Nerve Fibres in 1, the auditory, 2, the gustatory, and 3, the tactile sense organs of vertebrata. Each of these represents one sensory neuron. (*After Retzius, from Quain.*)

ganglion cell passes into the cord as a medullated fibre by way of a posterior root and farther into the posterior white column; it or its collaterals finally enter into the grey matter of the cord or pass on into the nucleus gracilis of the bulb, terminating as dendrons around or close to a ganglion cell (body or dendrites) in such grey matter (Fig. 175).

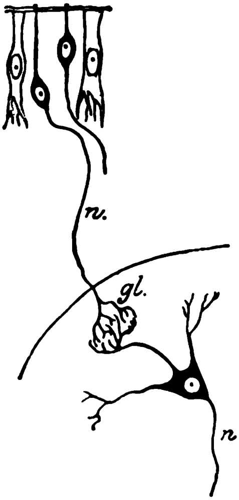


Fig. 178.—Diagram of the Arrangement of the Sensory Nerve Fibres in the Olfactory Organ and Bulb. (*After Retzius, from Quain.*)

n, Neuraxon; *gl*, glomerulus in the olfactory bulb. This represents two consecutive neurons.

(4) A neuron of a special sense (Figs. 177, 178): (*a*) the ganglion cell in the ganglion cell layer of the retina; (*b*) its dendrites terminating as arborisations or dendrons in the inner molecular layer; (*c*) the axon passing out in the opposite direction and forming a fibre of the nerve fibre layer and further passing into the optic disc and optic nerve as a medullated fibre, pursuing its course as such through the chiasma and optic tract, and terminating, finally, in an arborisation around cells in the corpus geniculatum or the anterior corpus quadrigeminum (Fig. 176).

CHAPTER XXIII.

THE TEETH.

218. A HUMAN tooth, adult and milk-tooth, consists (Fig. 179) of (*a*) the *enamel* covering the crown, (*b*) the *dentine* forming the bulk of the whole tooth, and surrounding the pulp cavity both of the crown and fangs, (*c*) the pulp cavity, and (*d*) the *cement*, or crusta petrosa. The cement covers the outside of the dentine of the fang or fangs, the enamel covers the dentine of the crown. The cement is covered on its outside by dense fibrous tissue acting as a *periosteum* to it, and is fixed by it to the inner surface of the bone forming the wall of the alveolar cavity.

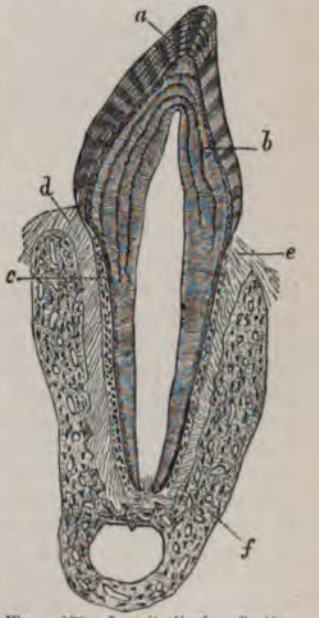


Fig. 179.—Longitudinal Section through the Præmolar Tooth of Cat. (*Waldeyer, in Stricker's Manual.*)

a, Enamel; b, dentine; c, crusta petrosa; d and e, periosteum; f, bone of alveolus.

219. The **enamel** (Fig. 180) consists of thin microscopic prismatic elements, the *enamel prisms* placed closely, and extending in a vertical direction

from the surface to the dentine. When viewed in transverse section, the enamel prisms appear of a hexagonal outline, and are separated by a very fine *interstitial cement substance.* The outline of the enamel prisms is not straight, but wavy, so that the prisms appear varicose. The prisms are aggregated into bundles, which are not quite parallel, but more or less slightly overlap one another. On a longitudinal section through a tooth, the appearance of alternate light and dark stripes in the enamel is thus produced. Besides this there are seen in the enamel dark horizontal curved lines, the brown parallel stripes of Retzius, probably due to inequalities in the density of the enamel prisms produced by the successive formation of layers of the enamel. The enamel consists of lime salts—phosphate, carbonate, and fluoride of calcium—with corresponding magnesium salts.

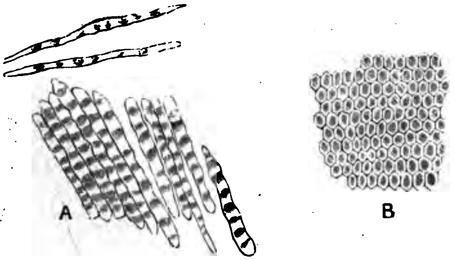


Fig. 180.—Enamel Prisms. (*Kölliker.*)
A, In longitudinal view ; B, in cross-section.

In young teeth the free surface of the enamel is covered with a delicate cuticle (the cuticle of Nasmyth), a single layer of non-nucleated scales. In adult teeth this cuticle is wanting, having been rubbed off.

220. The **dentine** is the principal part of the hard substances of the tooth. It forms a complete investment of the pulp cavity of the crown and fang, being slightly thicker in the former than in the latter region. The dentine is composed of (Fig. 181): (1) a homogeneous *matrix:* this is a reticular tissue of fine fibrils impregnated with lime salts, and thus resembling the matrix of bone; (2) long fine canals, the *dentinal canals or tubes*, passing in a more or less spiral manner, and vertically from the inner to the outer surface of the dentine. These tubes are branched; they open in the pulp cavity with their broadest part, and become smaller as they approach the outer surface of the dentine. Each canal is lined with a delicate sheath—the *dentinal sheath.* Inside the tube is a fibre, the *dentinal fibre*, a solid elastic fibre originating with its thickest part at the pulp side of the dentine from cells lining the outer surface of the pulp, and called *odontoblasts*,

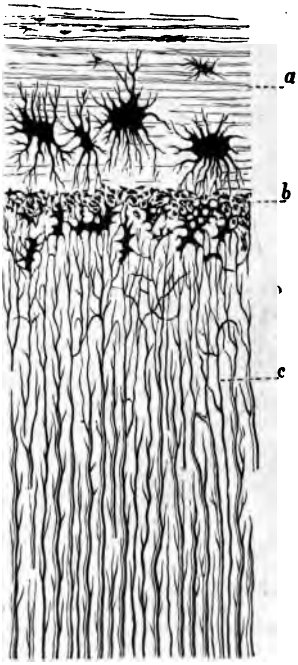


Fig. 181.—From a Section through a Canine Tooth of Man. (*Waldeyer, in Stricker's Manual.*)

a, Crusta petrosa, with large bone corpuscles; *b*, interglobular substance; *c*, dentinal tubules.

On the outer surface of the dentine, both in the region of the enamel and crusta petrosa, the dentinal tubes pass into a layer of intercommunicating irregular branched spaces, the *interglobular spaces* of Czermak, or the *granular layer* of Purkinje. These communicate with spaces existing between the bundles of enamel prisms of the crown, as well as with the bone laminæ of the crusta petrosa of the fang. The interglobular spaces contain each a branched nucleated cell. The dentinal fibres anastomose with the processes of these cells. The *incremental lines of Salter* are lines more or less parallel to the surface, and are due to

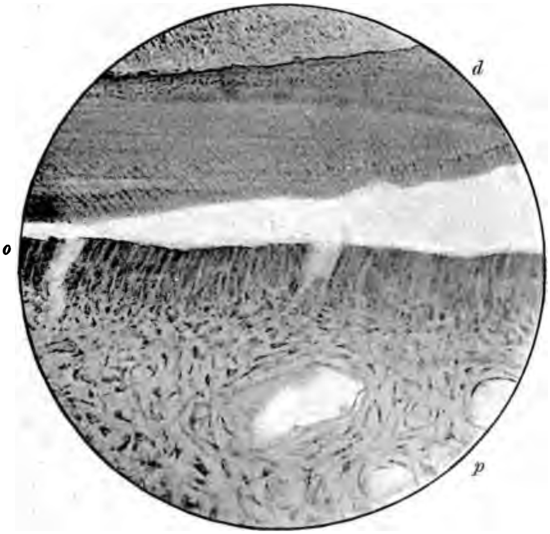


Fig. 182.—From Section through the Pulp and Dentine of Tooth of Guinea-pig. (*Photograph, highly magnified.*)

, Pulp tissue with vessels in cross-section; *o*, odontoblasts; *d*, dentine accidentally detached from odontoblasts.

imperfectly calcified dentine—the *interglobular substance of Czermak.* The *lines of Schreger* are curved lines parallel to the surface, and are due to the optical effect of simultaneous curvatures of dentinal fibres.

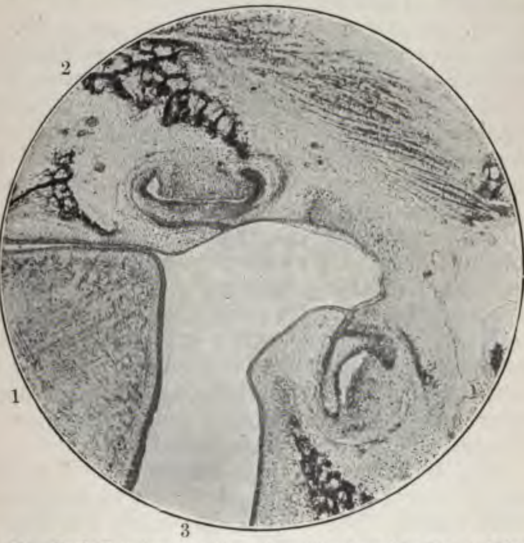


Fig. 183.—Early Development of Tooth. (*Photograph by Mr. A. Pringle.*)

1, Tongue in cross-section; 2, bone of jaws; 3, rudiment of enamel organ and tooth papilla, the former still connected with the surface epithelium.

221. The **cement** is osseous substance, being lamellated bone matrix with bone corpuscles. There are no Haversian canals.

222. The **pulp** is richly supplied with blood-vessels, forming networks, and extending chiefly in a direction parallel to the long axis of the tooth. Numerous medullated nerve fibres forming plexuses are met with in the pulp tissue; on the outer surface

of the pulp they become non-medullated fibres, and probably ascend in the dentinal tubes. The matrix of the pulp is formed by a transparent network of richly branched cells, similar to the network of cells forming the matrix of gelatinous connective tissue.

223. On the outer surface of the pulp—*i.e.* the one in contact with the inner surface of the dentine—is a layer of nucleated cells, which are elongated, more or less columnar. These are the ***odontoblasts proper*** (Fig. 182). Between them are wedged in more or less *spindle-shaped nucleated cells*, the outer or distal process of which passes into a dentinal fibre. The odontoblasts proper are concerned in the production of the dentinal matrix, according to some by a continuous growth of the distal or outer part of the cell and a petrification of this increment, according to others by a secretion by the cell of the dentinal matrix. Waldeyer, Tomes, and others consider the odontoblasts proper concerned in the production both of the dentinal matrix and dentinal fibres. The odontoblasts proper and the spindle-shaped cells are continuous with the branched cells of the pulp matrix.

224. **Development of teeth.**—The first rudiment of a tooth in the embryo appears as early as the second month. It is a solid cylindrical prolongation of the stratified epithelium of the surface into the depth of the embryonic mucous membrane. Along the border of the jaws the epithelium appears thickened, and the subjacent mucous membrane forms there a depression, the *primitive dental groove*. Into this groove the solid cylindrical prolongation of the surface epithelium takes place. This prolongation is the rudiment of the *enamel organ*. While continuing to grow towards the depth, it soon broadens at its deepest part, and the surrounding vascular mucous membrane condenses at the bottom of the prolongation as the rudiment of the tooth papilla. While the distal part

of the enamel organ continues to grow towards the depth, it gradually embraces the tooth papilla in the shape of a cap—the *enamel cap* (Fig 183). During this time the connection between the surface epithelium and the enamel cap becomes greatly thinned out and pushed on one side, owing to the growth of the enamel cap and papilla taking place chiefly to one side of the original dental groove.

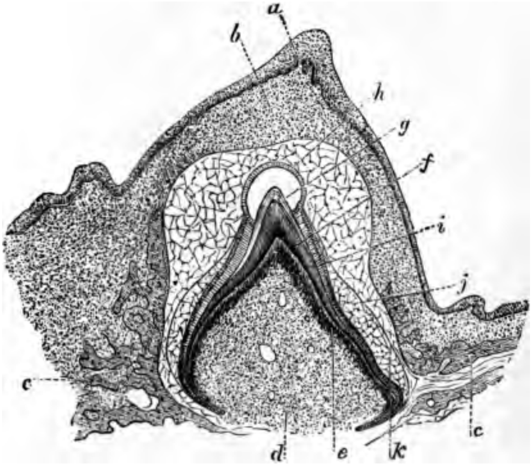


Fig. 184.—From a Section through the Tooth and Lower Jaw of Fœtal Kitten.

a, Epithelium of the free surface of the gum ; b, the mucous membrane of same ; c, spongy bone of jaw ; d, papilla of tooth ; e, odontoblasts ; f, dentine ; g, enamel ; h, membrane of Nasmyth ; i, enamel cells ; j, middle layer of enamel organ ; k, outer layer of enamel organ.

225. The enamel cap (Fig. 184) is composed of three strata—an inner, middle, and outer stratum. The inner stratum is a layer of beautiful columnar epithelial cells—the *enamel cells;* they were originally

continuous with the deep layer or the columnar cells of the surface epithelium. The middle stratum is the thickest, and is of great transparency, owing to a

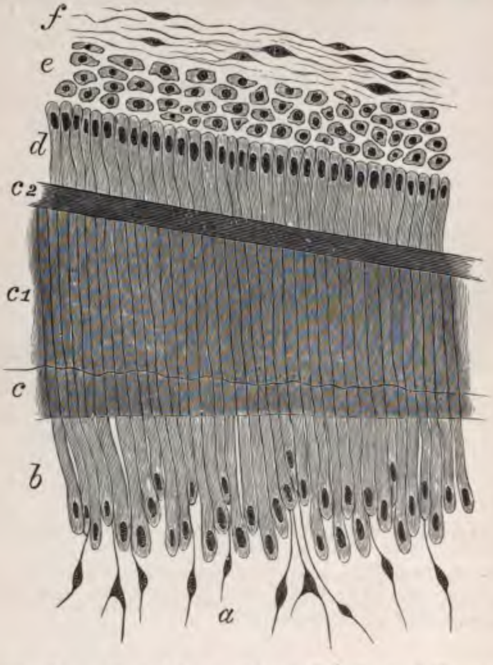


Fig. 185.—From a Vertical Section through Fœtal Tooth of Dog. (*Atlas.*)

a, Spindle-shaped cells of the tooth pulp; *b*, the layer of odontoblasts; *c*, the most recently formed layer of dentine; *c* 1, older dentine; *d*, the layer of enamel cells; *c* 2, the enamel; *e*, outer cells of enamel organ; *f*, tissue of the tooth sac.

transformation of the middle layer of the epithelial cells into a spongy gelatinous tissue, due to accumulation of fluid between the epithelial cells of this layer, and to a reduction of their substance to thin nucleated plates, apparently branched. The outer stratum consists of one or more layers of polyhedral cells, continuous on the one hand with the surface epithelium by the bridge of the rudiment of the enamel organ, and on the other with the enamel cells.

226. The fœtal tooth papilla is a vascular embryonic or gelatinous tissue; on its outer surface a condensation of its cells is soon noticeable into a more or less continuous stratum of elongated or columnar cells, the odontoblasts.

227. Both the dentine and enamel are developed in connection with the odontoblasts and the enamel cells (Fig. 185); the former produce the dentine on their outer surface, while the latter, *i.e.* the enamel cells, deposit the enamel on their inner surface; thus it happens that the enamel is in close contact with, and on the outside of, the dentine. The dentine and enamel are deposited gradually and in layers. At first they are soft tissues, showing a vertical differentiation corresponding to the individual cells of the enamel cells and odontoblasts respectively. Soon lime salts are deposited in them, at first imperfectly, but afterwards a perfect petrification takes place. The layer of most recently formed enamel and dentine is more or less distinctly marked off from the more advanced layer, the most recently formed layer of the enamel being situated next to the enamel cells, that of the dentine next to the odontoblasts (Fig. 186). The amount of enamel and dentine formed is always greatest in the upper part, *i.e.* that corresponding to the future crown. The milk teeth, while continuing to grow, remain buried in the mucous membrane of the gum, till after birth their proper time arrives, when by active growth and enlargement they break through the gum. During this process

the enamel of the crown remains covered, *i.e.* carries with it the inner stratum of the enamel organ only, *i.e.* the enamel cells (Fig. 186, *ec*); these, at the same time as the surface of the enamel increases,

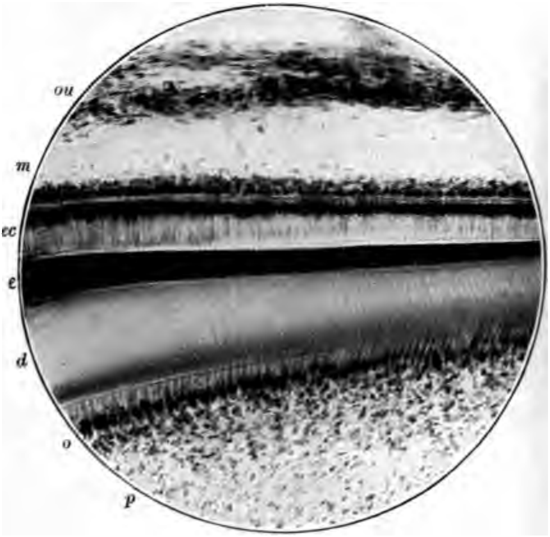


Fig. 186.—From a Section through the developing Tooth of Kitten. **(*Photograph, highly magnified.*)**

***p*, Pulp of the tooth papilla; *o*, layer of odontoblasts; *d*, dentine; *e*, enamel; *ec*, enamel cells; *m*, middle layer of enamel organ; *ou*, outer layer of enamel organ.**

become much flattened, and, finally losing their nuclei, are converted into a layer of transparent scales, th *membrane* or *cuticle of Nasmyth* (Fig. 184, *h*).

228. Long before the milk tooth breaks throu the gum, there appears a solid cylindrical mass epithelial cells extending into the depth from original connection between the enamel organ and

epithelium of the surface of the gum mentioned above. This new epithelial outgrowth represents the germ for the enamel organ of the permanent tooth; but it remains stationary in its growth till the time arrives for the milk tooth to be supplanted by a permanent tooth. Then that rudiment undergoes exactly the same changes of growth as the enamel organ of the milk tooth did in the first period of fœtal life. A new tooth is thus formed in the depth of the alveolar cavity of a milk tooth, and the growth of the former in size and towards the surface gradually lifts the latter out of its socket.

Mummery has shown that the dentine contains petrified fibres and trabeculæ, which are direct continuations of the pulp tissue, and are comparable to the fibres of Sharpey in bone.

CHAPTER XXIV.

THE SALIVARY GLANDS.

229. THE salivary glands, according to their structure and secretion, are of the following kinds :—

(1) *True salivary* (Fig. 187), *serous*, or albuminous

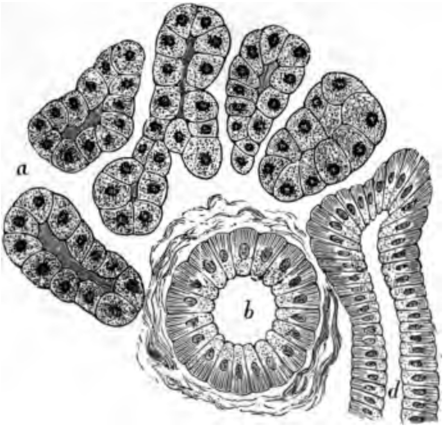


Fig. 187.—From a Section through a Serous or True Salivary Gland ; part of the Human Submaxillary. (*Atlas.*)

a, The gland alveoli, lined with the albuminous "salivary cells" ; *b*, intralobular duct cut transversely.

glands, such as the parotid of man and mammals, the submaxillary and orbital of the rabbit, the submaxillary of the guinea-pig. They secrete true, thin, watery saliva.

230. (2) *Mucous glands.* Of these there are several varieties. In the first place, there is the *pure mucous gland* (Fig. 188), represented by the sublingual gland of the guinea-pig and many of the simple buccal glands of the mouth. In the next place, the secreting alveolus may contain other cells than true mucous cells (*mucous glands with demilunes*). There may be comparatively few of this second variety of cell in the alveolus, and such cells may have an entirely peripheral position in the alveolus, and, being thus adapted in shape to the globular character of the alveolus, may become flattened between the basement membrane and more centrally disposed mucous cells, so that in section they have the appearance of half-moon-shaped masses, and are hence called *demilune* cells. The alveolus may contain few of these demilune cells, as in the orbital or submaxillary gland of the dog (Fig. 188), or

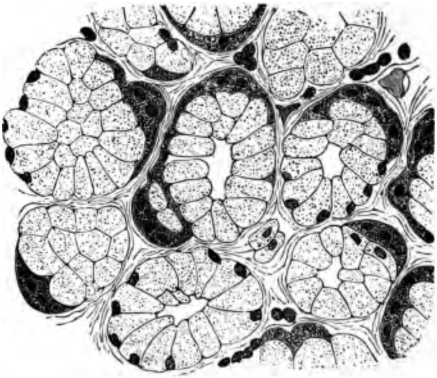


Fig. 188.—From a Section through the Orbital (mucous) Gland of Dog. Quiescent State. (*Heidenhain.*)

The alveoli are lined with transparent "mucous cells," and outside these are the demilunes of Heidenhain.

a more or less complete ring of such cells may exist, as in the submaxillary gland of the cat (Fig. 190). Finally, this second variety of cell may be so largely represented as to cause the gland to be described as belonging to a separate variety—mixed glands.

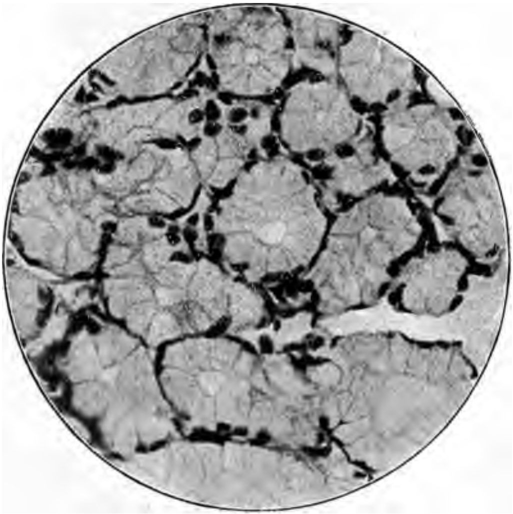


Fig. 189.—Section through a Pure Mucous Gland in the Resting State. The nuclei are seen flattened at the periphery of the alveoli. The cells are not deeply stained. There are no demilune cells. (*Microphotograph.*)

231. (3) *Mixed salivary, muco-salivary, or sero-mucous glands.* Here some alveoli may be entirely serous, some may belong to one of the varieties of so-called mucous glands. Sometimes the alveoli may contain both serous and mucous cells similarly situated around the lumen, so that we may have actually a mixed salivary alveolus (Fig. 191). It is justifiable to assume that demilune cells really

represent occasional serous cells present in a mucous alveolus, and these cells occupy a peripheral position.

In addition to the three salivary glands—parotid, submaxillary, and sublingual—there are in some cases, as in the rabbit and the guinea-pig, two minute additional glands, one intimately joined to the parotid and the other to the submaxillary, and both of the nature of a mucous gland. These are the superior and inferior *admaxillary glands*.

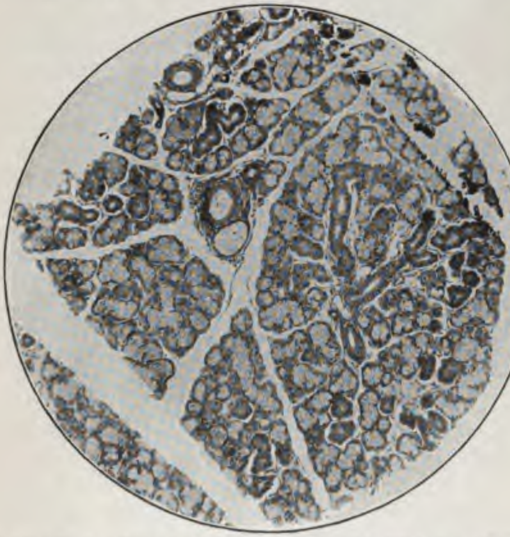


Fig. 190.—Section through the Submaxillary Gland of Cat. The alveoli are in nearly all cases surrounded by a dark rim, composed of demilune cells. More deeply-stained masses consisting of ducts are also seen. (*Microphotograph.*)

232. **The framework.**—Each salivary gland is enveloped in a fibrous connective-tissue capsule, in connection with which are fibrous trabeculæ and

septa in the interior of the gland, by which the substance of the latter is subdivided into *lobes*, these again into *lobules*, and these finally into the alveoli or acini. The duct, large vessels and nerves pass to and from the gland by the hilum. The connective tissue is of loose texture, contains elastic fibres, and, in some instances more, in others less, numerous lymphoid cells. In the sublingual gland they are so numerous that they form continuous rows between the alveoli. The connective-tissue matrix between the alveoli is chiefly represented by fine bundles of fibrous tissue and branched connective-tissue corpuscles.

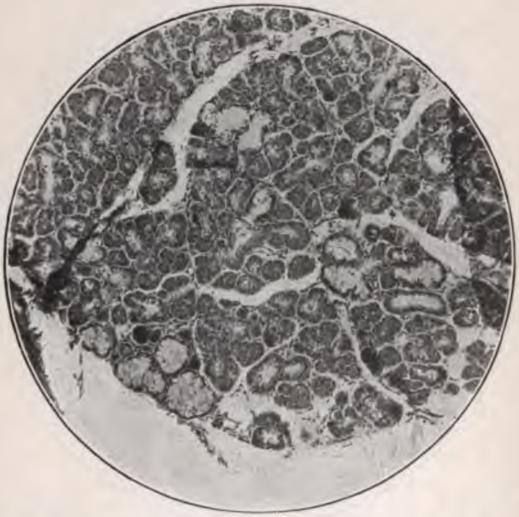


Fig. 191.—Section through a Human Submaxillary Gland. Nearly all the alveoli consist of albuminous cells. There is also to be seen a fairly large number of somewhat larger and less deeply-stained alveoli which consist largely of mucous cells. (*Microphotograph.*)

233. **The ducts.**—Following the chief duct of the gland through the hilum into the interior, we see that it divides into several large branches, according to the number of lobes; each of these takes up several branches, one for each lobule. Following it into the lobule, the branch is very minute, and is seen to take up several more minute tubes; all these tubes within the lobule are the *intralobular ducts* or the *salivary tubes* of Pflüger; the bigger ducts being the *interlobular*, and, further, the *interlobar ducts.* Each of the latter consists of a limiting membrana propria, strengthened, according to the size of the duct, by thicker or thinner trabeculæ of connective tissue. In the chief branches there is present in addition non-striped muscular tissue. The interior of the duct is a cavity lined with a layer of columnar epithelial cells. In the largest branches there is, outside this layer and inside the membrana propria, a layer of small polyhedral cells.

234. The **intralobular ducts,** or the salivary tubes of Pflüger, have each a distinct lumen or cavity, which is lined with a single layer of columnar epithelium, and outside this is a limiting membrana propria. Each of the lining epithelial cells has a spherical nucleus in about the middle; the outer half of the cell substance shows very marked longitudinal striation, due to more or less coarse fibrillæ (see Fig. 187). The inner half—*i.e.* the one bordering the lumen—is granular, or only very faintly striated. The outline of these salivary tubes is never smooth, but irregular—*i.e.* the diameter of the tube varies from place to place.

Not in all salivary glands do the epithelial cells of the intralobular ducts show this coarse fibrillation in the outer part of their substance—*e.g.* it is not present in the sublingual gland of the dog or the guinea-pig.

235. The ends of the branches of the salivary

tubes are connected with the secreting parts of the lobule—*i.e.* the acini or alveoli. These always very conspicuously differ in structure from the salivary tubes.

The last part of the duct which is in immediate connection with the alveoli is the *intermediate part*, this being interposed, as it were, between the alveoli and the salivary tube with fibrillated epithelium. The intermediate part is much narrower than the salivary tube, and is lined with a single layer of very flattened epithelial cells, each with a single oval nucleus; the boundary is formed by the membrana propria, continued from the salivary tube. The lumen of the intermediate part is much smaller than that of the salivary tube, and is generally lined with a fine hyaline membrane, with here and there an oblong nucleus in it.

At the point of transition of the salivary tube into the intermediate part there is generally a sudden diminution in size of the former, and the columnar cells of the salivary tube are replaced by polyhedral cells; this is the neck of the intermediate part. In some salivary glands, especially in the mucous, this neck is the only portion of the intermediate part present—*e.g.* in the submaxillary and orbital glands of the dog and cat, and in the sublingual of the rabbit. In others, especially in the serous salivary glands, as the parotid of man and mammals, the submaxillary of the rabbit and guinea-pig, and in the mixed salivary—as the submaxillary and sublingual of man—there exists after the neck a long intermediate part, which gives off several shorter or longer branches of the same kind, all ending in alveoli.

236. The **alveoli** or **acini** are the essential or secreting portion of the gland; they are flask-shaped, club-shaped, shorter or longer cylindrical tubes, more or less wavy or, if long, more or less convoluted; many

of them are branched. Generally several open into the same intermediate part of a salivary tube. The acini are much larger in diameter than the intermediate part, and slightly larger, or about as large as the intralobular ducts. But there is a difference in this respect between the acini of a serous and of a mucous salivary gland; in the former the acini are smaller than in the latter.

The membrana propria of the intermediate duct is continuous with the membrana propria of the acini. This is a reticulated structure, being in reality a basket-shaped network of hyaline branched nucleated cells (Boll). The lumen of the acini is minute in the serous, but is larger in the mucous glands; it is in both glands smaller during secretion than during rest.

237. The epithelial cells lining the acini are called the *salivary cells*—they are of different characters in the different salivary glands, and chiefly determine the nature of the gland. The cells are separated from one another by a fluid albuminous cement substance. (i.) In the serous or true salivary glands, as parotid of man and mammals, submaxillary of rabbit and guinea-pig, the salivary cells form a single layer of shorter or longer columnar or pyramidal *albuminous cells*, composed of a reticulated protoplasm, and containing a spherical nucleus in the outer part of the cell. (ii.) In the mucous glands, such as the sublingual of the guinea-pig, or the admaxillary of the same animal, the cells lining the acini form a single layer of goblet-shaped *mucous cells*, such as have been described above. Each cell consists of an inner principal part, composed of a transparent mucoid substance (contained in a wide-meshed reticulum of the protoplasm), and of an outer small, more opaque part, containing a compressed and flattened nucleus. This part is drawn out in a fine extremity, which, being curved in a direction parallel to the surface of the acinus, is

imbricated on its neighbours. In the case of the submaxillary and orbital glands of the dog and the sublingual of the rabbit, there exist, in addition to and outside of the *mucous cells* lining the acini, but within the membrana propria, from place to place crescentic masses, being the *demilunes of Heidenhain*, or the *crescents of Gianuzzi* (see Fig. 188). Each is composed of several polyhedral granular-looking cells, each with a spherical nucleus; the cells at the margin of the crescent are, of course, thinner than those forming the middle. Heidenhain and his pupils, Lavdovski and others, have shown that, during prolonged exhausting stimulation of the submaxillary and orbital of the dog, all the lining cylindrical *mucous* cells become replaced by small polyhedral cells, similar to those constituting the crescents, while at the same time the acini become smaller (Fig. 192). These observers maintain that this change is due to a total destruction of the mucous cells, and a replacement of them by new ones, derived by multiplication from the crescent cells. This is improbable, since during ordinary conditions of secretions there is no disappearance of the mucous cells as such; they change in size, becoming larger during

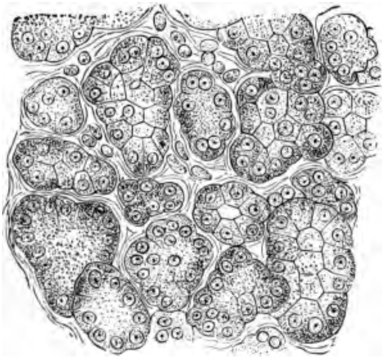


Fig. 192.—From a Section through the Orbital Gland of Dog, after prolonged electrical Stimulation. The acini are lined with small granular cells. (*Lavdovski.*)

secretion, and their contents are converted into perfect mucus. It is probable that, on prolonged exhaustive stimulation, the mucous cells collapse into the small cells, seen by Heidenhain and his pupils.

238. (iii.) The acini of the sublingual of the dog are again different in structure both from those of the submaxillary of the dog and of the sublingual of the guinea-pig, for the acini are there lined either with mucous cells or with columnar albuminous cells, or the two kinds of cells follow one another *in the same alveolus.*

This gland is a sort of intermediate form between the sublingual of man and the submaxillary of man and ape (Fig. 191). These are the mixed or muco-salivary glands. In these the great number of acini are serous—*i.e.* small—with small lumen, and lined with albuminous cells, whereas there are always present a few acini exactly like those of a mucous gland. The two kinds of acini are in direct continuity with one another. In some conditions there are only very few mucous acini to be met with within the lobule—so few sometimes that they seem to be altogether absent; in others they are numerous, but even under most favourable conditions they form only a fraction of the number of the serous acini. In the sublingual of man they are much more frequent, and for this reason this gland possesses a great resemblance to the sublingual of the dog.

What appear to be *crescents* in the mucous acini of the human gland are an oblique view of albuminous cells lining the acini at the transition between the mucous and serous part of the same gland-tube.

239. The columnar salivary cells lining the acini of the submaxillary of the guinea-pig in some conditions show *two distinct portions:* an outer homogeneous or slightly and longitudinally striated substance, and an inner, more transparent, granular-looking part, and

in this respect the cells resemble those of the pancreas. (*See* pp. 330–2.)

240. Langley has shown (Fig. 193) that during the period preparatory to secretion the cells lining the acini of the serous salivary glands become enlarged and filled with coarse granules; during secretion these granules become used up, so that the cell-substance grows more transparent, beginning from the outer part of the cell and gradually advancing towards the lumen of the acini. These granules may be seen in the fresh gland, but reagents very rapidly destroy them. Salivary glands hardened by the usual reagents, though not themselves showing the granules, may, however, present appearances corresponding to the removal of the granules from the outer zone of the alveolus. It is found that in such cases the outer zone stains more deeply (Fig. 192), an appearance frequently met with in the pancreas.

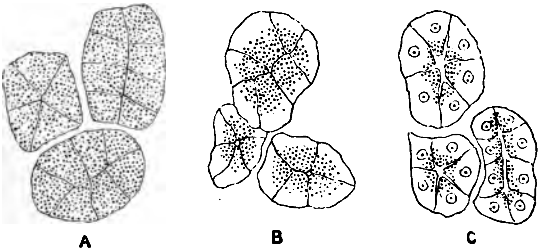


Fig. 193.—Acini of Serous Gland. (*Langley.*)
A, At rest; B, first stage of secretion; C, prolonged secretion.

When the outer part of the alveolus is devoid of granules, the alveolus is said to be *active* or partially *exhausted;* when the granules reach practically to the outermost part of the cells, the alveolus is said to be *resting*. Under normal conditions secretion in the salivary glands never approaches exhaustion, though in the pancreas it is not uncommonly the case.

241. **Blood-vessels and lymphatics.**—The lobules are richly supplied with blood-vessels. The arteries break up into numerous capillaries, which with their dense networks surround and entwine the acini. Between the interalveolar connective tissue carrying the capillary blood-vessels and the membrana propria of the acini exist *lymph spaces* surrounding the greater part of the circumference of the acini and forming an intercommunicating system of spaces. They open into *lymphatic vessels* accompanying the intralobular ducts, or at the margin of the lobule directly empty themselves into the interlobular lymphatics. The connective tissue between the lobes contains rich *plexuses of lymphatics.*

242. The **nerve-branches** form plexuses in the interlobular tissue. In connection with them are larger or smaller *ganglia* (Fig. 168). They are very numerously met with in the submaxillary, but are absent in the parotid. Some ganglia are present in connection with the nerve-branches surrounding the chief duct of the sublingual gland.

Pflüger maintains that the ultimate nerve fibres are connected with the salivary cells of the acini in man and mammals, but this remains to be proved.

CHAPTER XXV.

THE MOUTH, PHARYNX AND TONGUE.

243. **The glands.**—Into the cavity of the mouth and pharynx open very numerous minute glands, which, as regards structure and secretion, are either serous or mucous. The latter occur in the depth of the mucous membrane covering the lips, in the buccal mucous membrane, in that of the hard palate, and especially in that of the soft palate and the uvula, in the depth of the mucous membrane of the tonsils, at the back of the tongue, and in the mucous membrane of the pharynx. The serous glands are found in the back of the tongue, in close proximity to the parts containing the special organs for the perception of taste—the taste goblets or buds (see below). All the glands are very small, but when isolated they are perceptible to the unaided eye as minute whitish specks, as big as a pin's head, or bigger. The largest are in the lips, at the back of the tongue and soft palate, where there is something like a grouping of the alveoli around the small branches of the duct, so as to form little lobules.

244. The chief duct generally opens with a narrow mouth on the free surface of the oral cavity; it passes in a vertical or oblique direction through the superficial part of the mucous membrane. In the deeper, looser part (submucous tissue) it branches in two or more small ducts, which take up a number of alveoli. Of course, on the number of minute ducts and alveoli depends the size of the gland.

In man, all ducts are lined with a single layer of columnar epithelial cells, longer in the larger than in the smaller ducts ; in mammals the epithelium is a single layer of polyhedral cells. No fibrillation is noticeable in the epithelial cells. At the transition of the terminal ducts into the acini there is occasionally a slight enlargement, called the *infundibulum ;* here the granular-looking epithelial cells of the duct change into the columnar transparent mucous cells lining the acini.

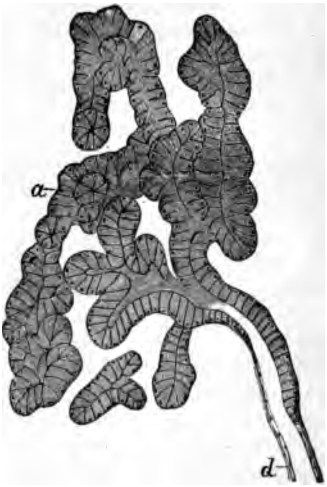


Fig. 194.—Part of a Lobule of a Mucous Gland in the Tongue of Dog. (*Atlas.*)
a, Gland tubes (alveoli) viewed in various directions: they are lined with transparent "mucous cells"; *d*, duct lined with small polyhedral cells.

245. The acini of these glands are identical with those of the mucous glands described above (Fig. 194)—*e.g.* the sublingual gland as regards size, tubular branched nature, the lining epithelium, and lumen.

In some instances (as in the soft palate and tongue) the duct near the opening is lined with ciliated columnar epithelium. The stratified epithelium of the surface is generally continued a short distance into the mouth of the duct.

246. The **serous glands** at the root of the tongue (von Ebner) differ from the mucous chiefly in the epithelium, size, and lumen of the acini. These

are of exactly the same nature and structure as those of the serous or true salivary glands.

247. **Saliva** obtained from the mouth contains numbers of epithelial scales detached from the surface of the mucous membrane, groups of bacteria and micrococci, and lymph corpuscles. Some of these are in a state of disintegration, while others are swollen up by the water of the saliva. In these there are contained numbers of granules in rapid oscillation, called Brownian molecular movement.

248. The **mucous membrane** lining the cavity of the mouth consists of a thin membrane covered on its free surface with a thick stratified pavement epithelium, the most superficial cells being scales, more or less changed into horn.

Underneath the epithelium is a somewhat dense feltwork of fibrous connective tissue, with numerous elastic fibrils in networks. This part is the corium or *mucosa*, and it projects into the epithelium in the shape of cylindrical or conical *papillæ*.

According to the thickness of the epithelium, the papillæ differ in length. The longest are found where the epithelium is thickest—*e.g.* in the mucosa of the lips, soft palate, and uvula.

Numerous lymph corpuscles are found in the mucosa of the palate and uvula. Sometimes they amount to diffuse adenoid tissue. The deeper part of the mucous membrane is the *submucosa.* It is looser in its texture, but it also is composed of fibrous connective tissue with elastic fibrils. The glands are here embedded; adipose tissue in the shape of groups of fat cells or continuous lobules of fat cells are here to be met with. The large vascular and nervous trunks pass to and from the submucosa.

249. **Striped muscular tissue** is found in the submucosa. In the lips, soft palate, uvula, and palatine arches it forms a very conspicuous portion :

namely, the sphincter orbicularis, with its outrunners into the mucous membrane of the lips, the muscles of the palate, uvula (levator and tensor palati), and the arcus palato-pharyngeus and palato-glossus.

250. The last branches of the *arteries* break up in a dense *capillary network* on the surface of the mucosa, and from it loops ascend into the papillæ. Of course, fat tissue glands and muscular tissue receive their own supply. There is a very rich *plexus of veins* in the superficial part of the mucosa. They are conspicuous by their size and the thinness of their wall.

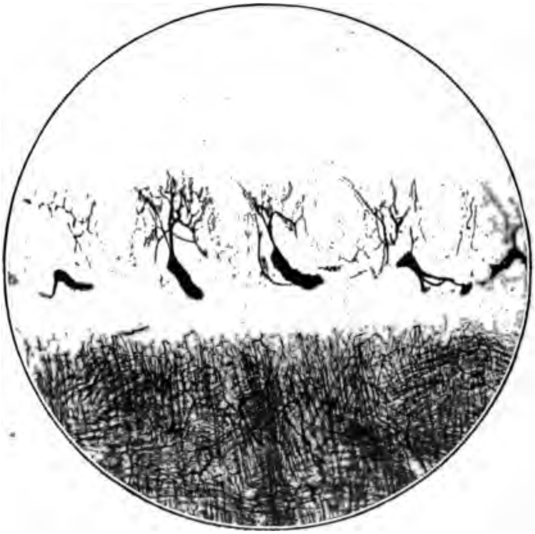


Fig. 195.—Section through the Tongue of Cat; the Blood-vessels injected. The lower part of the figure shows the injected muscular tissue, in the middle part the mucous membrane with large vessels; the upper part shows the papillæ filiformes, with their capillary blood-vessels. (*Photograph by Mr. A. Pringle.*)

The *lymphatics* form networks in all layers of the mucosa, including the papillæ. The large efferent trunks are situated in the submucosa. The last outrunners of the *nerve-branches* form a *plexus of non-medullated fibres* in the superficial layer of the mucosa, whence numerous *primitive fibrillæ* ascend into the epithelium to form networks. Meissner's tactile corpuscles have been found in the papillæ of the lips and in those of the tongue.

251. In the **pharynx** the relations remain the same, except in the upper or nasal part, where we find many places covered with columnar ciliated epithelium. As in the palatine tonsils, so also here, the mucosa is infiltrated with diffuse adenoid tissue, and with lymph follicles in great numbers. This forms the *pharyngeal tonsil* of Luschka.

In the palatine tonsil and in the pharyngeal tonsil there are numerous crypts leading from the surface into the depth. This is due to the folding of the infiltrated mucosa. Such crypts are, in the pharynx, sometimes lined all through with ciliated epithelium, although the parts of the free surface around them are covered with stratified pavement epithelium.

252. The **tongue** is a fold of the mucous membrane. Its bulk is made up of striped muscular tissue (genio-, hyo-, and stylo-glossus; according to direction: longitudinalis superior and inferior, and transversus linguæ). The lower surface is covered with a delicate mucous membrane, identical in structure with that lining the rest of the oral cavity, whereas the upper part is covered with a membrane, of which the mucosa projects over the free surface as exceedingly numerous fine and short hair-like processes, the *papillæ filiformes*, or as less numerous, isolated, somewhat longer and broader mushroom-shaped *papillæ fungiformes*. The papillæ, as well as the pits between them, are covered with stratified pavement epithelium. Each has numbers

of minute secondary papillæ. Their substance, like the mucous membrane of the tongue, is made up of fibrous connective tissue. The mucous membrane is on the whole thin, and is firmly and intimately connected with the fibrous tissue forming the septa between the muscular bundles of the deeper tissue. It contains large vascular trunks, amongst which the plexus of veins is very conspicuous (Fig. 195). On the surface of the mucosa is a rich network of capillary blood-vessels, extending as complex loops into the papillæ. Lymphatics form rich plexuses in the mucosa and in the deep muscular tissue. Adipose tissue is common

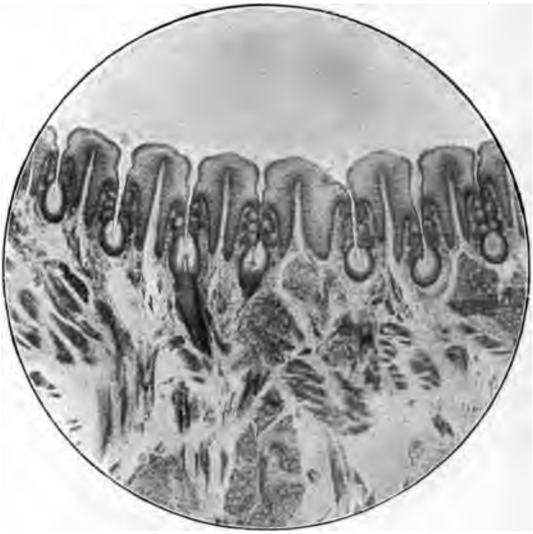


Fig. 196.—Section through the Papilla Foliata of Rabbit, showing the Taste Buds amongst the Epithelium. In the depth are bundles of muscular fibres and glands. Magnifying power, 40. (*Photograph by Mr. A Pringle.*)

between the muscular bundles, especially at the back of the tongue.

253. There are two varieties of glands present in the tongue, the mucous and serous. The latter occur only at the back, and in the immediate neighbourhood of the taste organs; the mucous glands are chiefly present at the back; but in the human tongue there are small mucous glands (glands of Nuhn) at the tip. All the glands at the back are embedded between the bundles of striped muscular tissue, and thus the movements of the tongue have the effect of squeezing out the secretion of the glands. About the glands

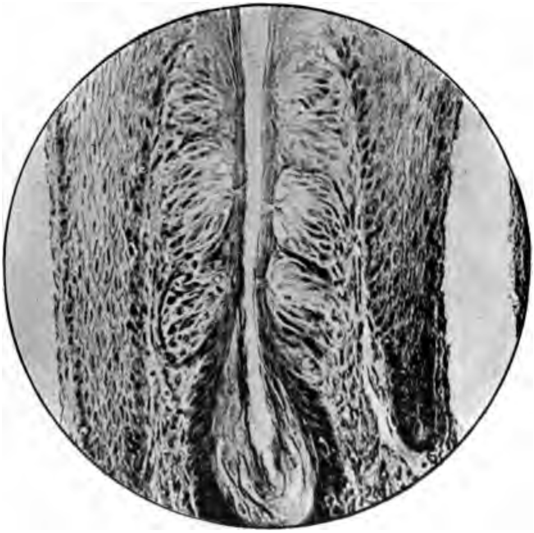


Fig. 197.—Section through Taste Organ (Papilla Foliata.) From same preparation as Fig. 196, more magnified, to show the taste buds. (*Photograph by Mr. A. Pringle.*)

numerous nerve bundles are found connected with minute ganglia.

At the root of the tongue the mucous membrane is much thicker, and contains in its mucosa numerous lymph follicles and diffuse adenoid tissue. Thus numerous knob-like or fold-like prominences of the mucosa are produced. There are also minute pits or crypts leading into the depth of these prominences.

254. The **papillæ circumvallatæ** are large papillæ fungiformes, each surrounded by a fold of the mucosa. They contain taste goblets or buds—*i.e.* the terminal taste organs. At the margin of the tongue, in the region of the circumvallate papillæ, there are always a few permanent folds, which also contain taste goblets. In some domestic animals these folds assume a definite organisation—*e.g.* in the rabbit there is an oval or circular organ composed of numbers of parallel and permanent folds, *papilla foliata* (Fig. 196).

255. The papillæ fungiformes of the rest of the tongue also contain in some places a taste goblet. But most of the taste goblets are found on the papillæ circumvallatæ and foliatæ. In both kinds of structures the taste goblets are placed in several rows close round the bottom of the pit, separating, in the papillæ circumvallatæ, the papillæ fungiformes from the fold of the mucosa surrounding it: in the papilla foliata the pits are represented by grooves separating the individual folds from one another.

256. The **taste goblets** or **taste buds** are barrel- or flask-shaped structures (Fig. 197) extending in a vertical direction through the epithelium, from the free surface to the mucosa. Each is covered with flattened, elongated epithelial cells, forming its periphery; these are the *tegmental cells.* The interior of the goblet is made up of a bundle of spindle-shaped or staff-shaped *taste cells.* Each includes an oval nucleus, and is drawn out into an outer and an inner fine extremity.

The former extends to the free surface, projecting just through the mouth of the goblet, and resembles a fine hair; the latter is generally branched, and passes towards the mucosa, where it probably becomes connected with a nerve fibre. The mucosa of these parts contains rich plexuses of nerve fibres.

According to Retzius the medullated nerve fibres entering from the mucosa lose their medullary sheath and continue their course, either as *peribulbar* ramifications between the tegmental cells, or as *intrabulbar* fibres between and amongst the taste cells. Both sets of fibres terminate with free knoblike endings (Fig. 198).

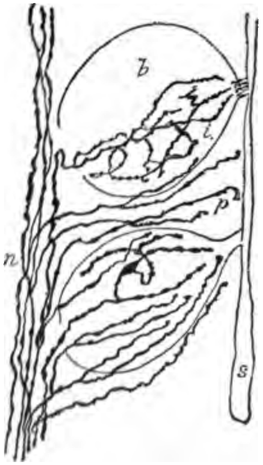


Fig. 198. Ending of Nerve Fibres in and around Taste Buds of Rabbit. (*G. Retzius, from Quain.*)

n, nerve fibres; *b*, taste bud; *i*, intrabulbar ramification of nerve fibrils; *p*, peribulbar ramification of nerve fibrils; *s*, sulcus between two adjacent folds of the papilla foliata.

Into the pits surrounded by taste goblets open the ducts of the serous glands only (von Ebner).

CHAPTER XXVI.

THE ŒSOPHAGUS AND STOMACH.

257. I. **The œsophagus.**—Beginning with the œsophagus, and ending with the rectum of the large intestine, the wall of the alimentary canal consists of an inner coat or mucous membrane, an outer or muscular coat, and outside this a thin fibrous coat, which, commencing with the cardia of the stomach, is the serous covering, or the visceral peritoneum.

The epithelium lining the inner or free surface of the mucous membrane of the œsophagus is a thick, stratified, pavement epithelium.

In Batrachia, not only the oral cavity and pharynx, but also the œsophagus, are lined with ciliated columnar epithelium.

The mucous membrane is a fibrous connective-tissue membrane, the superficial part of which is dense—the *mucosa;* this projects, in the shape of small papillæ, into the epithelium.

The deeper, looser portion of the mucous membrane is the *submucosa;* in it lie small mucous glands, the ducts of which pass in a vertical or oblique direction through the mucosa, in order to open on the free surface. In man these glands are comparatively scarce; in carnivorous animals (dog, cat) they form an almost continuous layer (Fig. 199).

258. Between the mucosa and submucosa are longitudinal bundles of non-striped muscular tissue. At the beginning of the œsophagus they are absent, but soon make their appearance—at first as small

bundles separated from one another by masses of connective tissue; but lower down, about the middle, they form a continuous stratum of longitudinal bundles. This is the *muscularis mucosæ* (Fig. 200).

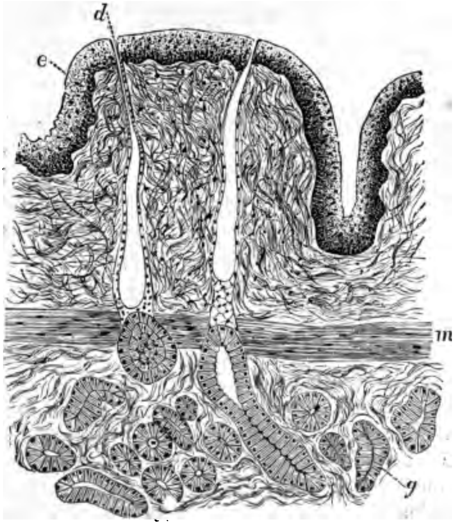


Fig. 199.—From a Longitudinal Section through the Mucous Membrane of the Œsophagus of Dog. (*Atlas.*)

e, Stratified pavement epithelium of the surface; *m*, muscularis mucosæ; between the two is the mucosa; *g*, mucous glands; *d*, ducts of same.

Outside the submucosa is the muscularis externa. This consists of an inner thicker circular and an outer thinner longitudinal coat. And outside this is the outer, or limiting, fibrous coat of the œsophagus. In man the outer muscular coat consists of non-striped muscular tissue, except at the beginning (about the upper third, or less) of the œsophagus, which is composed of the striped variety; but in many mammals almost the whole of the external muscular coat, except the part nearest the cardia, is made up of striped fibres.

259. The large vessels pass into the submucosa, whence their finer branches pass to the surface parts. The superficial part of the mucosa and the papillæ contain the capillary networks. The outer muscular coat and the muscularis mucosæ have their own vascular supply.

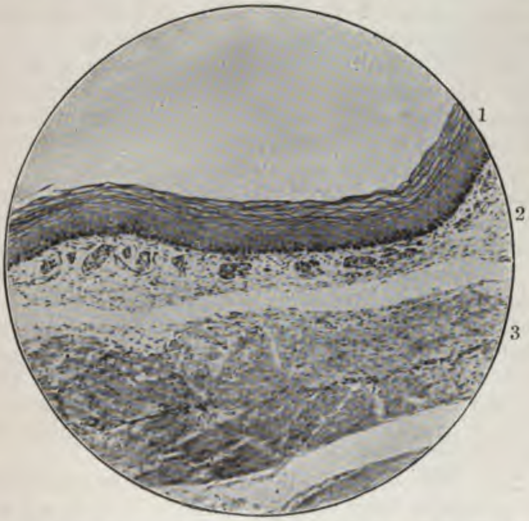


Fig. 200.—Transverse Section through the Œsophagus of a Newly-born Child. (*Photograph. Low magnification.*)

1, Stratified epithelium of the inner surface; 2, mucosa containing cross-cut bundles of non-striped muscle, muscularis mucosæ; 3, outer muscular coat.

There is a rich plexus of lymphatics in the mucosa, and this leads to a plexus of larger vessels in the submucosa (Teichmann). The nerves form rich plexuses in the outer fibrous coat; these plexuses include numerous ganglia. A second plexus of non-medullated fibres lies between the longitudinal and circular muscular coat; a few ganglia are connected with this plexus. In the submucosa are also plexuses of non-medullated fibres. Now and then a small ganglion is connected also with this plexus.

260. II. **The stomach.**—Beginning with the cardia, the mucous membrane of the stomach is covered with a single layer of beautiful thin columnar epithelial cells, most of which are mucus-secreting goblet cells. On the surface of the mucous membrane of the stomach open numerous fine ducts of glands, placed very closely side by side. These extend, more or less vertically, as minute tubes, into the depth of the mucous membrane. In the pyloric end, where the mucous membrane presents a pale aspect, the glands are called the *pyloric glands :* in the rest of the stomach, the mucous membrane presents a reddish or red-brown appearance, and here the glands have a different character. This second variety of gland is typical of the cardiac end of the stomach as distinct from the pyloric, and hence is described as the *cardiac gland.*

261. The part of the mucous membrane containing the glands is the *mucosa;* outside this is a loose connective tissue containing the large vessels—this is the *submucosa.* Between the two, but belonging to the mucosa, is the *muscularis mucosæ*, a thick stratum of bundles of non-striped muscular tissue, arranged in most parts of the stomach as an inner circular and an outer longitudinal layer. The tissue of the mucosa contains the gland tubes, arranged more or less in small groups. Between them is a delicate connective tissue, in which the minute capillary blood-vessels pass in a direction vertical to the surface. Numerous small bundles of non-striped muscular fibres pass from the muscularis mucosæ towards the surface—up

to near the epithelium of the surface—forming longitudinal muscular sheaths, as it were, around the gland tubes.

The plicæ villosæ of the superficial part of the mucosa contain fibrous connective tissue and numerous lymphoid cells.

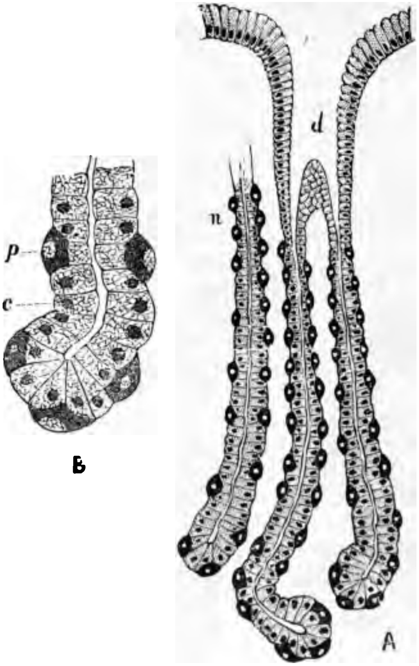


Fig. 201.—Cardiac Glands.

A, Under a low power; *d*, duct; *n*, neck. B, part of the fundus of a gland tube under a high power; *p*, parietal cells; *c*, chief cells.

262. The **cardiac glands** (Fig. 201) are more or less wavy tubes, extending down to the muscularis mucosæ. The deep part is broader than the rest, and is more or less curved, seldom branched. This is the *fundus* of the gland; near the surface of the mucosa is the thinnest part of the tube; this is the *neck.* Two or three neighbouring glands may join and open into a short cylindrical *duct.* The duct is lined with a layer of columnar epithelial cells, continuous and identical with that covering the free surface between contiguous glands. The duct may be really represented by a shallow depression from the surface; it is then more usual to speak of the *mouth* of the gland.

263. The epithelium covering the surface consists of mucous cells. The outer two-thirds stain very slightly as a rule, the nucleus is oval and situated in the inner third of the cell, where the cell substance stains more deeply. At the base of these cells more deeply staining *replacement* cells may be seen. The neck and fundus of the cardiac gland is made up of two kinds of cells. The first variety occupies in general a more central position around the lumen, the cells are as a rule very indistinct in their outlines, the nucleus is in the outer half of the cell and usually somewhat shrunken. These cells are usually spoken of as the *central*, *peptic*, or *chief* cells. The shape of these cells is cubical or short columnar. The other variety of cell is characterised by a more peripheral position—at any rate, in the fundus of the gland, their outlines are much more distinct; the nucleus is oval and situated in the centre of the cell. These cells may impinge on the lumen at the neck of the gland, where they are most numerous; in the fundus they are scattered and placed between the investing membrane and the central cells. These cells are spoken of as *parietal*, *oxyntic*, or *ovoid* cells. The cardiac glands may present appearances showing the secretion in the

condition of granules in the cells. Granules are observable both in the parietal and central cells; they are more conspicuous and more easily preserved in the latter.

264. **The pyloric glands** (Fig. 202).—The *duct* of each pyloric gland is several times longer than that of the cardiac. The duct of the former occupies in some places as much as half of the thickness of the mucosa, whereas that of the latter does not exceed, in the fundus of the stomach or in the cardia, more than one-fourth or one-fifth of the thickness.

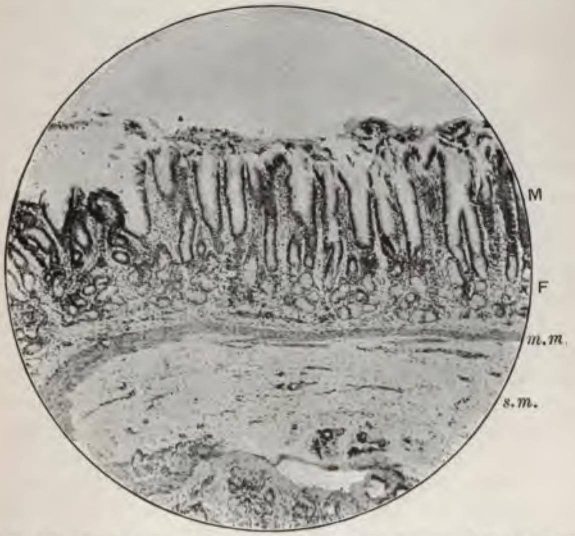


Fig. 202.—Vertical Section through the Pyloric Region of the Gastric Mucous Membrane. (*Microphotograph.*)

The wide funnel-shaped mouths are seen at the level M, the twisted ends cut across in various planes at level F; the darkish band at level *m.m.* is the muscularis mucosæ; *s.m.*, submucous layer.

The epithelium lining the duct of the pyloric glands is similar to that of the free surface. Several tubes open into one duct by a short neck. The fundus or tube is much convoluted and generally branched. It is lined by only one variety of cell, which bears some resemblance to the central cell of the cardiac glands. It is difficult to make out any appearance of granules either in the fresh or hardened condition.

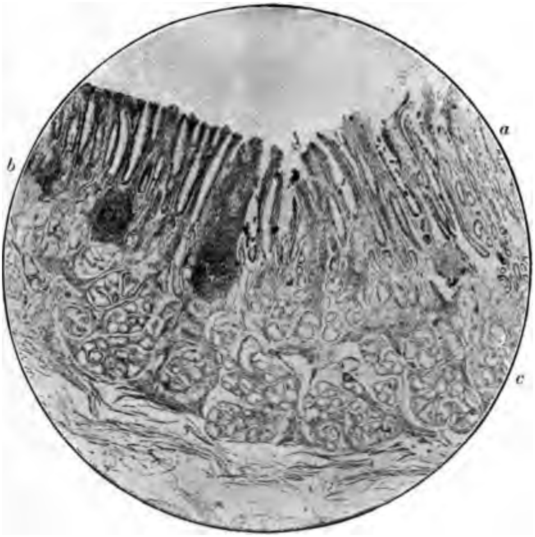


Fig. 203.—From a Section through the Transition of the Pylorus into the Duodenum. (*Microphotograph. Low power.*)

a, Duodenal mucous membrane with villi; *b*, pyloric mucosa with lymph follicles; *c*, Brunner's glands directly continuous with the pyloric glands.

265. Between the mucous membrane with cardiac glands and the pyloric end of the stomach with pyloric

glands there is a narrow *intermediate zone*, in which the cardiac glands appear by degrees to merge into the pyloric glands. That is to say, the short duct of the former gradually elongates, the gland tubes get shorter in proportion and convoluted, their lumen gradually enlarges, and the parietal cells become fewer and ultimately disappear.

266. The mucosa contains isolated lymph follicles, the so-called glandulæ lenticulares (Fig. 203).

The spaces between the glands themselves and between the glands and the muscularis mucosæ are filled up by a delicate connective tissue somewhat condensed immediately around the tubes. Leucocytes are plentiful in the meshes of this network. One particular variety of leucocyte, the so-called basophile cell, may under certain conditions be very conspicuous.

267. The submucosa is of very loose texture, and enables the mucosa to become easily folded in all directions.

268. The *muscular coat* is very thick, and consists of an outer longitudinal and an inner thicker circular stratum of non-striped muscular tissue. Numerous oblique bundles are found in the inner section of the circular stratum.

The gland tubes are ensheathed in a network of *capillary blood-vessels* derived from the arteries of the submucosa. This network forms on the surface a special dense horizontal layer, from which the venous branches are derived. The outer muscular coat and the muscularis mucosæ possess their own vascular supply.

269. The *lymphatics* form a network in the mucosa near the fundus of the glands. Into this plexus lead lympathics which run longitudinally between the glands; they anastomose with one another freely, and extend to near the inner surface (Lovèn). Another plexus is found in the submucosa.

Between the longitudinal and circular stratum of the outer muscular coat, and extending parallel to the surface, is a plexus of non-medullated nerve branches with a few ganglia in its nodes. This corresponds to the *plexus of Auerbach* of the intestine, and is destined for the outer muscular coat. A second plexus of non-medullated nerve branches with ganglia also extending parallel to the surface lies in the submucosa. This corresponds to the *plexus of Meissner* of the intestine, and is destined for the muscularis mucosæ and the mucosa.

According to Rabe, the gastric gland tubes in the horse are surrounded by a rich plexus of nerve fibres, terminating in peculiar spindle-shaped cells.

CHAPTER XXVII.

THE SMALL AND LARGE INTESTINE.

270. THE epithelium covering the inner or free surface of the mucous membrane of the small and large intestine is a single layer of columnar cells, their protoplasm more or less distinctly longitudinally fibrillated; their free surface appears covered with a vertically and finely *striated free border* (Fig. 204). Many cells are goblet cells. Underneath the epithelium is a basement membrane, the sub-epithelial endothelium of Debove.

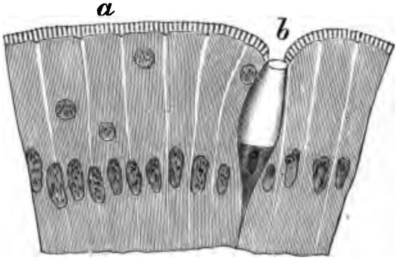


Fig. 204.—Epithelium covering the Surface of a Villus of Small Intestine. (*Atlas.*)
a, Striated free border; *b*, goblet cell.

As in the stomach, so also in the small and large intestine, the *mucosa* is connected with the outer muscular coat by a loose-textured fibrous *submucosa*, in which lie the large vascular trunks, and in many places larger or smaller groups of fat cells and lymph corpuscles. Between the mucosa and submucosa, but belonging to the former, is a layer of non-striped muscular tissue, the *muscularis mucosæ.* This is in many places composed of inner circular and outer longitudinal bundles, but there are a good many places, especially in the small intestine, where only a layer of longitudinal bundles can be made out.

The tissue of the mucosa is similar in structure to adenoid tissue (Fig. 205), consisting of a reticular matrix with flattened large nucleated endotheloid cells and numerous lymph corpuscles. These are either small lymph corpuscles like leucocytes, or they are somewhat larger and filled with coarse granules —plasma cells. The mucosa of the small and large intestine contains simple gland tubes, the *crypts or follicles of Lieberkühn* (Fig. 206); they are placed vertically and closely side by side, extending from the free surface, where they open, to the muscularis mucosæ. These glands possess a large lumen, and are lined with a single layer of columnar epithelial cells, many of them goblet cells.

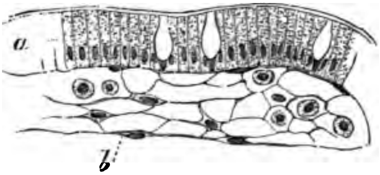


Fig. 205.—From a Longitudinal Section through a Villus of the Small Intestine.

a, Epithelium of the surface; *b*, non-striped muscular fibres. Immediately underneath the epithelium is a basement membrane with oblong nuclei; the tissue of the villus is made up of a reticulum of cells; in its meshes are lymph corpuscles.

271. In the small intestine the mucosa projects beyond the surface as numerous longer or shorter, cylindrical, conical, or leaf-shaped *villi* (Fig. 206). These are, of course, covered with the columnar

epithelium of the general surface, and their tissue is the same as that of the mucosa—*i.e.* adenoid tissue (Fig. 207)—with the addition of: (*a*) One or two central wide chyle (lymph) vessels (Fig. 209), their wall being a single layer of endothelial plates. (*b*) Along these chyle vessels are longitudinal bundles of non-striped muscular tissue, extending from the base to the apex of the villus, terminating in connection with the cells of the basement membrane—*i.e.* the sub-epithelial endothelium. (*c*) A network of capillary blood-vessels extending over the whole of the villus close to the epithelium of the surface (Fig. 208). This capillary network derives its blood from an artery in about the middle or upper part of the villus. Two venous vessels carry away the blood from the villus.

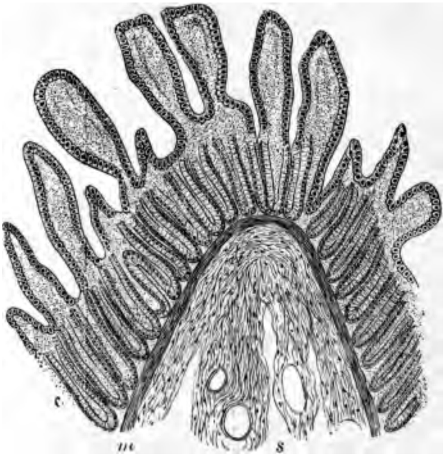


Fig. 206.—From a Vertical Section through a Fold of the Mucous Membrane of the Jejunum of Dog. (*Atlas.*)

c, Mucosa, containing the crypts of Lieberkühn, and projecting as the villi; *m*, muscularis mucosæ; *s*, submucosa.

The Lieberkühn's crypts open between the bases of the villi.

About the base of the villi of the small intestine, and about the base of the plicæ villosæ of the stomach (p. 311), there exist amongst the epithelium of the surface peculiar goblet-shaped groups of epithelial cells, which, as Watney has shown, are due to local multiplication of the epithelial cells.

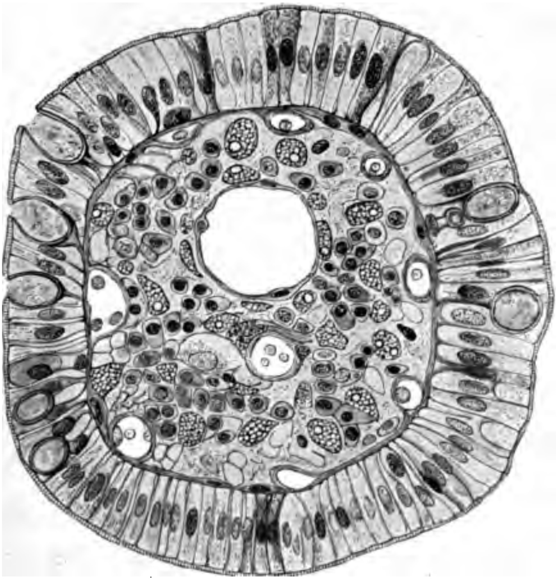


Fig. 207.—Transverse Section through Villus of Small Intestine of Dog. (*Heidenhain.*)

Showing the columnar epithelium lining the free surface, the adenoid tissue forming the groundwork; amongst the lymph cells of this adenoid tissue there are numerous large cells filled with fat-droplets; the central lacteal as also the capillary blood-vessels are shown cut across.

272. Lymph follicles occur singly in the submucosa,

and extend with their inner part or summit through the muscularis mucosæ into the mucosa to near the internal free surface of the latter (Fig. 209). These are the *solitary lymph follicles* of the small and large intestine; in the latter they are larger than in the former.

Agminated glands, or *Peyer's glands*, are larger or smaller groups of lymph follicles, more or less fused with one another, and situated with their main part in the submucosa, but extending with their summit to the epithelium of the free surface of the mucosa (Fig. 210). In the lower part of the ileum these Peyer's glands are very numerous. The epithelium covering the summits of these lymph follicles is invaded by, and more or less replaced by, the lymph corpuscles of the adenoid tissue of the follicles (Watney), similar to what is the case in the tonsils (*see* par. 124). Isolated lymph corpuscles are met with amongst the epithelium also of other parts of the intestine—*e.g.* the epithelium covering the villi (Fig. 204).

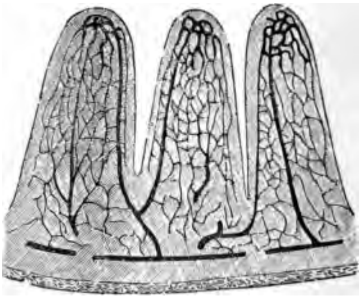


Fig. 208.—From a Vertical Section through the Small Intestine of Mouse; the blood-vessels are injected. (*Atlas.*)

The networks of the capillaries of the villi are well shown.

The outer muscular coat consists of an inner thicker circular and an outer thinner longitudinal stratum of non-striped muscular tissue.

In the large intestine, in the "ligamenta," only the longitudinal layer is present, and is much thickened.

273. The blood-vessels form separate systems of capillaries for the serous covering, for the outer muscular coat, for the muscularis mucosæ, and the richest of all for the mucosa with its Lieberkühn's crypts. The capillary network of the villi is connected with that of the rest of the mucosæ (Fig. 208).

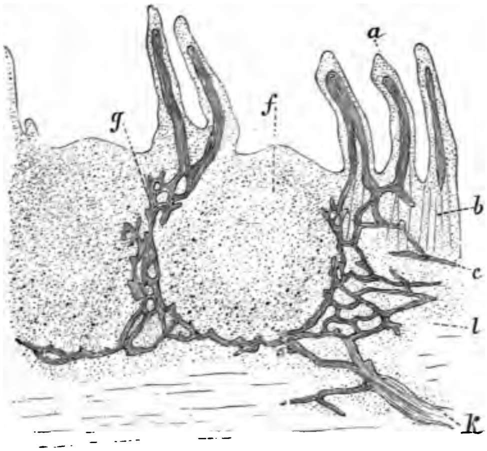


Fig. 209.—From a Section through a part of a Human Peyer's Patch, showing the distribution of the lymphatic vessels in the mucosa and submucosa. (*Frey.*)

a, Villi, with central chyle vessel; *b*, Lieberkühn's crypts: *c*, region of muscularis mucosæ: *f*, lymph follicle; *g*, network of lymphatics around the lymph follicle; *l*, lymphatic network of submucosa: *k*, efferent lymphatic trunk.

The chyle vessel, or vessels of the villi, commence with a blind extremity near the apex of the villi. At the base the chyle vessel becomes narrower and empties itself into a plexus of lymphatic vessels and sinuses belonging to the mucosa, and situated between the crypts of Lieberkühn (Fig. 209). This network is the same both in the small and large intestine, as is also that of the lymphatics of the submucosa with which the former communicates. The lymph follicles are generally surrounded with sinuous vessels of this plexus. The efferent trunks of the submucous plexus, while passing through the outer muscular coat in order to reach the mesentery, take up the efferent vessels of the plexus of the lymphatics of the muscular coat.

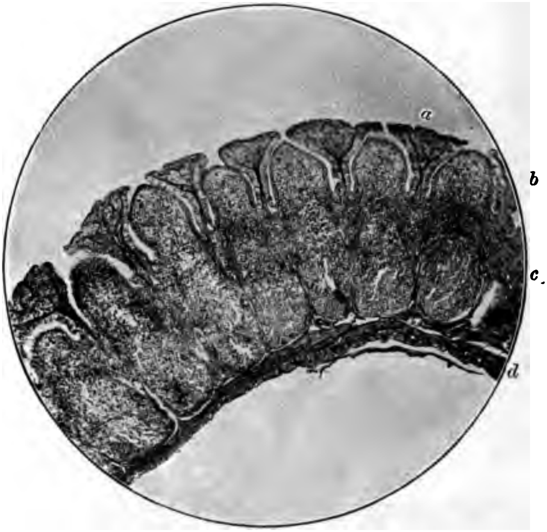


Fig. 210.—Cross-section through the Cæcum of Rabbit, showing a Peyer's Patch.

a, Mucous membrane; *b*, summits of the lymph follicles reaching the free surface; *c*, body of the lymph follicles in the submucous tissue; *d*, outer muscular coat. (*Photo. Low Magnification.*)

274. The **chyle,** composed of granules and fat globules of different but minute sizes, passes from the inner free surface of the mucous membrane of the small intestine through the epithelium into the spaces of the reticulum of the villi, and from here into the central chyle vessels. The plasma-corpuscles in the reticulum of the matrix may, and sometimes do, take up chyle globules; but it is a mistake to ascribe to these lymph cells an important *rôle* in

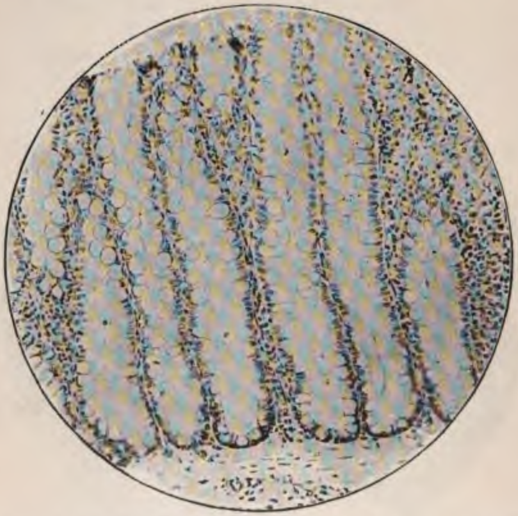


Fig. 211.—Vertical Section through the Mucous Membrane of the large Intestine. (*Microphotograph.*)

Some six glands are shown occupying almost the full height of the photograph. The lumen of the gland is large, the glands being hardened in the distended condition. The epithelium lining is seen to include a very large number of roundish, clear, and but slightly staining cells, these being goblet cells. The nucleated cells of the sub-epithelial reticular tissue are seen between the glands.

passing chyle globules from the epithelium into the central chyle vessel (Fig. 214).

Owing to the peripheral disposition of the capillaries in the villi, and owing to the greater filling with blood of the capillaries during digestion, the villi are thrown into a state of turgescence during this period, in consequence of which the central chyle vessels are kept distended. Absorption is thus greatly supported. The contraction of the muscular tissue of the villi and of the muscular coat of the intestine greatly facilitates the absorption and discharge of the chyle.

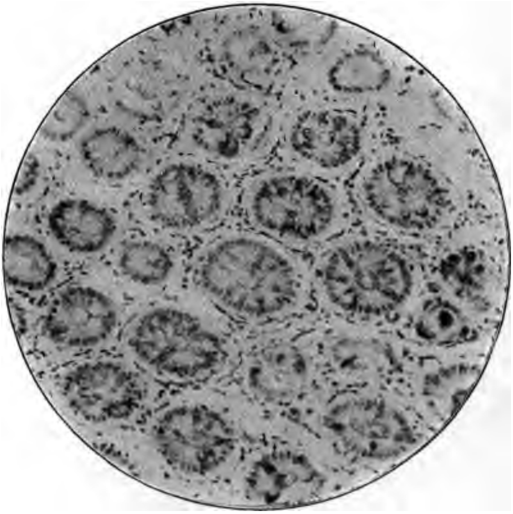


Fig. 212.—From a Horizontal Section through the Mucous Membrane of Large Intestine of Pig, showing the gland tubes of Lieberkühn in cross-section, their lining columnar epithelium with numerous goblet cells amongst them. Between the gland is the tissue of the mucosa. (*Photo. Moderately magnified.*)

275. The non-medullated nerves form a rich plexus, called the *plexus myentericus of Auerbach* (Fig. 215), with groups of ganglion cells in the nodes; this plexus lies between the longitudinal and circular muscular coat. Another plexus connected with the former lies in the submucous tissue; this is the *plexus of Meissner*, with ganglia. (Fig. 172.) In both plexuses the branches are of a very variable thickness; they are groups of simple axis cylinders, held together by a delicate endothelial sheath.

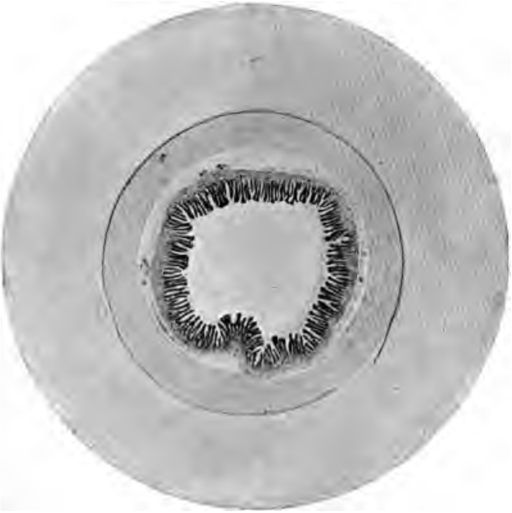


Fig. 213.—Transverse Section through the Human Appendix Vermiformis; showing the mucous membrane with the densely arranged glands of Lieberkühn, the submucous layer with the cross-cut large vessels, and the outer muscular coat covered by the peritoneal layer. (*Photo. Low power.*)

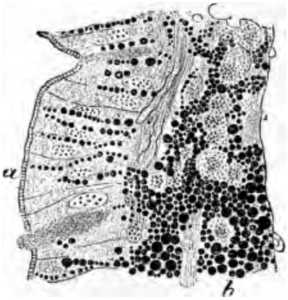


Fig. 214.—Part of a Villus filled with Chyle, from the intestine of a puppy four days old. (*Heidenhain.*)

a, Epithelium of surface of villus; *b*, tissue filled with chyle globules.

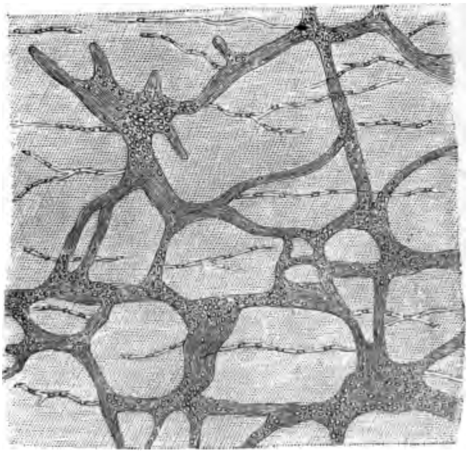


Fig. 215.—Plexus Myentericus of Auerbach of the small intestine of a newly-born child. (*Atlas.*)

The minute circles and ovals indicate ganglion cells.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

THE GLANDS OF BRUNNER AND THE PANCREAS.

276. At the passage of the pyloric end of the stomach into the duodenum (Figs. 203, 216), and in the

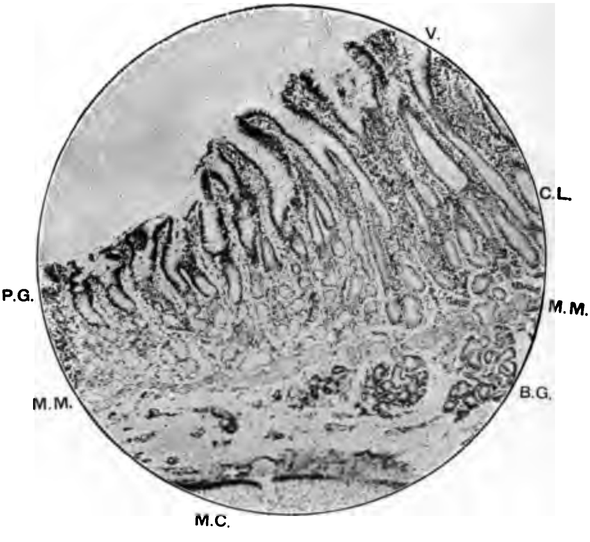


Fig. 216.—Section through the Gastro-duodenal Junction. (*Microphotograph.*)

A band is seen running across from M.M. to M.M., the muscularis mucosæ. In the submucous coat beneath on the right side are seen Brunner's glands, B.G. In the mucous coat pyloric glands are seen on left side, P.G.; villi, V., and crypts of Lieberkühn, C.L., on right side. A small piece of muscular coat is seen at M.C.

first part of the latter, is a continuous layer of gland tissue in the submucosa, composed of convoluted, more or less branched tubes grouped into lobules, and permeated by bundles of non-striped muscular tissue, outrunners of the muscularis mucosæ. These are the *glands of Brunner.* Numerous thin ducts lined with a single layer of columnar epithelial cells pass through the mucosa and open with the crypts of Lieberkühn between the bases of the villi. The gland tubes of Brunner's glands are *identical in structure with the pyloric glands, with which they form a direct anatomical continuity.*

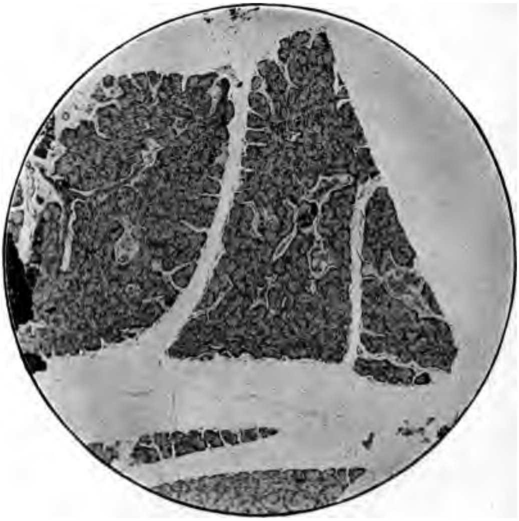


Fig. 217.—Section through Pancreas of Cat. (*Microphotograph.*)

Three lobules are cut across. In the middle of the small lobule on the right a lighter patch is seen; this is an interlobular clump. Similar clumps are seen on the other lobules.

277. The **pancreas** (Fig. 217) is in most respects identical in structure with a serous or true salivary gland. The distribution of the blood-vessels and lymphatics, and the arrangement of the connective tissue, so as to separate the gland tissue in lobes and lobules, with the corresponding inter- and intra-lobular ducts, are similar in both cases. The epithelium lining the latter ducts is only faintly striated, not by any means so distinctly as in the salivary tubes. The alveoli or acini are much more elongated than is the case in the serous salivary glands, and in section the tubular character of the alveoli is marked (Fig. 218). The intermediate part of the duct leading to the alveolus resembles the ductule of the salivary gland. The cells of the alveolus are somewhat pyramidal, and show in specimens hardened by ordinary reagents an outer more deeply staining zone varying in width,

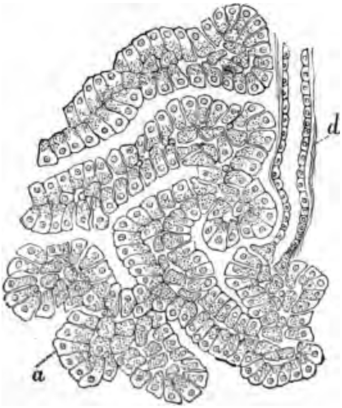


Fig. 218.—From a Section through Pancreas of Dog. (*Atlas.*)

a, Alveoli (tubes) of the gland; the lining cells show an outer homogeneous and an inner granular-looking portion ; *d*, minute duct.

and an inner less deeply staining area (Fig. 218). This lighter zone represents the part of the cell in which the secretory granules are collected (Fig. 219). The outer more deeply staining zone may sometimes show a radial striation. In some animals the cells lining the ductule appear to be continued as an internal lining into the alveolus. These constitute the so-called centro-acinous cells of Langerhans. There are also to be seen in the pancreas of most animals masses of cells possessing no alveolar arrangement, staining less deeply, but having large oval

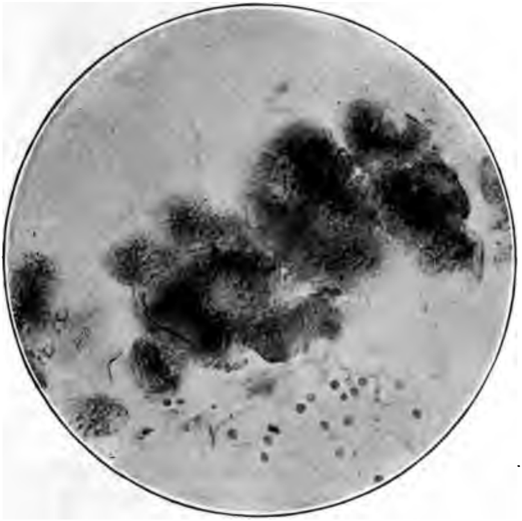


Fig. 219.—Section through Pancreas. (*Microphotograph of specimen hardened in osmic acid.*)

Several alveoli are seen, the darker masses in the centre of each being accumulations of secretory granules.

nuclei, which masses lie here and there between the alveoli. These groups of cells are very well

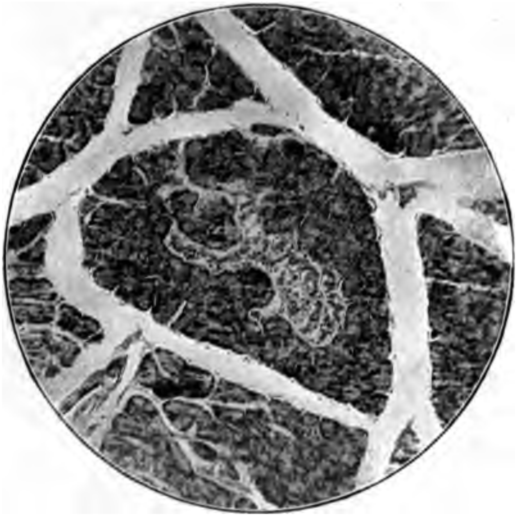


Fig. 220.—Section through the Pancreas of Cat. (*Microphotograph.*)
In the central lobule is seen a large, slightly-stained mass, which is an intertubular clump.

supplied with blood-vessels, and are spoken of as *intertubular clumps*, or *interalveolar cell islets* (see Fig. 220).

CHAPTER XXIX.

THE LIVER.

278. **The** outer surface of the liver is covered with a delicate *serous membrane*, the peritoneum, which, like that of other abdominal organs, has on its free surface a layer of endothelium. It consists chiefly of fibrous connective tissue.

At the hilum or porta hepatis this connective tissue is continued into the interior, where it joins the connective tissue of the *Glisson's capsule*, or the *interlobular connective tissue* (connective tissue of the portal canals). This tissue is fibrous, and more or less lamellated; by it the substance of the liver is subdivided into numerous, more or less polyhedral, solid *lobules* or *acini* (Fig. 221), each about $\frac{1}{20}$ of than inch in diameter. According to

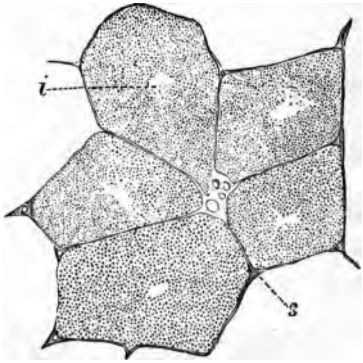


Fig. 221.—From a Section through the Liver of Pig. Five lobules are shown. They are well separated from one another by the interlobular tissue. (*Atlas.*)

s, Interlobular connective tissue, containing the interlobular blood-vessels, *i.e.*, the branches of the hepatic artery and portal vein, and the interlobular bile ducts; *i*, intralobular or central vein.

whether the interlobular tissue forms complete boundaries or not, the acini appear well defined from one another (pig, ice-bear), or more or less fused (man and carnivorous animals and rodents).

Within each acinus there is only very scanty connective tissue, in the shape of extremely delicate bundles and flattened connective-tissue cells. Occasionally, especially in the young liver, lymph cells are to be met with in the acini and in the tissue between them.

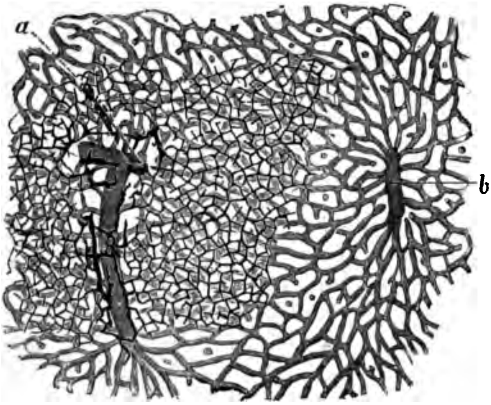


Fig. 222.—From a Vertical Section through the Liver of Rabbit; the blood-vessels and bile-vessels injected. (*Atlas.*)

a, Interlobular veins surrounded by interlobular bile ducts; these latter take up the network of fine intralobular bile capillaries; the meshes of this network correspond to the liver cells; b, intralobular or central vein.

279. The vena portæ having entered the hilum gives off rapidly numerous branches, which follow the interlobular tissue in which they are situated, and they form rich *plexuses around each acinus;* these are the *interlobular veins* (Fig. 222). Numerous

capillary blood-vessels are derived from these veins. These capillaries pass in a radiating direction to the centre of the acinus, at the same time anastomosing with one another by numerous transverse branches. In the centre of the acinus the capillaries become confluent into one large vein, the *central* or *intralobular* vein. The intralobular veins of several neighbouring acini join so as to form the *sublobular veins*, and these lead into the efferent veins of the liver, or the *hepatic veins*, which finally pass into the vena cava inferior.

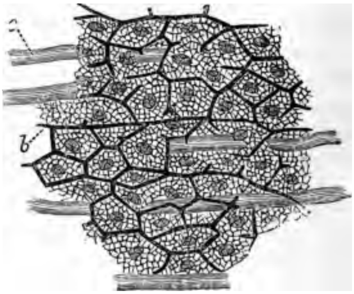


Fig. 223.—From a Lobule of the Liver of Rabbit, in which blood- and bile-vessels had been injected, more highly magnified than in Fig. 222. (*Atlas.*)

b, Bile capillaries between the liver cells, which are well shown as nucleated polygonal cells, each with a distinct reticulum; *c*, capillary blood-vessels.

280. The substance of each acinus—*i.e.* the tissue between the capillary blood-vessels—is composed of uniform polygonal protoplasmic epithelial cells, of about $\frac{1}{1000}$th of an inch in diameter; these are the *liver cells.* Owing to the peculiar, more or less radiating, arrangement of the capillaries, the liver cells appear to form columns or cylinders, also more or less radiating from the periphery towards the centre of the acinus. The cells contain particles of glycogen in various amounts. According to Brunton and Delépine, the amount gradually increases in the rabbit's liver after a meal, and reaches its maximum between the third and eighth hour. They also contain pigment granules, which, being derived from the disintegration of hæmoglobin in the spleen, include

iron. Each liver cell shows a more or less fibrillated protoplasm (Kupfer), and in the centre a spherical nucleus with one or more nucleoli.

The liver cells are joined by an albuminous cement substance, in which are left fine channels ; these are the *bile capillaries* (Figs. 223 and 224). In a successfully injected preparation the liver cells appear separated everywhere from one another by a bile capillary, and *these form for the whole acinus a continuous intercommunicating network* of minute channels. Where the liver cells are in contact with a capillary blood-vessel, there are no bile capillaries.

281. At the margin of the acinus the bile capillaries are connected with the lumen of minute tubes ; these possess a membrana propria and a lumen lined with a single layer of transparent polyhedral epithelial cells. These are the *small interlobular bile ducts* (Fig. 222). Their epithelial cells are in reality continuous with the liver cells. These ducts join and form *larger interlobular bile ducts,* lined with more or less columnar epithelium. The first part of the bile duct lined with polyhedral cells corresponds to the intermediary part of the ducts of the salivary glands. The interlobular bile ducts form networks in the interlobular tissue. Towards the hilum they become of great diameter, and their wall is made up of fibrous tissue, and in it are bundles of non-striped muscular cells. Small mucus-secreting glands are in their wall, and open into their lumen.

The wall of the hepatic duct, and of the gall bladder, are merely exaggerations of a large bile duct.

282. The hepatic artery follows in its ramification the interlobular veins. The arterial branches form plexuses in the interlobular tissue, and they supply the capillary blood-vessels of the interlobular connective tissue, and especially of the bile ducts. The capillary blood-vessels of the bile ducts join so as to form

small veins, which finally empty themselves into the hepatic veins. The anastomoses between the capillary blood-vessels, derived from the arterial branches, and the capillary blood-vessels of the acini,

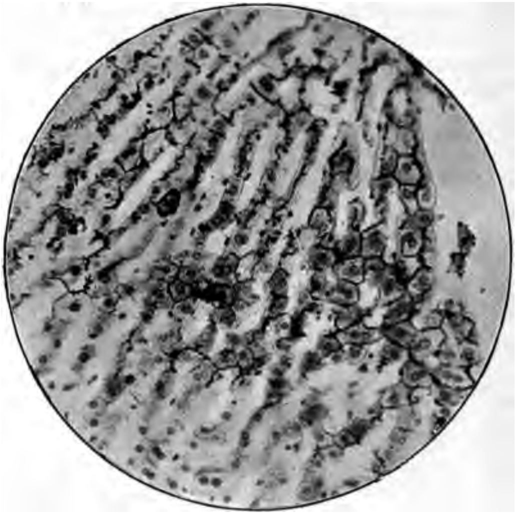


Fig. 224.—From a Section through the Liver of Rabbit, of which the bile ducts had been injected; showing the distribution of the bile capillaries and their branchlets between the liver cells. (*Photograph. Moderately magnified.*)

are insignificant (Cohnheim and Litten). The serous covering of the liver contains special arterial branches —rami capsulares. Networks of lymphatics—*deep lymphatics*—are present in the interlobular connective tissue, forming plexuses around the interlobular blood-vessels and bile ducts, and occasionally forming a perivascular lymphatic around a branch of the hepatic vein. Within the acinus, the lymphatics are represented only by spaces and clefts existing between the liver cells and capillary blood-vessels; these are the *intralobular* lymphatics (Macgillivray, Frey, and others). They anastomose at the margin of the acinus with the interlobular lymphatics.

In the capsule of the liver is a special network of lymphatics called the *superficial lymphatics.* Numerous branches pass between this network and the interlobular lymphatics.

CHAPTER XXX.

THE ORGANS OF RESPIRATION.

283. I. **The larynx.**—The supporting framework of the larynx is formed by cartilage. In the epiglottis the cartilage is elastic and reticulated—*i.e.* the cartilage plate is perforated by numerous smaller and larger holes. The cartilages of Santorini and Wrisbergii, the former attached to the top of the arytenoid cartilage, the latter enclosed in the aryteno-epiglottic fold, are also elastic. The thyroid, cricoid, and arytenoid cartilages are hyaline. All these are covered with the usual perichondrium.

A small nodule of elastic cartilage is enclosed in the front part of the true vocal cord. This is the cartilage of Luschka.

The mucous membrane lining the cavity of the larynx (Fig. 225) has the following structure :—

The internal or free surface is covered with ciliated stratified columnar epithelium ; the most superficial cells are conical cells with cilia on their free surface ; then between the extremities of these cells are wedged in spindle-shaped and inverted conical cells. Numerous goblet cells are found amongst the superficial cells. The two surfaces of the epiglottis and the true vocal cords are covered with *stratified pavement epithelium.*

Underneath the epithelium is a basement membrane separating the former from the mucous membrane proper.

284. The mucous membrane is delicate connective

tissue with numerous lymph corpuscles. In the posterior surface of the epiglottis, in the false vocal cords, and especially in the ventricle of the larynx, this

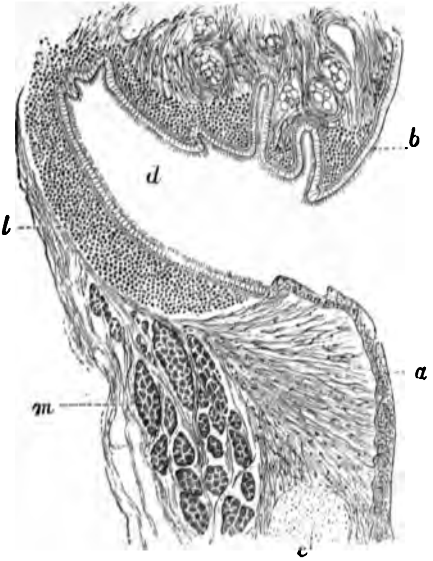


Fig. 225.—From a Longitudinal Section through the Ventricle of the Larynx of a Child. (*Atlas.*)

a, True vocal cord; *b*, false vocal cord; *c*, nodule of elastic cartilage (cartilage of Luschka); *d*, ventricle; *l*, lymphatic tissue; *m*, bundles of the thyro-arytenoid muscle in transverse section.

infiltration amounts to diffuse adenoid tissue, and even to the localisation of this as lymph follicles. In both surfaces of the epiglottis, and in the true vocal cords, the mucosa extends into the stratified pavement epithelium in the shape of minute papillæ.

In the lower part of the larynx the mucous membrane contains bundles of elastic fibres connected into networks, and running in a longitudinal direction. These elastic fibres are found chiefly in the superficial parts of the mucous membrane. In the true vocal cords the mucosa is entirely made up of elastic fibres extending in the direction of the vocal cords.

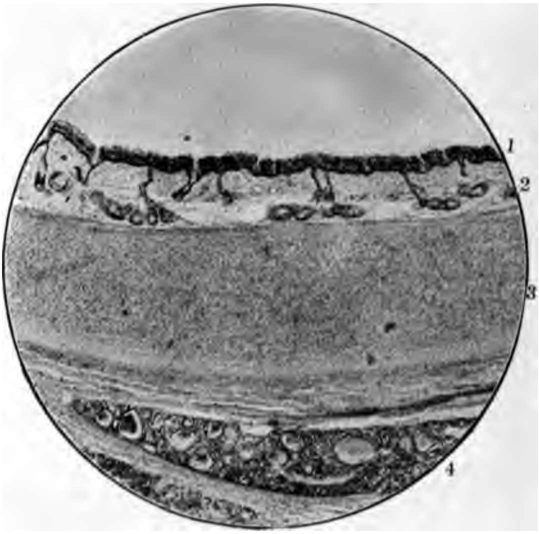


Fig. 226.—Section through Trachea of Fœtus. × 40. (*Photograph by Mr A. Pringle.*)

1, Ciliated columnar epithelium of internal surface; 2, mucous membrane with its glands; 3, cartilage; 4, outside this the thyroid gland.

285. The deeper part of the mucous membrane is of loose texture, and corresponds to the submucosa; in it are embedded numerous *mucous glands*, the ducts of which pass through the mucosa and open on the free surface. The alveoli of the glands are of the nature of mucous alveoli—*i.e.* a considerable lumen lined with a layer of mucous goblet cells. There are,

tissue with numerous lymph corpuscles. In the posterior surface of the epiglottis, in the false vocal cords, and especially in the ventricle of the larynx, this

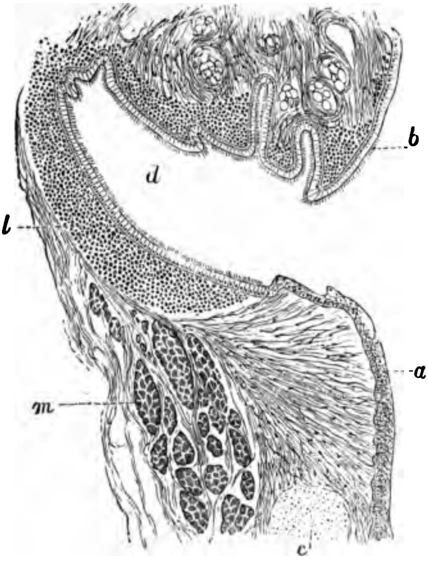


Fig. 225.—From a Longitudinal Section through the Ventricle of the Larynx of a Child. (*Atlas.*)

***a*, True vocal cord; *b*, false vocal cord; *c*, nodule of elastic cartilage (cartilage of Luschka); *d*, ventricle; *l*, lymphatic tissue; *m*, bundles of the thyro-arytenoid muscle in transverse section.**

infiltration amounts to diffuse adenoid tissue, and even to the localisation of this as lymph follicles. In both surfaces of the epiglottis, and in the true vocal cords, the mucosa extends into the stratified pavement epithelium in the shape of minute papillæ.

In the lower part of the larynx the mucous membrane contains bundles of elastic fibres connected into networks, and running in a longitudinal direction. These elastic fibres are found chiefly in the superficial parts of the mucous membrane. In the true vocal cords the mucosa is entirely made up of elastic fibres extending in the direction of the vocal cords.

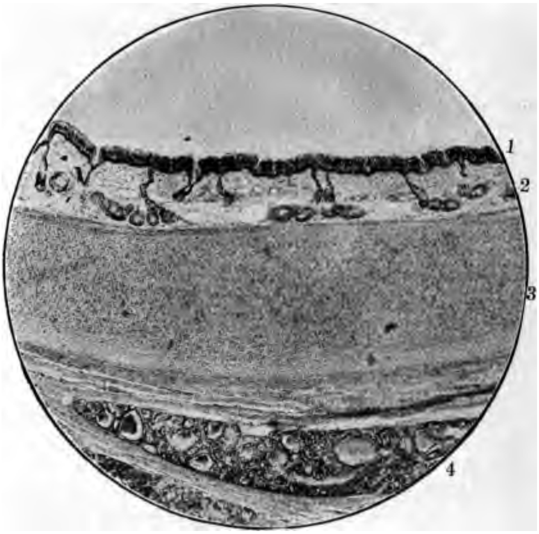


Fig. 226.—Section through Trachea of Fœtus. × 40. (*Photograph by Mr A. Pringle.*)

1, Ciliated columnar epithelium of internal surface; 2, mucous membrane with its glands; 3, cartilage; 4, outside this the thyroid gland.

285. The deeper part of the mucous membrane is of loose texture, and corresponds to the submucosa; in it are embedded numerous *mucous glands*, the ducts of which pass through the mucosa and open on the free surface. The alveoli of the glands are of the nature of mucous alveoli—*i.e.* a considerable lumen lined with a layer of mucous goblet cells. There are,

however, also alveoli lined with columnar albuminous cells, and such as have both side by side, as is the case in the sublingual gland of the dog. The ciliated epithelium of the surface in some places extends also for a short distance into the ducts. The true vocal cords have no mucous glands.

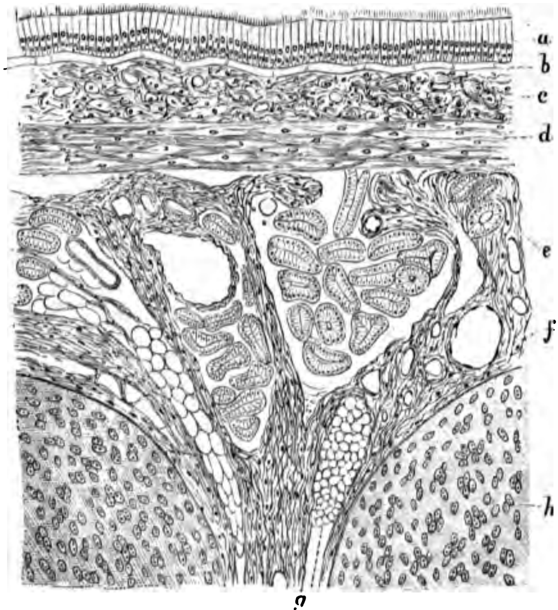


Fig. 227.—From a Longitudinal Section through the Trachea of a Child. (*Atlas.*)

a, Stratified columnar ciliated epithelium of the internal free surface: *b*, basement membrane; *c*, mucosa; *d*, networks of longitudinal elastic fibres; the oval nuclei between them indicate connective-tissue corpuscles; *e*, submucous tissue containing mucous glands; *f*, large blood-vessels; *g*, fat cells; *h*, hyaline cartilage of the tracheal rings.

The blood-vessels terminate with the capillary network in the superficial—*i.e.* sub-epithelial—layer of the mucosa; where there are papillæ—*i.e.* in the epiglottis and true vocal cords—these receive a loop of capillary blood-vessels. The lymphatics form superficial networks of fine vessels and deep submucous networks of large vessels. These are of enormous width and size in the membrane of the anterior surface of the epiglottis. The finer nerves form superficial plexuses of non-medullated fibres, some of which terminate, according to Luschka and Boldyrew, as end bulbs. Taste buds have been found in the epithelium of the posterior surface of the epiglottis (Verson, Schofield, Davis), and also in that of the deeper parts of the larynx (Davis).

286. II. **The trachea.**—The trachea is very similar in structure to the lower part of the larynx, from which it differs merely in possessing the rings of hyaline cartilage, and in containing, in the posterior or membranous portion, *transverse bundles of non-striped muscular tissue,* extending horizontally between the ends of the rings. Its component parts are (Figs. 226, 227, 228):—

(*a*) a stratified columnar ciliated epithelium;

(*b*) a basement membrane;

(*c*) a mucosa, with the terminal networks of capillary blood-vessels, and infiltrated with adenoid tissue;

(*d*) a layer of longitudinal elastic fibres connected into networks;

(*e*) a loosely textured submucous tissue, containing the large vessels and nerves and small mucous glands. Occasionally the gland or its duct is embedded in a lymph follicle.

287. III. **The bronchi and the lung.**—The bronchi ramify within the lung dendritically into finer and finer tubes. The finest branches are the terminal bronchi. In the bronchi we find, instead of rings of hyaline cartilage, as in the trachea, larger

and smaller oblong or irregularly-shaped plates of hyaline cartilage distributed more or less uniformly in the circumference of the wall. Towards the small microscopic bronchi these cartilage plates gradually diminish in size and number. The epithelium, the basement membrane, the sub-epithelial mucosa, and the layer of longitudinal elastic fibres, remain the same as in the trachea. The submucous tissue contains small mucous glands.

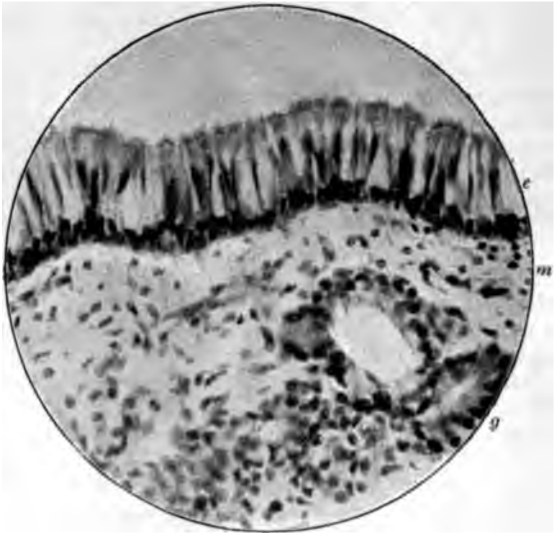


Fig. 228.—From a Section through the Tracheal Mucous Membrane of a Newly-born Child. (*Photo. Highly magnified.*)

e, Ciliated columnar epithelium; amongst the ciliated cells are numerous goblet cells; *m*, mucosa; *g*, acini of mucous glands.

288. Between the sub-epithelial mucosa and the submucosa is a *continuous layer of circular non-striped muscular tissue.* In the smaller microscopic

bronchi this layer is one of the most conspicuous. By the contraction of the circular muscular coat the mucosa is placed in longitudinal folds.

The state of contraction and distension of the small bronchi bears an important relation to the aspect of the epithelium, which appears as a single layer of columnar cells in the distended bronchus, and as stratified when the bronchus is contracted.

The distribution of the blood-vessels is the same as in the trachea. Lymph follicles are met with in the submucous tissue of the bronchial wall in animals and man.

The lymphatic networks of the bronchial mucous membrane are very conspicuous. Those of the submucous tissue—*i.e. the peribronchial lymphatics*—anastomose with those surrounding the pulmonary blood-vessels.

Pigment and small particles can be easily absorbed through the cement substance of the epithelium into the radicles of the superficial lymphatics, whence they pass readily into the (larger) peribronchial lymphatics.

In connection with the nerve branches in the bronchial wall are minute ganglia.

289. Each terminal bronchiole branches into several wider tubes called the *alveolar ducts*, or *infundibula*; each of these branches again into several similar ducts. All ducts, or infundibula, are closely beset in their whole extent with spherical, or, being pressed against one another, with polygonal vesicles—the *air cells* or *alveoli*—opening by a wide aperture into the alveolar duct or infundibulum, but not communicating with each other. The infundibula are much wider than the terminal bronchioles, and also wider than the alveoli.

290. All infundibula with their air cells, belonging to one terminal bronchiole, represent a conical structure, the apex of which is formed by the terminal

bronchus. Such a conical mass is a *lobule* of the lung, and the whole tissue of the lung is made up of such lobules closely aggregated, and arranged as *lobes*. The lobules are separated from one another by delicate fibrous connective tissue; this forms a continuity with the connective tissue accompanying the bronchial tubes and large vascular trunks, and with these is traceable to the hilum. On the other hand, the interlobular connective tissue of the superficial parts of the lung is continuous with the fibrous tissue of the

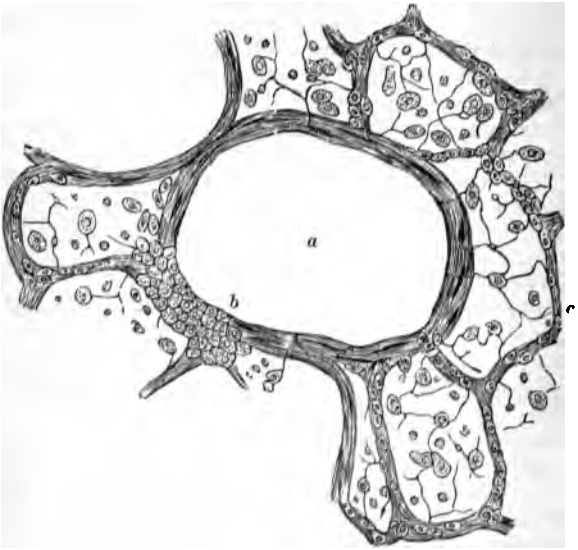


Fig. 229.--From a Section through the Lung of Cat, stained with nitrate of silver. (*Atlas.*)

a, Infundibulum or alveolar duct in cross-section; *b*, groups of polyhedral cells lining one part of the infundibulum, the rest being lined with flattened transparent epithelial scales; *c*, alveoli lined with flattened epithelial scales; here and there between them is seen a polyhedral granular epithelial cell.

surface called the pleura pulmonalis. This membrane contains numerous elastic fibres, and on the free surface is covered with a layer of endothelium.

In some instances (guinea-pig) the pleura pulmonalis contains bundles of non-striped muscular tissue.

The lobes of the lung are separated from one another by large septa of connective tissue—the ligamenta pulmonis.

291. The **terminal bronchi** contain no cartilage or mucous glands in their wall. This is made up of three coats: (*a*) a delicate epithelium—*a single layer of small polyhedral granular-looking cells;* (*b*) a circular coat of non-striped muscular tissue; and (*c*) a fine adventitia of elastic fibres, arranged chiefly as longitudinal networks.

292. Tracing the elements constituting the wall of a terminal bronchiole into the infundibula and air cells (Fig. 229) we find the following changes: (*a*) the polyhedral granular-looking epithelial cells forming a continuous lining in the terminal bronchiole are traceable into the infundibulum only as larger or smaller groups; between these groups of small polyhedral granular-looking cells large, flat, transparent, homogeneous, nucleated, epithelial scales make their appearance. The farther away from the terminal bronchiole, the fewer are the groups of polyhedral granular-looking cells. In all infundibula, however, the transparent scales form the chief lining. This becomes still more marked in the air cells. There the small polyhedral granular-looking cells are traceable only singly, or in groups of two or three (Elens), the rest of the cavity of the air cells being lined with the large transparent scales.

In the fœtal state all cells lining the infundibula and air cells are of the small polyhedral granular-looking variety (Küttner). With the expansion of the lungs during the first inspiration many of these cells change into the large transparent scales, in order to make up for the increment of surface. A lung expanded ad maximum shows much fewer or none of the small polyhedral cells; while a lung that is collapsed shows them in groups in the infundibula, and isolated or in twos or threes in the alveoli.

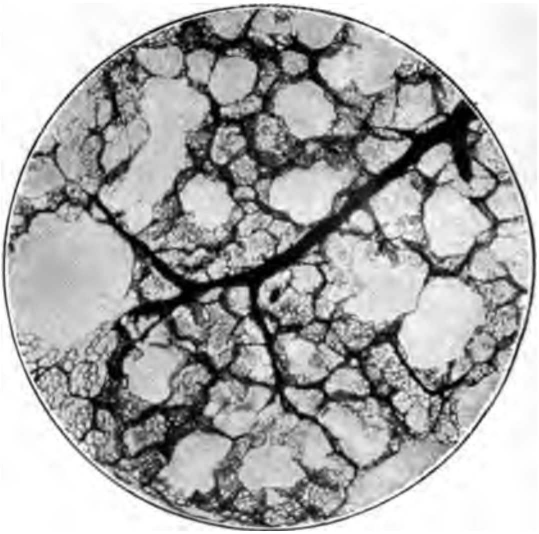


FIG. 230.—Network of Capillary Blood-vessels surrounding the Alveoli of the Human Lung. (*Photograph by Mr. A. Pringle.*)

293. (*b*) The circular coat of non-striped muscular tissue of the terminal bronchiole passes as a continuous circular coat—but slightly thinner—on to the alveolar ducts or infundibula, in their whole extent, but not beyond them, *i.e.* not on to the air cells.

(*c*) The adventitia of elastic networks is continued on the infundibula, and thence on the air cells, where it forms an essential part of the wall of the alveoli, being its framework.

Amongst the network of elastic fibres forming the wall of the alveoli is a network of branched connective-tissue cells, contained as usual in similarly-shaped branched lacunæ, which are the radicles of the lymphatic vessels.

294. **The blood-vessels and lymphatics.**—The branches of the pulmonary artery and veins are contained within the connective tissue separating the lobes and lobules, whence they can be traced into their finer ramifications towards the infundibula and air cells. Each of these latter is surrounded by a sort of basket-shaped dense network of capillary blood-vessels (Figs. 230 and 231). The capillary networks of adjacent alveoli are continuous with one another, and stand in communication on the one hand with a branch of the pulmonary artery, and on the other with branches of the pulmonary vein. The branches of the bronchial artery belong to the bronchial walls, which are supplied by them with capillary networks.

The lacunæ and canaliculi in the wall of the alveoli, mentioned above, are the rootlets of lymphatic vessels, which accompany the pulmonary vessels, and form a network around them; these are the deep lymphatics, or the *perivascular lymphatics*. They are connected also with the networks of lymphatics surrounding the bronchi, *i.e.* the *peribronchial lymphatics.* The rootlets of the superficial air cells empty themselves into the *sub-pleural plexus of lymphatics*, a rich plexus of large lymphatics with valves. All these lymphatics lead by large trunks into the bronchial lymph glands.

295. Between the flattened transparent epithelial cells lining the alveoli are minute openings, *stomata* (Fig. 229), leading from the cavity of the air cells into the lymph lacunæ of the alveolar wall. These stomata

are more distinct during expansion, *i.e.* inspiration, than in the collapsed state. Inspiration, by its expanding the lungs, and consequently also the lymphatics, greatly favours absorption. Through these stomata, and also through the interstitial cement substance of the lining epithelium, formed particles—such as soot particles of a smoky atmosphere, pigment artificially inhaled, cellular elements, such as mucous or pus corpuscles, bacteria, etc.—find their way into the radicles of the lymphatics, thence into the perivascular and sub-pleural lymphatics and finally into the bronchial glands.

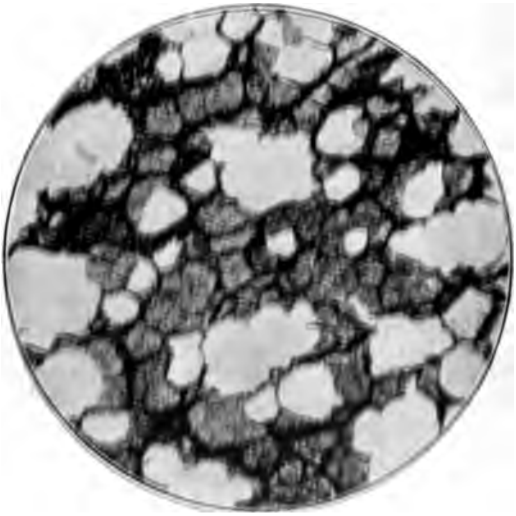


Fig. 301.—Injected Lung of Cat. (Photograph.)

The cellular elements just mentioned containing particles of soot, are spoken of as "dust cells."

CHAPTER XXXI.

THE SPLEEN.

296. **The capsule** enveloping the spleen is a serous membrane—the peritoneum. It is a connective-tissue membrane with networks of elastic fibres, and covered on its free surface with an endothelium.

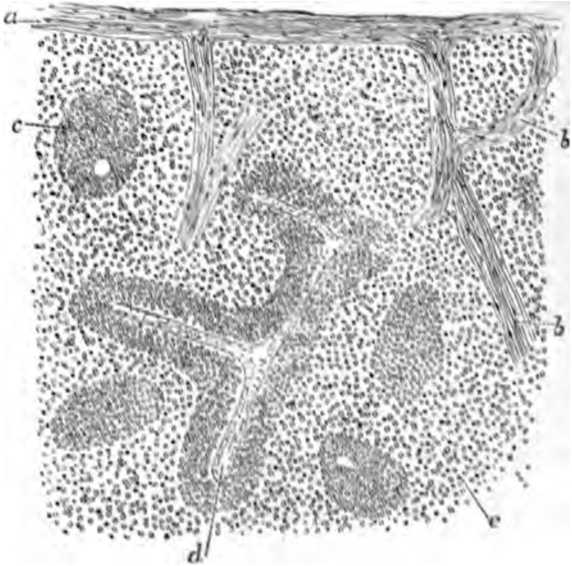


Fig. 232.—From a Vertical Section through the Spleen of Ape. (*Atlas.*)
a, Capsule; *b*, trabeculæ; *c*, Malpighian corpuscle; *d*, artery ensheathed in a Malpighian corpuscle; *e*, pulp tissue.

The deep part of the capsule contains *bundles of non-striped muscular tissue* forming plexuses. In man the bundles are relatively thin, but in some mammals —*e.g.* dog, pig, horse—they are continuous masses arranged sometimes as a deep longitudinal and a superficial circular layer (Fig. 232).

In connection with the capsule are the *trabeculæ* (Fig. 232). These are microscopical, thicker or thinner cylindrical bands branching and anastomosing, and thus making a framework in which the tissue of the spleen is contained. Towards the hilum the trabeculæ are larger, and they form there a continuity with the connective tissue of the hilum. They are the carriers of the large vascular branches. The trabeculæ in the human spleen consist chiefly of fibrous tissue with an admixture of longitudinal non-striped muscular tissue. This is more pronounced in the dog, horse, pig, guinea-pig, in which the trabeculæ are chiefly composed of non-striped muscular tissue. Following a small trabecula after it is given off from a larger one, we find it branching into still smaller ones, which ultimately lose themselves amongst the elements of that part of the spleen tissue called spleen pulp (Fig. 233).

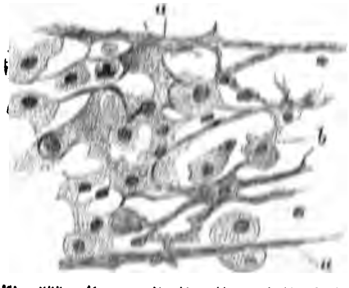


Fig. 233. From a Section through the Pulp of the Spleen of Pig. (*Atlas.*)

a, Last outrunners of the muscular trabeculæ; *b*, flattened cells forming the honeycombed matrix of the pulp; in the meshes of this matrix are contained lymphoid cells of various sizes.

The meshes of the network of the trabeculæ are filled up with the parenchyma. This consists of two kinds of tissues: (*a*) the Malpighian corpuscles; and (*b*) the pulp tissue.

297. The **Malpighian corpuscles** are masses of adenoid tissue connected with the branches of the splenic artery. Following the chief arterial trunks as they pass in the big trabeculæ towards the interior of the spleen, they are seen to give off numerous smaller branches to the spleen parenchyma; these are ensheathed in masses of *adenoid tissue*, which are either cylindrical or irregularly-shaped, and in some places form oval or spherical enlargements. These sheaths of adenoid tissue are traceable to the end of an arterial branch; and in the whole extent the adenoid tissue or Malpighian corpuscle is supplied by its artery with a network of capillary blood-vessels.

298. The rest of the spleen parenchyma is made up of the **pulp.** The matrix of this is a honeycombed, spongy network of fibres and septa, which are the processes and bodies of large, flattened, endotheloid cells, each with an oval nucleus. In some, especially young, animals, some of these cells are huge and multinucleated. The spaces of the honeycombed tissue are of different diameters, some not larger than a blood corpuscle, others large enough to hold several. All spaces form an intercommunicating system. The spaces contain nucleated lymph corpuscles, more or less connected with and derived from the cell plates of the matrix. But they do not fill the spaces, so that some room is left, large enough to allow blood corpuscles to pass.

The spaces of the honeycombed pulp matrix are in communication, on the one hand, with the ends of the capillary blood-vessels of the Malpighian corpuscles, and, on the other, they open into the venous radicles or *sinuses* (Fig. 234), which are oblong spaces lined with a layer of more or less polyhedral endothelial cells. These sinuses form networks, and lead into the large venous branches passing in the big trabeculæ to the hilum. The venous sinuses in man and ape possess a special adventitia formed of circular elastic fibrils.

Not all arterial branches are ensheathed in Malpighian corpuscles, some few fine arterial branches open directly into the veins of the pulp matrix, being invested in a peculiar reticular or concentrically arranged cellular tissue (not adenoid). These are the capillary sheaths of Schweigger-Seidel.

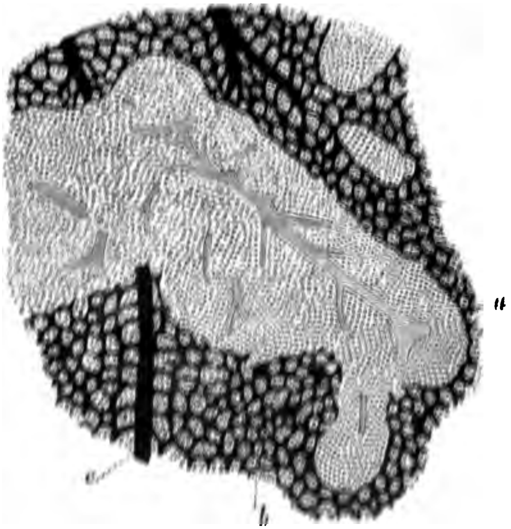


Fig. 204. From a Section through the Spleen of a Guinea pig; the blood-vessels had been injected. (Atlas.)

a, Artery of Malpighian corpuscle; b, pulp; between its cells are the minute blood channels opening into c, the radicles of the veins.

299. The blood passes then from the arterial branches through the capillaries of the Malpighian

corpuscles, whence it travels into the labyrinth of minute spaces in the honeycombed pulp matrix; thence it passes into the venous sinuses, and finally into the venous trunks. The current of blood on its passage through the pulp tissue becomes, therefore, greatly retarded. Under these conditions numerous red blood-corpuscles appear to be taken up by the cells of the pulp, some of which contain several in their interior. In these corpuscles the blood discs become gradually broken up, so that finally, only granules and small clumps of blood pigment are left in them. The presence of blood pigment in the corpuscles of the pulp is explained in this way; and it is therefore said that the pulp tissue is a destroyer of red blood-corpuscles.

The pulp tissue is most probably the birthplace of colourless blood-corpuscles; and according to Bizzozero and Salvioli it is also the birthplace of red blood-corpuscles.

The *lymphatics* form plexuses in the capsule (Tomsa, Kyber). These are continuous with the plexus of lymphatics of the trabeculæ; and these again with the plexus of lymphatics in the adventitia of the arterial trunks.

Non-medullated nerve fibres have been traced along the arterial branches.

CHAPTER XXXII.

THE KIDNEY, URETER AND BLADDER.

300. A. The framework.

The kidney possesses a thin investing capsule composed of fibrous tissue, more or less of a lamellar arrangement. Bundles of fibrous tissue pass with blood-vessels between the deeper part of the capsule and the parenchyma of the periphery. According to Eberth, a plexus of non-striped muscle cells is situated underneath the capsule.

The ureter entering the hilum enlarges into the pelvis of the kidney, and with its minor recesses or prolongations forms the calices. Both the pelvis and the calices are limited by a wall which is a direct continuation of the ureter. The internal free surface is lined with stratified transitional epithelium. Underneath the epithelium is a fibrous connective-tissue membrane (the mucosa), containing the networks of capillary blood-vessels and fine nerve fibres. Outside the mucosa and insensibly passing into it is the loose-textured submucosa, with groups of fat cells. There are present in the submucosa bundles of non-striped muscular tissue, continued from the ureter, in the shape of longitudinal and circular bundles.

In the pelvis of the kidney of the horse small glands (simple or branched tubes), lined with a single layer of columnar epithelial cells, have been observed by Paladino, Sertoli, and Egli. The last-named mentions also that in the pelvis of the human kidney there are gland-tubes similar in structure to sebaceous follicles.

301. The large vascular trunks enter, or pass from the tissues of the calices into the parenchyma of the kidney between the cortex and medulla, and they are accompanied by bundles of fibrous connective tissue and a few longitudinal bundles of non-striped muscular tissue, thereby separating the individual Malpighian pyramids.

The parenchyma itself contains very scanty fibrous connective tissue, chiefly around the Malpighian corpuscles and around the arterial vessels, especially in the young kidney. In the papillæ there is relatively a great amount of fibrous tissue. On the surface of the papillæ (facing the calices) there is a continuous layer of fibrous tissue, and this on its free surface is covered with stratified transitional epithelium.

The parenchyma of the kidney consists entirely of the urinary tubules and the intertubular blood-vessels, and there is an interstitial or intertubular connective-tissue framework in the shape of honeycombed hyaline membranes with flattened nucleated branched or spindle-shaped cells. The meshes of the honeycomb are the spaces for the urinary tubules and blood-vessels.

302. B. **The parenchyma.**—I. *The urinary tubules* (Fig. 235).—In a transverse or longitudinal section through the kidney we notice the *cortex*, the *boundary layer* of Ludwig and the *papillary portions*, the last terminating in the conical *papillæ* in the cavity of the calices.

The boundary layer and the papillary portion form the medulla. A papilla with the papillary portion and boundary layer, continuous with it, constitutes a *Malpighian pyramid.* The medulla of the human kidney contains about a dozen of such Malpighian pyramids.

303. The cortex contains vast numbers of

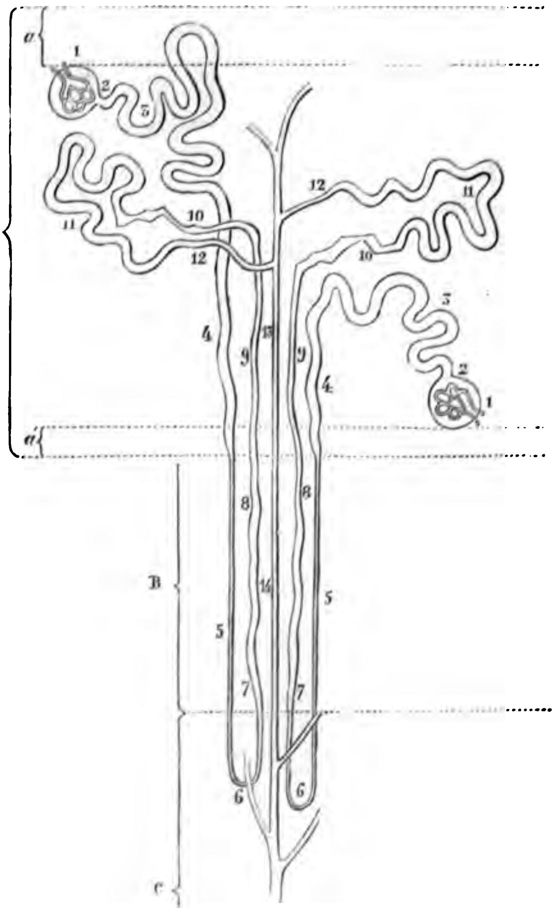


Fig. 235.—Diagram showing the course of the Uriniferous Tubules in the different parts of the cortex and medulla. (*Atlas.*)

(For description of this Fig. see foot of next page.)

convoluted tubules with their cæcal origin in the Malpighian corpuscles ; this is the *labyrinth* separated into numerous divisions of equal breadth by regularly-disposed straight striæ originating a short distance from the outer capsule, and radiating towards the boundary layer through which they pass. Each of these striæ is a bundle of straight tubules, and represents a *medullary ray.* The boundary layer shows a uniform vertical striation, in which opaque and transparent striæ alternate with one another. The opaque striæ are continuations of the medullary rays, the transparent striæ are bundles of blood-vessels.

The papillary portion is uniformly and vertically striated.

Tracing a medullary ray from the boundary layer into the cortex, it is seen that its breadth gradually diminishes, and it altogether ceases at a short distance from the outer capsule. A medullary ray is, consequently, of a conical shape, its apex being situated at the periphery of the cortex, its base in the boundary layer. Such a pyramid is called a *pyramid of Ferrein.*

304. All urinary tubules commence as convoluted tubules in the part of the cortex named the labyrinth, but not in the medullary rays, with a cæcal enlargement called a *Malpighian corpuscle*, and terminate—having previously joined with many other tubules into larger and larger ducts—at one of the many minute openings or mouths at the apex of a papilla. On their way the tubes several times alter their size and nature.

A, Cortex limited on its free surface by the capsule ; *a*, subcapsular layer not containing Malpighian corpuscles ; *a'* inner stratum of cortex without Malpighian corpuscles ; B, boundary layer : C, papillary part next the boundary layer ; 1, Bowman's capsule ; 2, neck of capsule ; 3, proximal convoluted tube ; 4, spiral part ; 5, descending limb of Henle's loop-tube ; 6, the loop itself ; 7, 8, and 9, the ascending limb of Henle's loop-tube ; 10, the irregular tubule ; 11, the distal convoluted tubule ; 12, the first part of the collecting tube ; 13 and 14, larger collecting tube : in the papilla itself, not represented here, the collecting tube joins others, and forms the duct.

From its start to its end there is a continuous fine *membrana propria* forming the boundary wall of the urinary tubule, and this membrana propria is lined with a *single layer of epithelial cells* differing in size, shape, and structure from place to place; in the centre of the tubule is a *lumen*, differing in size according to the size of the tubule.

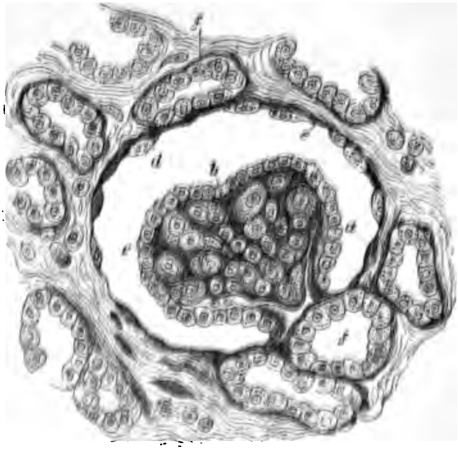


Fig. 236. From a Section through the Cortical Substance of the Kidney of a human Fœtus, showing a Malpighian corpuscle. (*Handbook.*)

a, Glomerulus; *b*, tissue of the glomerulus; *c*, epithelium covering the glomerulus; *d*, flattened epithelium lining Bowman's capsule; *e*, the capsule itself; *f*, uriniferous tubules in cross section.

305. (1) Each *Malpighian corpuscle* (Fig. 236) is composed of the capsule — the *capsule of Bowman* — and the *glomerulus*, or Malpighian tuft of capillary blood vessels.

The *capsule* of Bowman is a hyaline membrana propria, supported, as mentioned above, by a small amount of connective tissue. On its inner surface there is a continuous layer of nucleated epithelial cells, in the young state of polyhedral shape, in the adult state squamous.

The *glomerulus* is a network of convoluted capillary blood-vessels separated from one another by scanty connective tissue, chiefly in the shape of a few connective-tissue corpuscles. The capillaries are grouped together in two to five lobules. The whole surface of the glomerulus is lined with a delicate membrana propria, and a continuous layer of nucleated epithelial cells, polyhedral, or even columnar in the young, squamous in the adult state. The membrana propria and epithelium dip in, of course, between the lobules of the glomerulus, and represent in reality the visceral layer of the capsule of the Malpighian corpuscle, the capsule of Bowman being the parietal layer. The glomerulus is connected at one pole with an *afferent* and *efferent* arterial vessel, the former being the larger of the two.

Between Bowman's capsule and the glomerulus there is a space, the size of which differs according to the state of secretion, being chiefly dependent on the amount of fluid present.

The Malpighian corpuscles are distributed in the labyrinth of the cortex only, with the exception of a thin peripheral layer near the outer capsule, and a still thinner layer near the boundary layer. The Malpighian corpuscles near the boundary layer are the largest, those near the periphery the smallest; in the human kidney their mean diameter is about $\frac{1}{120}$ of an inch.

306. (2) On the side opposite to that where the afferent and efferent arterioles join the glomerulus, the capsule of Bowman passes through a narrow *neck* into the cylindrical urinary tubule in such a way that the membrana propria and epithelium of the capsule are continued as the membrana propria and

lining epithelium of the tubule respectively, and the space between the capsule of Bowman and

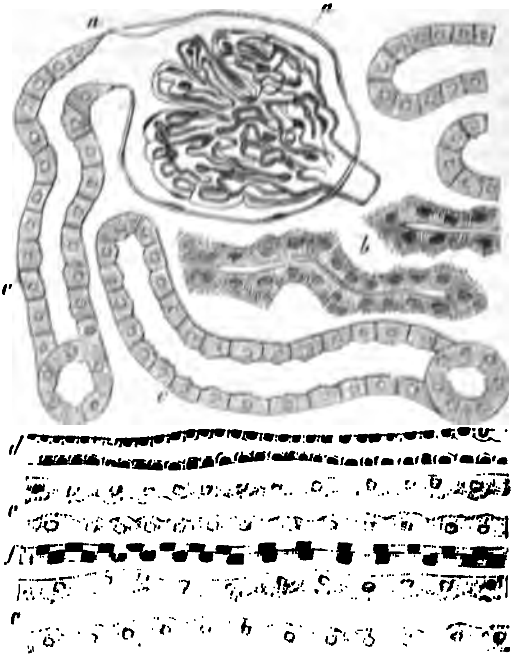


Fig. 237. From a Vertical Section through the Kidney of Dog, showing part of the labyrinth and the adjoining medullary ray. (*Atlas.*)

a, Capsule of Bowman, the capillaries of the glomerulus are arranged in lobules; *n*, neck of capsule; *b*, irregular tubule; *c*, proximal convoluted tubules; *d*, collecting tube; *e*, part of the spiral tubule; *f*, portion of the ascending limb of Henle's loop tube; *d*, *e*, *f*, form the medullary ray.

the glomerulus becomes the cavity or lumen of the urinary tubule.

307. (3) After it has passed the neck, the urinary tubule becomes convoluted; this is the *proximal con-*

voluted tubule (Fig. 237). It is of considerable length and is situated in the labyrinth. It has a distinct lumen, and its epithelium is a single layer of polyhedral or short, columnar, angular, or club-shaped cells, each with a spherical nucleus. These cells commence generally at the neck, but in some animals—*e.g.* in the mouse—they already have begun in the Malpighian corpuscle. The outer part of the cell protoplasm—*i.e.* next the membrana propria—is distinctly striated, owing to the presence of rod-shaped fibrils (Heidenhain) vertically arranged. The inner part of the cell substance—*i.e.* between the nucleus and the inner free margin—appears granular. Epithelial cells the protoplasm of which possesses the above rod-shaped fibrils will in the following paragraphs be spoken of as fibrillated cells.

The proximal convoluted tube appears sometimes thicker than at other times; in the first case, its lumen is smaller, but its lining epithelial cells are distinctly more columnar. This state is probably connected with the state of secretion.

308. (4) The convoluted tube passes into the *spiral tubule* (Schachowa). This differs from the former in being situated not in the labyrinth, but in a medullary ray, in which it forms one conspicuous element, and in not being convoluted, but more or less straight, slightly wavy, and spiral. Its thickness and lumen are the same as in the former; its epithelium is a single layer of polyhedral cells, with distinct indication of fibrillation.

309. (5) Precisely at the line where the cortex joins the boundary layer, the spiral tube becomes suddenly greatly reduced in thickness; it becomes at the same time very transparent. Its lumen is distinct; its membrana propria is now lined with a single layer of scales, each with an oval flattened nucleus. This altered tubule is the *descending looped tube* of

lining epithelium of the tubule respectively, and the space between the capsule of Bowman and

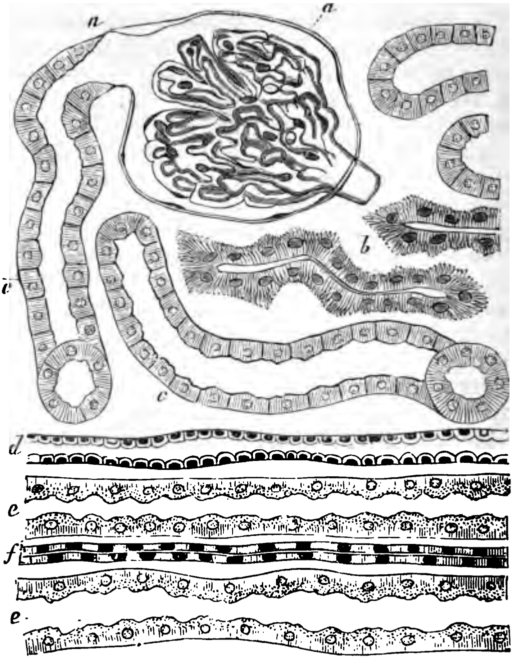


Fig. 237.—From a Vertical Section through the Kidney of Dog, showing part of the labyrinth and the adjoining medullary ray. (*Atlas.*)

a, Capsule of Bowman; the capillaries of the glomerulus are arranged in lobules; *n*, neck of capsule; *b*, irregular tubule; *c*, proximal convoluted tubules; *d*, collecting tube; *e*, part of the spiral tubule; *f*, portion of the ascending limb of Henle's loop-tube; *d*, *e*, *f*, form the medullary ray.

the glomerulus becomes the cavity or lumen of the urinary tubule.

307. (3) After it has passed the neck, the urinary tubule becomes convoluted; this is the *proximal con-*

voluted tubule (Fig. 237). It is of considerable length and is situated in the labyrinth. It has a distinct lumen, and its epithelium is a single layer of polyhedral or short, columnar, angular, or club-shaped cells, each with a spherical nucleus. These cells commence generally at the neck, but in some animals—*e.g.* in the mouse—they already have begun in the Malpighian corpuscle. The outer part of the cell protoplasm—*i.e.* next the membrana propria—is distinctly striated, owing to the presence of rod-shaped fibrils (Heidenhain) vertically arranged. The inner part of the cell substance—*i.e.* between the nucleus and the inner free margin—appears granular. Epithelial cells the protoplasm of which possesses the above rod-shaped fibrils will in the following paragraphs be spoken of as fibrillated cells.

The proximal convoluted tube appears sometimes thicker than at other times; in the first case, its lumen is smaller, but its lining epithelial cells are distinctly more columnar. This state is probably connected with the state of secretion.

308. (4) The convoluted tube passes into the *spiral tubule* (Schachowa). This differs from the former in being situated not in the labyrinth, but in a medullary ray, in which it forms one conspicuous element, and in not being convoluted, but more or less straight, slightly wavy, and spiral. Its thickness and lumen are the same as in the former; its epithelium is a single layer of polyhedral cells, with distinct indication of fibrillation.

309. (5) Precisely at the line where the cortex joins the boundary layer, the spiral tube becomes suddenly greatly reduced in thickness; it becomes at the same time very transparent; its lumen is distinct; its membrana propria is now lined with a single layer of scales, each with an oval flattened nucleus. This altered tubule is the *descending* loop-tube of

whether more or less columnar—are in direct relation to the size of the collecting tube. The substance of the epithelial cells is a transparent protoplasm, and the nucleus is more or less oval.

314. In many places nucleated cells, spindle-shaped or branched, can be traced from the membrana propria of the tubule between the lining epithelium; and, in some cases, even a delicate nucleated membrane can be seen lining the surface of the epithelium next the lumen. In the frog, the epithelium lining, the Malpighian corpuscles, and the exceedingly long neck of the urinary tubule, are possessed of long filamentous cilia, rapidly moving during life. In the neck of some of the urinary tubules in mammals there is also an indication of cilia to be noticed.

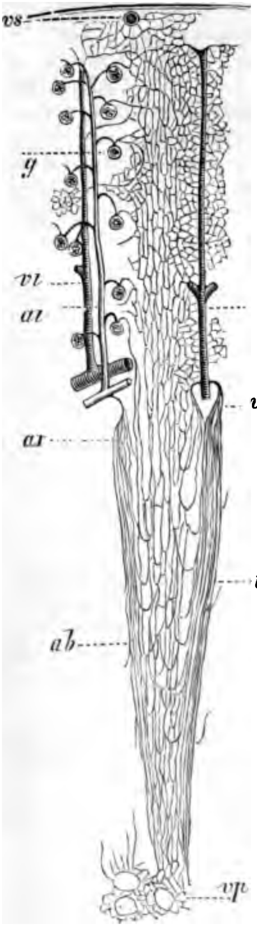


Fig. 238.—Diagram of the Vessels of the Kidney. (*Ludwig*, in *Stricker's Manual*.)

ai, Interlobular artery; *vi*, interlobular vein; *g*, glomerulus of Malpighian corpuscle; *vs*, vena stellata; *ar*, arteriæ rectæ; *vr*, venæ rectæ; *ab*, bundle of arteriæ rectæ; *vb*, bundle of venæ rectæ; *vp*, network of vessels around the mouth of the ducts at the apex of the papillæ.

Heidenhain has shown that indigo-sulphate of sodium, injected into the circulating blood of the dog and rabbit, is excreted through certain parts of the urinary tubules only—viz. those which are lined with

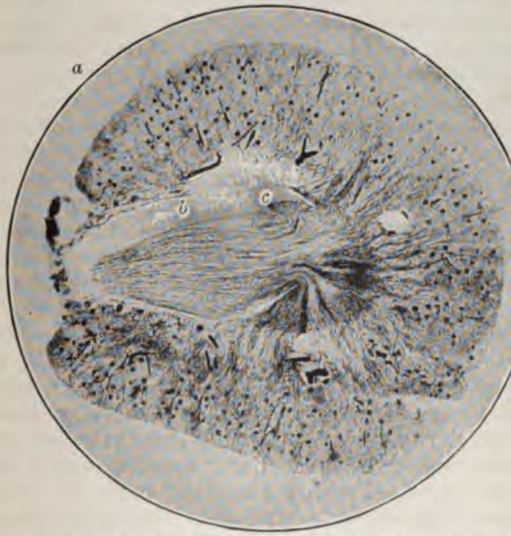


Fig. 239.—Vertical Section through the entire Kidney (injected) of a Rat. (*Photo. Low Power.*)

a, Cortex ; *b*, papilla ; *c*, boundary layer.

"fibrillated" epithelium. He maintains that this excretion is effected through the cell substance ; but, in the case of carmine being used as pigment, I have not found the excretion to take place through the substance of the epithelial cells, but through the homogeneous interstitial or cement substance *between* the epithelial cells.

315. II. *The blood-vessels* (Figs. 238 and 239).

The large branches of the renal artery and vein are situated in the submucous tissue of the pelvis, and they enter, or pass out respectively from, the part of the parenchyma corresponding to the junction of the cortex and boundary layer, where they follow a more or less horizontal course, and give off, or take up respectively, smaller branches to or from the cortex and medulla.

(1) In the cortex the arterial trunks give off to the cortex small branches, which *singly enter the labyrinth* in a direction vertical to the surface of the kidney. These are the *interlobular arteries.* Each of these, on its way towards the external capsule of the kidney, gives off, on all sides of its circumference, shorter or longer lateral branches; these are the *afferent arterioles* for the Malpighian corpuscles, each one entering a Malpighian corpuscle and breaking up into the capillaries of the glomerulus.

On their way towards the external capsule, the arteries become greatly reduced in size, and finally enter the capillary network of the most peripheral part of the cortex; but some of these arterioles may be also traced into the outer capsule, where they become connected with the capillary networks of this latter. The efferent vessel of a Malpighian glomerulus at once breaks up into a dense network of capillary blood-vessels, which surround in all directions the urinary tubules of the labyrinth. This network is continuous with that of the capillaries of the medullary rays, the meshes being here elongated, and the capillary blood-vessels, for obvious reasons, more of a straight arrangement. The capillaries of the whole cortex form one continuous network.

316. The veins which take up the blood from this network are arranged in this manner :—There are formed venous vessels underneath the external capsule, taking up like rays on all sides, minute

radicles connected with the capillaries of the most peripheral part of the cortex. These are the *venæ stellatæ;* they pass into the labyrinth of the cortex, where they follow a vertical course in company with the interlobular arteries. On this passage they communicate with the capillaries of the labyrinth, and ultimately open into the large venous branches situated between cortex and boundary layer.

317. (2) In the medulla. From the large arterial trunks short branches come off, which enter the boundary layer, and there split up into a bundle of minute arterioles, which pass in a straight direction vertically through the boundary layer into the papillary portion. These are the *arteriæ rectæ* (Fig. 238). The number of vessels of each bundle is at the outset increased by the efferent vessel of the Malpighian corpuscles nearest to the boundary layer.

On their way through the boundary layer, and through the papillary portion of the medulla, these arterioles give off the capillary network for the urinary tubules of these parts, the network, for obvious reasons, possessing an elongated arrangement.

From this network originate everywhere minute veins, which on their way towards the cortical margin increase in size and number; they form also bundles of straight vessels—*venæ rectæ*—and ultimately enter the venous trunks situated between the boundary layer and cortex.

The bundles of the arteriæ rectæ and venæ rectæ form severally, in the boundary layer, the transparent striæ mentioned on a previous page as alternating with the opaque striæ, these latter being bundles of urinary tubules.

At the apex of each papilla there is a network of capillaries around the mouth of each duct.

318. The outer capsule of the kidney contains a network of capillary blood-vessels; the arterial branches leading into them are derived from two sources: (*a*) from the outrunners of the interlobular arteries of the cortex, and (*b*) from extra-renal arteries. The veins lead (*a*) into the venæ stellatæ, and (*b*) into extra-renal veins.

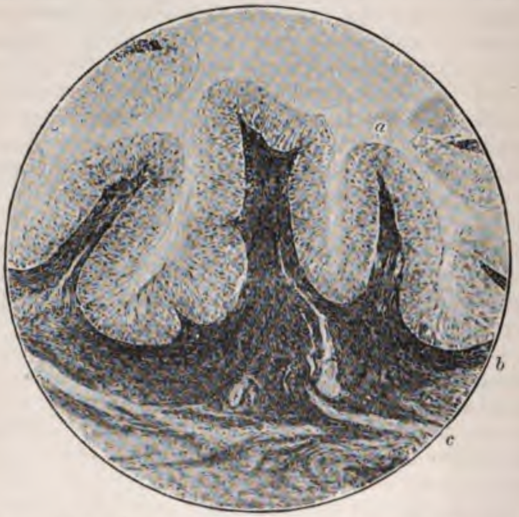


Fig. 240.—From Transverse Section through Urinary Bladder of Dog. (*Photo. Low Power.*)

a, Inner surface of folded mucous membrane, covered with stratified transitional epithelium; *b*, mucous membrane; *c*, outer coat of non-striped muscle.

The *lymphatic* vessels form a plexus in the capsule of the kidney. They are connected with lymph spaces between the urinary tubes of the cortex. The large blood-vessels are surrounded by a plexus of lymphatics, which take up lymph spaces between the urinary tubules, both in the cortex and the boundary layer.

319. The **ureter** is lined with stratified transitional epithelium. Underneath this is the mucosa, a connective-tissue membrane with capillary blood-vessels. The submucosa is a loose connective tissue. Then follows a muscular coat composed of non-striped muscular tissue, arranged as an inner and outer longitudinal and a middle circular coat. Then follows an outer limiting thin fibrous coat or adventitia. In this last have been observed minute ganglia in connection with the nerve-branches.

320. The **bladder** is similar in structure, but the mucous membrane and muscular coat are very much thicker. In the latter, which consists of non-striped fibres, can be distinguished an inner circular, a middle oblique, and an outer longitudinal stratum. The last is best developed in the fundus (Fig. 240).

Numerous sympathetic ganglia, of various sizes, are found in connection with the nerve-branches underneath the adventitia (peritoneal covering), and in the muscular coat (F. Darwin). The epithelium lining the bladder is stratified transitional, and it greatly varies in the shape of its cells and their stratification, according to the state of expansion of the bladder.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

THE MALE GENITAL ORGANS.

321. (1) The **testis** of man and mammals is enveloped in a capsule of white fibrous tissue, the *tunica adnata*. This is the visceral layer of the tunica vaginalis. Like the parietal layer, it is a serous membrane, and is therefore covered with endothelium. Minute villi are occasionally seen projecting from this membrane into the cavity of the tunica vaginalis. These villi are generally covered with germinating endothelium. Inside the tunica adnata, and firmly attached to it, is the *tunica albuginea*, a fibrous connective-tissue membrane of lamellar structure. Towards the posterior margin of the human testis its thickness increases, and forms there (Fig. 241) a special accumulation—in cross section more or less conical, with posterior basis—the mediastinum testis, or corpus Highmori.

Between the tunica adnata and tunica albuginea is a rich plexus of lymphatics, which, on the one hand, takes up the lymphatics of the interior, and on the other leads into the efferent vessels that accompany the vas deferens.

The testis of the dog, cat, bull, pig, rabbit, etc., have a central corpus Highmori; that of the mole, hedgehog, and bat a peripheral one; while that of the rat and mouse have none (Messing).

322. **The framework.** - From the anterior margin of the corpus Highmori spring numerous

septa of connective tissue, which, passing in a radiating direction towards the albuginea, with which they form a continuity, subdivide the testis into a large number of more or less conical compartments, or lobules, the basis of which is situated at the tunica albuginea, the apex at the corpus Highmori. Kölliker

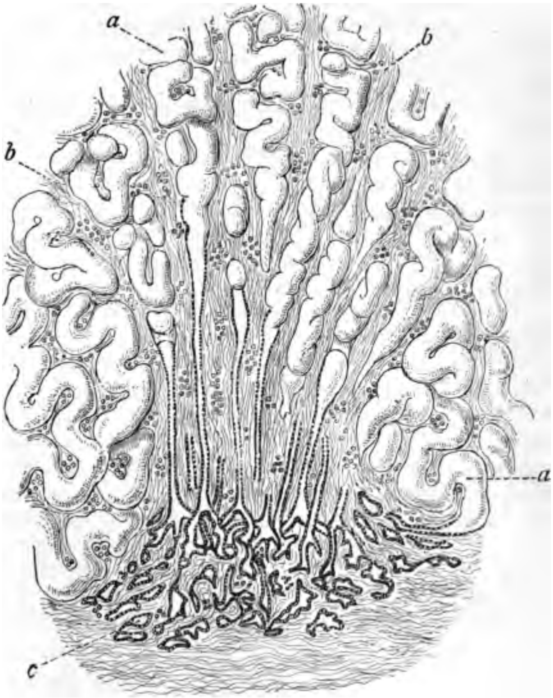


Fig. 241.—Passage of Convoluted Seminiferous Tubules into Straight Tubules and into the Rete Testis. (*Mihalkovics, Quain's "Anatomy."*) *a*, Seminiferous tubules; *b*, fibrous tissue: *c*, rete testis.

mentions that non-striped muscular tissue occurs in these septa.

From these septa thin connective-tissue lamellæ pass into the compartments, and they form the supporting tissue for the blood-vessels, and also represent the interstitial connective tissue between the seminal tubules.

This intertubular or interstitial tissue is distinctly lamellated, the lamellæ being of different thicknesses, and consisting of thin bundles of fibrous connective tissue—arranged more or less as fenestrated membranes—and endotheloid connective plates on their surface. Between the lamellæ are left spaces, and these form, through the fenestræ or holes of the lamellæ, an intercommunicating system of lymph spaces—being, in fact, the rootlets of the lymphatics (Ludwig and Tomsa).

Within the lamellæ are found peculiar cells, which are much larger than lymph cells, and which, in some instances (*e.g.* guinea-pig), include pigment granules. They contain a spherical nucleus. In man, dog, cat, sheep, especially in the boar, these cells form large, continuous groups—plates and cylinders—and the cells are polyhedral, and exactly similar to epithelial cells. They are separated from one another within the group by a thin interstitial cement substance. Their resemblance with epithelium is complete. They are remnants of the epithelial masses of the Wolffian body of the fœtus.

323. **The seminal tubules** (Fig. 242). — Within each compartment, above mentioned, lie numerous *seminal tubules*, twisted and convoluted in many ways, and extending from the periphery to near the corpus Highmori. The tubules, as a rule, are rarely branched; but in the young state, and especially towards the periphery, branching is not uncommon.

Each seminal tubule consists of a membrana propria, a lining epithelium, and a lumen. The membrana propria is a hyaline membrane, with oval nuclei at regular intervals. In man it is thick and lamellated, several such nucleated membranes being superimposed over one another. The lumen is in all tubes distinct and relatively large. The lining epithelium, or the *seminal cells*, differ in the adult in different tubules, and even in different parts of the same tubule, being dependent on the state of secretion.

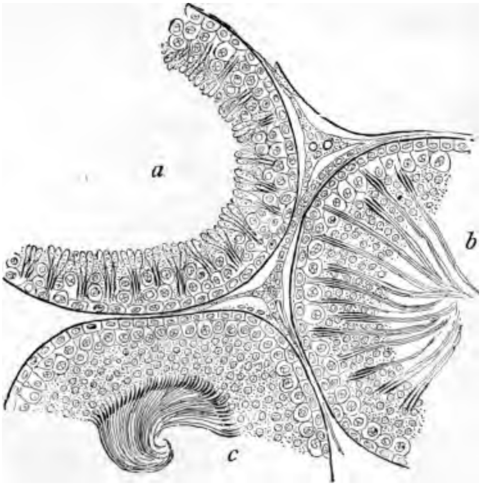


Fig. 242.—Section of parts of three Seminiferous Tubules of Rat. (*E. A. Schäfer.*)
a, With the spermatozoa least advanced in development; *b*, more, and *c*, most advanced. Between the tubules are strands of interstitial cells.

324. Before puberty all tubules are uniform in this respect, being lined with two or three layers of polyhedral epithelial cells, each with a spherical

nucleus. After puberty, however, the following different types can be distinguished.

(a) Tubules or parts of tubules similar to those of the young state—viz. several layers of polyhedral epithelial cells lining the membrana propria. These are considered as (*a*) the outer and (*b*) the inner seminal cells. The former are next to the membrana propria; they are polyhedral in shape, transparent, and the nucleus of many of them is in the process of karyomitosis or indirect division (see par. 8); in some the nucleus is oval transparent, but containing a distinct network. The inner seminal cells generally form two or three layers, and are more loosely connected with one another than the outer seminal cells, and therefore possess a more rounded appearance.

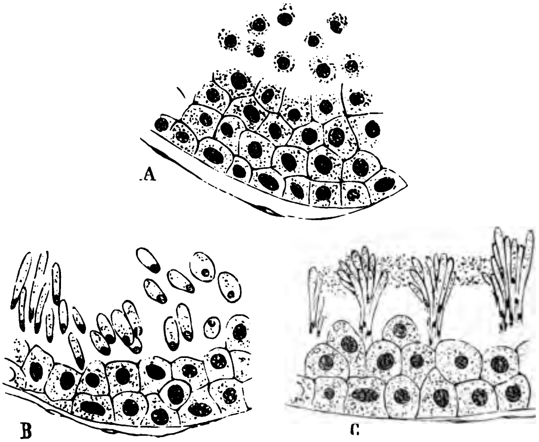


Fig. 243.—From a Section through the Testis of Dog, showing portions of three seminal tubules. (*Atlas.*)

A, Seminal epithelial cells and numerous small cells loosely arranged; B, small cells or spermatoblasts becoming converted into spermatozoa; C, groups of these in a further stage of development.

Between these a nucleated reticulum of fine fibres is sometimes noticed, the germ reticulum of von Ebner. But this is merely a supporting tissue, and has nothing to do with the germination of the cells or the spermatozoa (Merkel). The inner seminal cells show very abundantly the process of indirect division of the nucleus, almost all being seen in one or another phase of it.

325. The division of the inner seminal cells yields numerous small spherical cells; these lie nearest the lumen, and are very loosely connected with one another. It is these which are transformed into spermatozoa, and hence are appropriately called *spermatoblasts* (Fig. 242).

Amongst the seminal cells, especially of cat and dog, are found occasionally, but not very commonly, large multinuclear cells, the nuclei of which are also in one or other stage of karyomitosis.

(b) The innermost cells—*i.e.* the spermatoblasts—become pear-shaped, the nucleus being situated at the thinner extremity, becoming at the same time flattened and homogeneous (Fig. 243). The elongation of the spermatoblasts gradually proceeds, and in consequence of this we find numerous elongated, club-shaped spermatoblasts, each with a flattened nucleus at the thin end. These are the young spermatozoa, the nucleated extremity being the head.

(c) At the same time these young spermatozoa become grouped together by an interstitial granular substance, in peculiar fan-shaped groups: in these groups the head—*i.e.* the thin end containing the flattened homogeneous nucleus—is directed towards the inner seminal cells, while the opposite extremity is directed into the lumen of the tube. Meanwhile the inner seminal cells continue to divide, and thus the groups of young spermatozoa get more and more buried, as it were, between them.

326. The original cell-body of the spermatoblasts goes on elongating until its protoplasm is almost, but not quite, used to form a rod-shaped *middle piece* (Schweigger Seidel) of the spermatozoa; from the distal end of this, a thin long hair-like filament, called the *tail*, grows out. Where this joins the end of the middle piece, there is present, even for some time afterwards, a last remnant of the granular cell-body of the original spermatoblast. Some of the inner seminal cells not used for the formation of spermatozoa disintegrate and yield the granular substance between the spermatozoa of the groups, and also between these latter.

When the granular interstitial substance holding together the spermatozoa of a group has become disintegrated, the spermatozoa are isolated. While this development of the spermatozoa goes on, the inner seminal cells continue to produce spermatoblasts, some of which are converted into spermatozoa.

327. **Spermatozoa** (Fig. 244).—Fully formed spermatozoa of man and mammals consist of a homogeneous flattened and slightly convex-concave *head* (the nucleus of the original spermatoblast), a rod-shaped *middle piece* (derived directly from the cell-body of the spermatoblast), and a long hair-like *tail.* While living, the spermatozoa show very rapid oscillatory and propelling movement, the tail acting as a flagellum or cilium; its movements are spiral.

In the newt there is a fine spiral thread attached to the end of the long, curved, spike-like head, and by a hyaline membrane it is fixed to the middle piece; it extends beyond this as the *tail.* Also in the mammalian and human spermatozoa, a similar spiral thread, closely attached to the middle piece, and terminating as the tail, has been observed (H. Gibbes).

328. The seminal tubules of each lobule pass into a short straight tubule, the *vas rectum.* This is

narrower than the seminal tubule, and is lined with a single layer of polyhedral or short columnar epithelial cells. The vasa recta form, in the corpus Highmori, a dense network of tubular channels, which are irregular in diameter, being at one place narrow clefts, at another wide tubes, but never so wide as the seminal tubules; this network of channels is the *rete testis*.

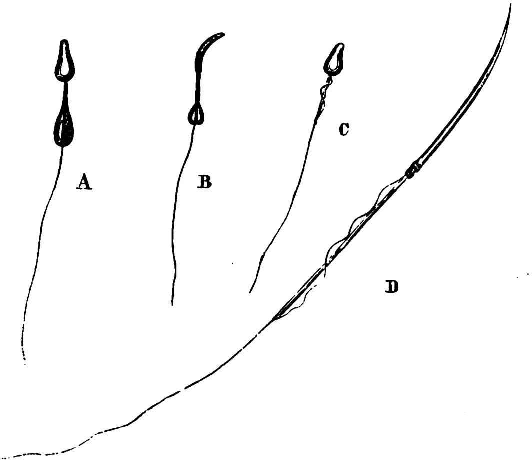


Fig. 244.—Various Kinds of Spermatozoa.

A, Spermatozoon of guinea-pig not yet completely ripe; B, the same seen sideways, the head of the spermatozoon is flattened from side to side; C, spermatozoon of horse; D, spermatozoon of newt.

329. (2) **The epididymis.**—From the rete testis we pass into the *vasa efferentia*, each being a tube wider than those of the rete testis, and each leading into a *conical* network of coiled tubes. These are the *coni vasculosi*. The sum total of all the coni vasculosi forms the globus major or head of the epididymis.

330. The vasa efferentia and the tubes of the coni

vasculosi are about the size of the seminal tubules, but, unlike them, are lined with a layer of beautiful columnar epithelial cells, with a bundle of cilia (Fig. 245). Outside these is generally a layer, more or less continuous, of small polyhedral cells. The substance of the columnar cells is distinctly longitudinally fibrillated. The membrana propria is thickened by the presence of a circular layer of non-striped muscular fibres. The rest—*i.e.* the globus minor, or tail of the epididymis—is made up of a continuation of the tubes of the globus major, the tubes diminishing gradually in number by fusion, and thereby at the same time becoming larger. The columnar epithelial cells, facing the lumen of the tubes of the globus minor, are possessed of cilia of unusual length.

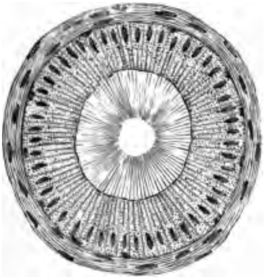


Fig. 245.—Tubule of the Epididymis in cross-section.

The wall of the tubule is made up of a thick layer of concentrically arranged non-striped muscular tissue, a layer of columnar epithelial cells with extraordinarily long cilia projecting into the lumen of the tube.

The tubes of the epididymis are separated from one another by a larger amount of connective tissue than those of the testis.

The tubes of the organ of Giraldé, situated in the beginning of the funiculus spermaticus, are lined with columnar ciliated epithelium. So is also the pedunculated hydatid of Morgagni attached to the globus major.

331. The seminal tubules and the tubes of the epididymis are surrounded by a rich network of capillary blood-vessels. Between the tubes of the testis and epididymis are lymph spaces, forming an intercommunicating system, and emptying themselves

into the superficial networks of lymphatics—*i.e.* those of the albuginea; the arrangement of these networks is somewhat different in the testis and epididymis.

332. (3) **Vas deferens and vesiculæ seminales.**—The tubes of the globus minor open into the vas deferens. This is, of course, much larger than the former, and is lined with stratified columnar epithelium. Underneath this is a dense connective-tissue mucosa, containing a rich network of capillary blood-vessels. Beneath this mucosa is a thin submucous tissue, which in the ampulla is better developed than in other parts, and therefore allows the mucous membrane to become folded. Outside the submucous tissue is the muscular coat, which consists of non-striped muscular tissue, arranged as an inner circular and an outer longitudinal stratum. At the commencement of the vas deferens there is in addition an inner longitudinal layer. There is finally a fibrous tissue adventitia. This contains longitudinal bundles of non-striped muscular tissue, known as the *cremaster internus* (Henle). A rich plexus of veins—plexus pampiniformis—and a rich plexus of lymphatic trunks, are situated in the connective tissue of the spermatic cord. The plexus spermaticus consists of larger and smaller nerve-trunks, with which are connected small groups of ganglion cells and also large ganglionic swellings.

333. In the *vesiculæ seminales* we meet with exactly the same layers as constitute the wall of the vas deferens, but they are thinner. This refers especially to the mucosa and the muscular coat. The former is placed in numerous folds. The latter consists of an inner and outer longitudinal and a middle circular stratum. The ganglia in connection with the nerve trunks of the adventitia are very numerous.

334. In the *ductus ejaculatorii* we find a lining of

columnar epithelial cells; outside of this is a delicate mucosa and a muscular coat, the latter consisting of an inner thicker longitudinal and an outer thinner circular stratum of non-striped muscular tissue.

When passing into the vesicula prostatica the columnar epithelium is gradually replaced by stratified pavement epithelium.

335. (4) **The prostate gland.**—Like other glands, the prostate consists of a framework and the gland tissue proper or the parenchyma.

The *framework*, unlike that of other glands, is essentially muscular, being composed of bundles of non-striped muscular tissue, with a relatively small admixture of fibrous connective tissue. The latter is chiefly limited to the outer capsule and the thin septa passing inwards, whereas the non-striped muscular tissue surrounds and separates the individual gland alveoli.

336. The **parenchyma** consists of the chief ducts, which open at the base of and near the colliculus seminalis, and of the secondary ducts, minor branches of the former, which ultimately lead into the alveoli. These are longer or shorter, wavy or convoluted branched tubes with numerous saccular or club-shaped branches. The alveoli and ducts are limited by a membrana propria, have a distinct lumen, and are lined with columnar epithelium. In the alveoli there is only a single layer of beautiful columnar epithelial cells, the substance of which is distinctly and longitudinally striated. In the ducts there is an inner layer of short columnar cells, and an outer one of small cubical, polyhedral or spindle-shaped cells.

At the mouth of the ducts the stratified pavement epithelium of the pars prostatica of the urethra passes a short distance into the duct.

The alveoli are surrounded by dense networks of capillary blood-vessels.

In the peripheral portion of the gland numerous ganglia are interposed in the rich plexus of nerves. Also Pacinian corpuscles are to be met with.

337. (5) **The urethra.**—The mucous membrane of the male urethra is lined with simple columnar epithelium, except at the commencement—the pars prostatica—and at the end—the fossa navicularis—where it is stratified pavement epithelium.

The mucous membrane is fibrous tissue with very numerous elastic fibres. Outside of it is a muscular coat composed of non-striped muscular tissue, and arranged as an inner circular and an outer longitudinal stratum, except in the pars prostatica and pars membranacea, where it is chiefly longitudinal. In the latter portion the muscular bundles pass also into the mucous membrane, where they follow a longitudinal course between large veins arranged in a longitudinal plexus. These veins empty themselves into small efferent veins. This plexus of large veins with the muscular tissue between represents a rudiment of a cavernous tissue (Henle).

The mucous membrane forms peculiar folds surrounding the lacunæ Morgagni. There are small mucous glands, lined with columnar epithelium, embedded in the mucous membrane; they open into the cavity of the urethra and are known as Littré's glands.

338. (6) **The glands of Cowper.**—Each gland of Cowper is a large compound tubular gland, which, as regards structure of ducts and alveoli, resembles a mucous gland. The wall of the chief ducts possesses a large amount of longitudinally arranged non-striped muscular tissue. The epithelium lining the ducts is composed of columnar cells. The alveoli possess a large lumen and are lined with columnar mucous cells, the outer portion of the cell being distinctly striated (Langerhans). In the cell the reticulum is

also distinct. In this respect the alveoli completely resemble those of the submaxillary of the dog, but there are no real crescents in the alveoli of Cowper's gland.

339. (7) **The corpus spongiosum.**—The corpus spongiosum of the urethra is a continuation of the rudimentary corpus cavernosum above-mentioned in connection with the pars membranacea of the urethra. It is essentially a plexus of large veins arranged chiefly longitudinally, and leading into small efferent veins. Between the large veins are bundles of non-striped muscular tissue. The capillary blood-vessels of the mucous membrane of the urethra open into the veins of the plexus. The outer portion of the corpus spongiosum, including the bulbus urethræ, shows, however, numerous venous sinuses, real cavernæ, into which open capillary blood-vessels.

340. The **glans penis** is of exactly the same structure as the corpus spongiosum. The outer surface is covered with a delicate fibrous tissue membrane, which on its free surface bears minute papillæ, extending into the stratified pavement epithelium. At the corona glandis exist small sebaceous follicles, the glands of Tyson; they are continued from the inner lamella of the prepuce, where they abound. The papillæ of the glans contain loops of capillary blood-vessels. Plexuses of non-medullated nerve fibres are found underneath the epithelium of the surface of the glans. With these are connected the end bulbs described in a former chapter as the genital nerve-end corpuscles.

341. (8) **The corpora cavernosa penis.**—Each corpus cavernosum is enveloped in a fibrous capsule, the albuginea, made up of lamellæ of fibrous connective tissue. Numerous Pacinian corpuscles are met with around it. The matrix of the corpus

cavernosum consists of trabeculæ of fibrous tissue, between which pass bundles of non-striped muscular tissue, all in different directions. Innumerable cavernæ or sinuses, intercommunicating with one another, are present in this matrix, capable of such considerable repletion that in the maximum degree of this state the sinuses are almost in contact, and the trabeculæ compressed into very delicate septa. The sinuses are lined with a single layer of flattened endothelial plates, and their wall in many places is strengthened by the bundles of non-striped muscular tissue. The sinuses during erection become filled with blood, being directly continuous with capillary blood-vessels. These are derived from the arterial branches which take their course in the above trabeculæ of the matrix. The blood passes from the sinuses into small efferent veins. But the blood passes also directly from the capillaries into the efferent veins, and this is the course the blood takes under passive conditions, while during erection it passes chiefly into the above sinuses.

342. In the peripheral part of the corpus cavernosum there exists a direct communication between the sinuses and minute arteries (Langer), but in the rest the arteries do not directly communicate with the sinuses except through the capillary blood-vessels. In the passive state of the corpus cavernosum, the muscular trabeculæ forming part of the matrix are contracted, and the minute arterial branches embedded in them are therefore much coiled up; these are the arteriæ helicinæ.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

THE FEMALE GENITAL ORGANS.

343. (1) **The ovary** (Fig. 246).—In the ovary, as in other glands, the framework is to be distinguished from the parenchyma. In the part of the ovary next to the hilum there are numerous blood-vessels, in a loose fibrous connective tissue, with numerous longitudinal bundles of non-striped muscular tissue directly continuous with the same tissues of the ligamentum latum. This portion of the ovary is the zona vasculosa (Waldeyer). All parts of the zona vasculosa—*i.e.* the bundles of fibrous connective tissue, the blood-vessels, and the bundles of non-striped muscular tissue—are traceable into the parenchyma.

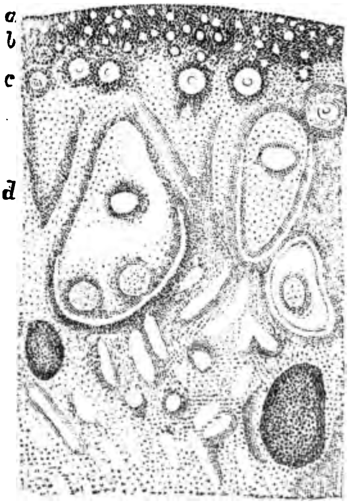


Fig. 246.—Vertical Section through Ovary of half-grown Cat. (*Atlas.*)
a, Albuginea; the geminal epithelium is not distinguishable owing to the low power under which the section is supposed to be viewed; *b*, layer of smallest Graafian follicles and ova; *c*, medium-sized follicles; *d*, layer of large follicles; *e*, zona vasculosa

The stroma of this latter, however, is made up of bundles of shorter or longer transparent spindle-shaped cells, each with an oval nucleus. These bundles of spindle-shaped cells form, by crossing and interlacing, a tolerably dense tissue, in which lie embedded in special distribution the Graafian follicles. Around the larger examples of the latter the spindle-shaped cells form more or less concentric layers. In the human ovary bundles of fibrous tissue are also met with.

The spindle-shaped cells are most probably a young state of connective tissue.

Between these bundles of spindle-shaped cells occur cylindrical or irregular streaks or groups of polyhedral cells, each with a spherical nucleus; they correspond to the interstitial epithelial cells mentioned in the testis, and they are also derived from the fœtal Wolffian body.

344. According to the distribution of the Graafian follicles, the following layers can be distinguished in the ovary:—

(*a*) *The albuginea.* This is the most peripheral layer not containing any Graafian follicles. It is composed of the bundles of spindle-shaped cells, intimately interwoven. In man, an outer and inner longitudinal, and a middle circular, layer can be made out (Henle). In some mammals an outer longitudinal, an inner circular, or slightly oblique layer can be distinguished in the albuginea.

The free surface of the albuginea is covered with a single layer of polyhedral, or short columnar granular-looking epithelial cells, the *germinal epithelium* (Waldeyer). This epithelium, in its shape and aspect, forms a marked contrast to the transparent, flattened, endothelial plates covering the ligamentum latum.

345. (*b*) *The cortical layer* (Schrön).—This is a

layer containing the smallest Graafian follicles, either aggregated as a more or less continuous layer (cat and rabbit), or in small groups (human), separated by the stroma. These follicles are spherical or slightly oval, of about $\frac{1}{1000}$ inch in diameter, and each of them is limited by a delicate *membrana propria.* Inside of this is a layer of flattened, transparent, epithelial cells, each with an oval, flattened nucleus; this is the *membrana granulosa.* The space within the follicle is occupied by, and filled up with, a spherical cell—the ovum cell, or *ovum.* This is composed of a granular-looking protoplasm, and in this is a big spherical, or slightly oval, nucleus—the *germinal vesicle.* The substance of this is either a fine reticulum, limited by a delicate membrane, with one or more nucleoli or *germinal spots*, or it is in one of the phases of indirect division or karyomitosis, thus indicating division of the ovum.

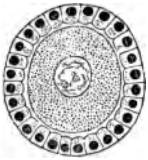


Fig. 247.—A small Graafian Follicle, from the Ovary of Cat. (*Atlas.*)

The follicle is lined with a layer of columnar epithelial cells — the membrana granulosa. The ovum fills out the cavity of the follicle; it is surrounded by a thin zona pellucida, and it includes a germinal vesicle or nucleus with the intranuclear reticulum.

346. (*c*) From this cortical layer to the zona vasculosa we find embedded in the stroma isolated Graafian follicles of various sizes, increasing from the former to the latter. The biggest follicles measure in diameter about $\frac{1}{20}$ inch. Those of the middle layers are of medium size (Fig. 247). In them we find inside the membrana propria the membrana granulosa, made up of a single layer of transparent, columnar, epithelial cells. The ovum, larger than in the small cortical follicles, fills out the cavity of the follicle, and is limited by a thin hyaline cuticle—the *zona pellucida.* This appears as an excretion of the *cells of* the membrana granulosa. The protoplasm of

the ovum is fibrillated. The part surrounding the germinal vesicle is more transparent, and stains differently in osmic acid than the peripheral part. The big nucleus, or germinal vesicle, is limited by a distinct membrane, and inside this membrane is a reticulum with generally one big nucleolus or *germinal spot.*

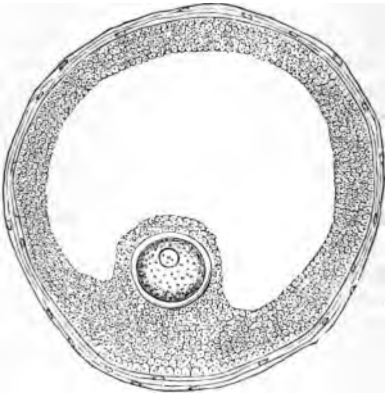


Fig. 248.—Large Graafian Follicle of the Ovary of Cat.

The follicle is limited by a capsule, the theca folliculi; the membrana granulosa is composed of several layers of epithelial cells. The ovum with its distinct hyaline zona pellucida is embedded in the epithelial cells of the discus proligerus. The cavity of the follicle is filled with fluid, the liquor folliculi.

Between these medium-sized follicles and the small follicles of the cortical layer we find all intermediate degrees as regards size of the follicle and the ovum, and especially as regards the shape of the cells of the membrana granulosa, the intermediate sizes of follicles being lined by a granulosa made up of a layer of polyhedral epithelial cells.

347. The deeper Graafian follicles—*i.e.* those that are to be regarded as big follicles—contain an ovum, occasionally two or even three ova, which is similar to that of the previous follicles, except that it is larger, and its zona pellucida thicker. The ovum does not fill out the whole cavity of the follicle, since at one side, between it and the membrana granulosa,

there is an albuminous fluid, the rudiment of the liquor folliculi.

348. The largest or most advanced follicles are of great size, easily visible by the naked eye, and contain a large quantity of this liquor folliculi (Fig. 248). In fact, the ovum occupies only a small part of the cavity of the follicle. The ovum is big, surrounded by a thick zona pellucida, is situated at one side, surrounded by the *discus proligerus*. This consists of layers of polyhedral cells, except the cells immediately around the zona pellucida, which are columnar. The ovum with its discus proligerus is connected with the membrana granulosa. This latter consists of *stratified pavement epithelium*, forming the entire lining of the follicle. The outermost layer of cells is columnar. The membrana propria of these big follicles is strengthened by concentric layers of the stroma cells, and this represents the *tunica fibrosa* (Henle) or outer coat of the follicle—theca folliculi externa. Numerous blood capillaries connected into a network surround the big follicles.

In those follicles that contain a greater or smaller amount of the liquor folliculi we notice in the fluid a variable number of detached granulosa cells in various stages of vacuolation, maceration, and disintegration.

349. In connection with the medium-sized and large Graafian follicles are seen occasionally smaller or larger solid cylindrical or irregularly-shaped outgrowths of the membrana granulosa and membrana propria; they indicate a new formation of Graafian follicles, some containing a new ovum. When these side branches become by active growth converted into larger follicles, they may remain in continuity with the parent follicle, or may be constricted off altogether. In the first case, we have one large follicle with two or three ova, according as a parent follicle has given origin to one or two new outgrowths.

Amongst the epithelial cells constituting the stratified membrana granulosa of the ripe follicles we notice a nucleated reticulum.

Many follicles reach ripeness, as far as size and constituent elements are concerned, long before puberty, and they are subject to degeneration; but this process of degeneration involves also follicles of smaller sizes.

350. Before menstruation, generally one, occasionally two or more of the ripe follicles become very hyperhæmic. They grow, in consequence, very rapidly in size; their liquor folliculi increases to such a degree that they reach the surface of the ovary; finally—*i.e.* during menstruation—they burst at a superficial point; the ovum, with its discus proligerus, is ejected, and brought into the abdominal ostium of the oviduct. The cavity of the follicle collapses, and a certain amount of blood, derived from the broken capillaries of the wall of the follicle, is effused into it. The follicle is converted into a *corpus luteum* by an active multiplication of the cells of the granulosa. New capillaries with connective-tissue cells derived from the theca folliculi externa gradually grow into the interior—*i.e.* between the cells of the granulosa. This growth gradually fills the follicle, except the centre; this contains blood pigment in the shape of granules, chiefly contained in large cells, and a few new blood-vessels, the blood pigment being the remains of the original blood effused into the follicle. But, ultimately, all the pigment disappears, and a sort of gelatinous tissue occupies the centre, while the periphery—*i.e.* the greater part of the follicle—is made up of the hypertrophied granulosa, with young capillary vessels between its cells. The granulosa cells undergo fatty degeneration, becoming filled with several small fat globules, which gradually become confluent into a big globule. In this state the corpus

luteum is complete, and has reached the height of its progressive growth. The tissue is then gradually absorbed, and cicatricial tissue is left. When this shrinks it produces a shrinking of the corpus luteum. This represents the last stage in the life of a Graafian follicle. The corpus luteum of Graafian follicles, of which the ovum has been impregnated, grows to a much larger size than under other conditions, the granulosa becoming by overgrowth much folded.

351. **Development of the ovary and Graafian follicles.**—The germinal epithelium of the surface of the fœtal ovary at an early stage undergoes rapid multiplication, in consequence of which the epithelium becomes greatly thickened. The vascular stroma of the ovary at the same time increases, and permeates the thickened germinal epithelium. The two tissues, in fact, undergo mutual ingrowth, as is the case in the development of all glands—namely, the epithelial or glandular part suffers mutual ingrowth with the vascular connective-tissue stroma.

In the case of the ovary, larger and smaller islands or nests (Balfour) of epithelial cells are thus gradually differentiated off from the superficial epithelium. These nests are largest in the depth and smallest near the surface. They remain in connection with one another and with the surface for a considerable period. Even some time after birth some of the superficial nests are still connected with the surface epithelium, and with one another (Fig. 249). These correspond to the ovarial tubes (Pflüger). While in the rabbit these nests are solid collections, in the dog they soon assume the character of tubular structures (Pflüger, Schäfer). The cells constituting the nests undergo multiplication (by karyomitosis), in consequence of which the nests increase in size, and even new nests may be constricted off from old ones (*see* also above).

352. At the earliest stages we notice in the germinal epithelium some of the cells becoming enlarged in their cell body, and especially their nucleus; these represent the *primitive ova.* When the germinal epithelium undergoes the thickening above mentioned, and when this thickened epithelium separates into the nests and ovarial tubes, there is a continued formation of primitive ova—*i.e.* cells of the nests undergo the enlargement of cell-body and nucleus by which they are converted into primitive ova. Like the other epithelial cells, the primitive ova of the nests and ovarial tubes undergo division into two or even more primitive ova after the mode

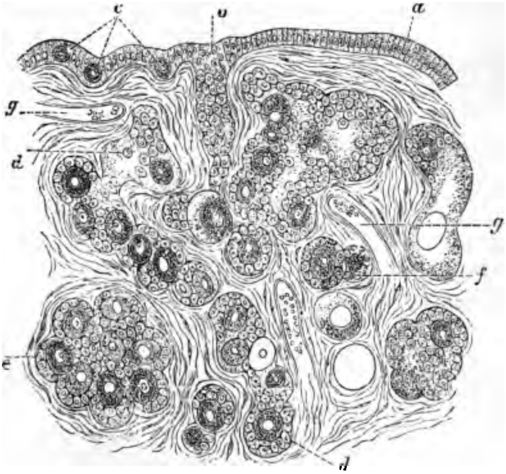


Fig. 249.—From a Vertical Section through Ovary of a Newly-born Child. (*Waldeyer, in Stricker's Manual.*)

a, **Germinal epithelium;** ***b***, **ovarian tube;** ***c***, **primitive ova;** ***d***, **longer tubes becoming constricted off into several Graafian follicles;** ***e***, **large nests;** ***f***, **isolated finished Graafian follicles;** ***g***, **blood-vessels.**

of karyomitosis (Balfour). Thus each nest contains a series of ova.

353. The ordinary small epithelial cells of the nests and ovarial tubes serve to form the membrana granulosa of the Graafian follicles. According to the number of ova in a nest or in an ovarial tube, a subdivision takes place in so many Graafian follicles, each consisting of one ovum with a more or less complete investment of small epithelial cells—*i.e.* a membrana granulosa. This subdivision is brought about by the ingrowth of the stroma into the nests.

The superficial nests being the smallest, as above stated, form the cortical layer of the small Graafian follicles; the deeper ones give origin to larger follicles. Thus we see that the ovum and the cells of the membrana granulosa are derived from the primary germinal epithelium; all other parts—membrana propria, theca externa, stroma, and vessels—are derived from the fœtal stroma.

There is a good deal of evidence to show that ova and Graafian follicles are, as a rule, reproduced after birth (Pflüger, Kölliker), although other observers (Bischoff, Waldeyer) hold the opposite view.

354. (2) **The oviduct.**—The oviduct consists of a lining epithelium, a mucous membrane, a muscular coat, and an outer fibrous coat—the serous covering, or peritoneum. The epithelium is columnar and ciliated. The mucous membrane is much folded; it is a connective-tissue membrane with networks of capillary blood vessels. In man and mammals there are no proper glands present, although there are seen appearances in sections which seem to indicate the existence of short gland tubes; but these appearances are explained by the folds of the mucous membrane. The muscular coat is composed of non-striped muscular tissue of a pre-eminently circular arrangement; in the outer part there are a few

oblique and longitudinal bundles. The serous covering contains numerous elastic fibrils in a connective-tissue matrix.

355. (3) **The uterus.**—The epithelium lining the cavity of the uterus is a single layer of columnar cells, each with a bundle of cilia on their free surface. These are very easily detached, and therefore difficult to find in a hardened and preserved specimen. But in the fresh and well-preserved human uterus (Friedländer), as well as in that of mammals, the cells are distinctly ciliated. The whole canal of the cervix is in the adult lined with ciliated epithelium, but in children, according to Lott, only in the upper half. The surface of the portio vaginalis uteri is, like that of the vagina, covered with stratified pavement epithelium.

356. The mucous membrane of the cervix is different from that of the fundus. In the former it is a fibrous tissue possessed of permanent folds—the palmæ plicatæ. Few thin bundles of non-striped muscular tissue penetrate into these from the outer muscular coat. Between the palmæ plicatæ are the openings of minute gland-tubes, more or less cylindrical in shape. They possess a membrana propria and a distinct lumen lined with a single layer of columnar epithelial cells, which, according to some observers, are ciliated in the newly-born child, but, according to Friedländer, are always non-ciliated. Goblet cells are met with amongst the lining epithelium. Several observers (Kölliker, Hennig, Tyler Smith, and others) maintain the existence of minute, thin, and long vascular papillæ projecting above the general surface of the mucous membrane in the lower part of the cervix; these apparent papillæ are, however, only due to sections through the folds of the mucous membrane. The mucous membrane of the fundus is a spongy plexus of fine bundles of fibrous

tissue, covered or lined respectively with numerous small endothelial plates, each with an oval flattened nucleus. The spaces of this spongy substance are lymph spaces, and contain the glands and the blood-vessels (Leopold).

357. The glands — **glandulæ uterinæ** — are short tubular glands lodged in the mucous membrane and opening into the uterine cavity. During puberty their number and their size increase considerably, new glands being formed by the ingrowth of the surface epithelium into the mucous membrane (Kundrat and Engelmann). During menstruation, and especially during pregnancy, they greatly increase in length. They are more or less wavy and branched at the bottom. A delicate membrana propria forms the boundary of the tube; a distinct lumen is seen in the middle, and this is lined with a single layer of ciliated columnar epithelium (Allen Thomson, Nylander, Friedländer, and others).

358. During menstruation the thickness of the mucous membrane increases, the epithelium of the surface and of the greater part of the glands being destroyed by fatty degeneration, and finally altogether detached. Afterwards its restitution takes place from the remnant in the depth of the glands. But according to J. Williams and also Wyder, the greater part of the mucous membrane, in addition to the epithelium, is destroyed during menstruation.

The muscular coat forms the thickest part of the wall of the uterus; it is composed entirely of the non-striped variety.

In the cornua uteri of mammals the muscular coat is generally composed of an inner thicker circular and an outer thinner longitudinal stratum, a few oblique bundles passing from the latter into the former. In the human uterus the muscular coat is composed of an outer thin longitudinal, a middle thick layer of circular bundles, and an inner thick one of oblique and circular bundles. Within these layers the bundles form plexuses.

359. The **arterioles** in the cervix and their capillaries are distinguished by the great thickness of their wall. The mucous membrane contains the *capillary networks.* These discharge their blood into veins situated in the muscular coat. Here the *veins* are very numerous and arranged in *dense plexuses,* those of the outer and inner stratum being smaller than those of the middle stratum, where they correspond to huge irregular sinuses, the bundles of muscular tissue of the muscular coat giving special support to these sinuses. Hence the plexus of venous sinuses of the middle stratum represents a sort of *cavernous tissue.*

360. The **lymphatics** are very numerous; in the connective tissue of the muscular coat are lymph sinuses and lymph clefts forming an intercommunicating system; they take up the lymph sinuses of the mucous membrane above mentioned, and on the other hand lead into a plexus of efferent lymphatic vessels with valves, situated in the subserous connective tissue.

The **nerves** entering the mucous membrane are connected with ganglia. According to Lindgren, there is in the mucous membrane a plexus of non-medullated nerve fibres which, near the epithelium, break up into their constituent primitive fibrillæ.

361. (4) **The vagina.**—The epithelium lining the mucous membrane is a thick, stratified pavement epithelium. The superficial part of the mucous membrane—*i.e.* the mucosa—is a dense, fibrous connective tissue with numerous networks of elastic fibres; it projects into the epithelium in the shape of numerous long, simple or compound papillæ, each with a single or complex loop of capillary blood-vessels. The mucosa with the covering epithelium projects above

the general surface in the shape of longer or shorter, conical or irregular, pointed or blunt, permanent folds—the rugæ. These contain a plexus of large veins, between which are bundles of non-striped muscular tissue; hence they resemble a sort of cavernous tissue.

Outside of the mucosa is the loose submucosa, containing a second venous plexus; its meshes are elongated and parallel to the long axis of the vagina. Outside of the submucous tissue is the muscular coat, consisting of an inner circular and an outer longitudinal stratum of non-striped muscular tissue. Oblique bundles pass from one stratum into the other. From the circular stratum bundles may be traced into the submucosa and mucosa. A layer of fibrous tissue forms the outer boundary of the wall of the vagina, and in it is the most conspicuous plexus of veins, the plexus venosus vaginalis. This plexus also contains bundles of non-striped muscular tissue, and therefore resembles a cavernous tissue (Gussenbaur). It is not quite definitely ascertained whether or not there are secreting glands in the mucous membrane of the vagina. Von Preuschen and also Hennig described tubular glands in the upper part of the fornix and in the introitus vaginæ.

The lymphatics form plexuses in the mucosa, submucosa, and the muscular coat. The first are small vessels, the second are larger than the third and possess valves. The efferent vessels form a rich plexus of large trunks with saccular dilatations in the outer fibrous coat.

There are in the mucous membrane solitary lymph follicles and diffuse adenoid tissue (Loevenstein).

Numerous ganglia are contained in the nerve plexus belonging to the muscular coat.

End bulbs in connection with the nerve fibres of the mucosa have been mentioned in Chapter XV.

362. (5) **The urethra.**—The structure of the female urethra is similar to that of the male, except that the lining epithelium is a sort of stratified transitional epithelium, the superficial cells being short, columnar, or club-shaped ; underneath this layer are several layers of polyhedral, or cubical cells. Near the orificium externum the epithelium is stratified pavement epithelium.

The muscular coat is composed of an inner longitudinal, and an outer circular, layer of non-striped muscular tissue.

363. (6) **The nymphæ, clitoris, and vestibulum.**—These are lined with thick stratified epithelium; underneath is a fibrous connective-tissue mucous membrane, extending into the epithelium in the shape of cylindrical papillæ with capillary loops and nerve endings (end bulbs). The nymphæ contain large sebaceous follicles, but no hairs.

The nymphæ contain a plexus of large veins with bundles of non-striped muscular tissue; hence it resembles a cavernous tissue (Gussenbaur). The corpora cavernosa of the clitoris, the glans clitoridis, and the bulbi vestibuli, correspond to the analogous parts in the penis of the male. The glands of Bartholin correspond in structure to the glands of Cowper in the male.

CHAPTER XXXV.

THE MAMMARY GLAND.

364. This, like other glands, consists of a framework and parenchyma. The former is lamellar fibrous connective tissue subdividing the latter into lobes and lobules and containing a certain amount of elastic fibres. In some animals (rabbit, guinea-pig) there are also small bundles of non-striped muscular tissue. From the interlobular septa fine bundles of fibrous tissue with branched connective-tissue corpuscles pass between the alveoli of the gland substance. The amount of this interalveolar tissue varies in different places, but in the active gland is always relatively scanty.

Migratory or lymph corpuscles are to be met with in the interalveolar connective tissue of both active and resting glands. In the latter they are more numerous than in the former. According to Creighton, they are derived, in the resting gland, from the epithelium of the gland alveoli. Granular large yellow (pigmented) nucleated cells occur in the connective tissue, and also in the alveoli of the resting gland, and Creighton considers them both identical, and derived from the alveolar epithelium. And according to this author, the production of these cells would constitute the principal function of the resting gland.

The large *ducts* as they pass from the gland to the nipple acquire a thick sheath, containing bundles of non-striped muscular tissue. These latter are derived from the bundles of non-striped muscular tissue present in the skin of the nipple of the breast.

The small ducts in the lobules of the gland tissue possess a membrana propria, and a lining—a single layer of longer or shorter columnar epithelial cells.

The terminal branches of the ducts—*i.e.* just before these latter pass into the alveoli—are lined with a single layer of flattened pavement epithelium cells; they are analogous to the intermediate portion of the ducts of the salivary glands (*see* Chap. XXIII.).

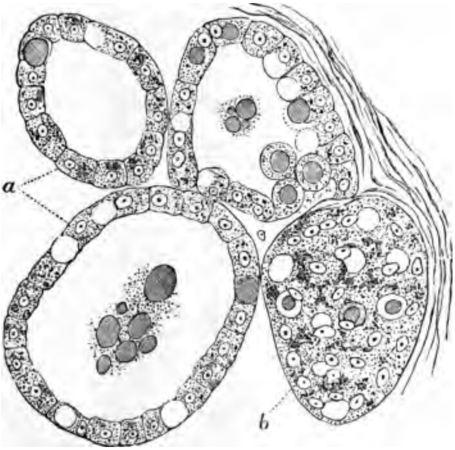


Fig. 250.—From a Section through the Mammary Gland of Cat in a late stage of pregnancy. (*Atlas.*)

a, Epithelial cells lining the gland-alveoli, seen in profile; *b*, the same, seen from the surface. Many epithelial cells contain an oil globule. In the cavity of some of the alveoli are milk globules and granular matter.

365. Each of these terminal branches divides and takes up several *alveoli* (Fig. 250). These are wavy tubes, saccular or flask-shaped. The alveoli are larger in diameter than the intralobular ducts. Each

alveolus in the active gland has a relatively large cavity, varying in different alveoli; it is lined with a single layer of polyhedral, granular-looking, or short columnar epithelial cells, each with a spherical nucleus; a membrana propria forms the outer limit. This membrana propria, like that of the salivary, lachrymal and other glands, is a basket-work of branched cells.

In the active gland each epithelial cell is capable of forming in its interior one or more smaller or larger oil globules. These may, and generally do, become confluent, and, pressing the nucleus towards one side of the cell, give to the latter the resemblance of a fat-cell. The oil globules finally pass out from the cell protoplasm into the lumen of the alveolus, and represent now the *milk globules.* The cell resumes its former solid character, and commences again to form oil globules in its protoplasm. The epithelial cells, as long as the secretion of milk lasts, go on again and again forming oil globules in the above manner without being themselves destroyed (Langer). The milk globules, when in the lumen of the alveoli, are enveloped in a delicate cuticle—the albumin membrane of Ascherson, which they receive from the cell protoplasm.

According to the state of secretion, most epithelial cells lining an alveolus may be in the condition of forming oil globules, or only some of them; and according to the rate in which milk globules are formed and carried away, the alveoli differ in the number of milk globules they contain.

According to Schmid, the epithelial cells, after having secreted milk globules for some time, finally break up, and are replaced by new epithelial cells derived by the division of the other still active epithelial cells.

366. The resting gland—*i.e.* the gland of a non-pregnant or non-suckling individual—contains, compara-

tively speaking, few alveoli, but a great deal of fibrous connective tissue ; the alveoli are all solid cylinders, containing within the limiting membrana propria masses of polyhedral granular-looking epithelial cells. During pregnancy these solid cylinders undergo multiplication, elongation, and thickening, owing to the rapid division of the constituent epithelial cells.

Finally, when milk secretion commences, the cells occupying the central part of the alveolus undergo the fatty degeneration just like the peripheral cells, but they—*i.e.* the central cells—are eliminated, while the peripheral ones remain. The central cells are the *colostrum corpuscles*, and consequently they are found in the milk of the first few days only.

367. Ordinary milk contains no colostrum corpuscles, but only milk globules of many various sizes, from the size of a granule to that of a globule several times as big as an epithelial cell of an alveolus of the milk gland. These large drops are produced by fusion of small globules after having passed out of the alveoli. Each milk globule is an oil globule surrounded, as stated above, by a thin albuminous envelope—Ascherson's membrane. The small bits of granular substance met with here and there are probably the remains of broken-down protoplasm of epithelial cells.

368. Each gland alveolus is surrounded by a dense *network of capillary blood-vessels.* The alveoli are surrounded by *lymph spaces* like those in the salivary glands (Coyne), and these spaces lead into *networks of lymphatic vessels* of the interlobular connective tissue.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

THE SKIN.

369. THE skin consists of the following layers (Fig. 252):—(1) The epidermis; (2) the corium, or cutis vera, with the papillæ; (3) the subcutaneous tissue, with the adipose layer or the adipose tissue.

370. (1) The **epidermis** (Fig. 25), in all its constituent elements, has been minutely described in Chapter III. Its thickness varies in different parts, and is chiefly dependent on the variable thickness of the stratum corneum. This is of great thickness in the palm of the hand and the sole of the foot. The stratum Malpighii fits into the depressions between the papillæ of the corium as the interpapillary processes. The presence of prickle cells, of pigment granules, and of branched interstitial nucleated cells, etc., has been mentioned in Chapter III.

There occur in the stratum Malpighii migratory cells of granular aspect; they appear to migrate from the papillary layer of the corium into the stratum Malpighii (Biesiadecki).

In the coloured skin—*e.g.* of the negro—pigment granules are abundant in the cell substance of the stratum Malpighii, especially in the deeper layers; but there is present an almost continuous layer of pigment in the superficial layers of the stratum corneum (Fig. 251).

371. (2) The **corium** is a dense feltwork of bundles of fibrous connective tissue, with a large admixture of networks of elastic fibres. From the

surface of the corium project small conical or cylindrical *papillæ*. These are best developed in those parts where the skin is thick—*e.g.* volar side of hand and foot, scalp, lips of mouth, etc. Between the surface of the corium and the epidermis there is a basement membrane. Migratory cells, with and without pigment granules in their interior, are met with, especially in the superficial part of the corium; they, as well as the fixed or branched connective-tissue corpuscles (see par. 40), and other structures, as vessels and nerves, lie in the interfascicular spaces.

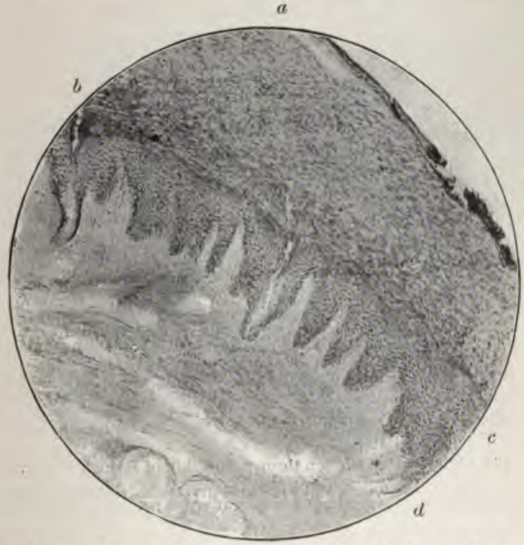


Fig. 251.—From Vertical Section through Epidermis of Skin of Finger of Negro. (*Photo. Moderate magnification.*)

a, Surface of stratum corneum, much pigmented; *b*, stratum corneum; *c*, stratum Malpighii, containing pigment in its cells; *d*, corium with papillæ extending into the stratum Malpighii.

372. (3) The superficial part of the **subcutaneous tissue** insensibly merges into the deep part of the corium ; it consists of bundles of fibrous connective tissue aggregated into trabeculæ crossing one another and interlacing in a complex manner. Numerous elastic fibres are attached to these trabeculæ. It contains groups of fat cells, in many places arranged as more or less continuous lobules of fat tissue, forming the *stratum adiposum*. These lobules are separated by septa of fibrous connective tissue ; their structure and development, and the distribution of the blood-vessels amongst the fat cells, have been described (Fig. 41, and on pp. 55 and 56). The deep part of the subcutaneous tissue is loose in texture, and contains the large vascular trunks and big nerve branches.

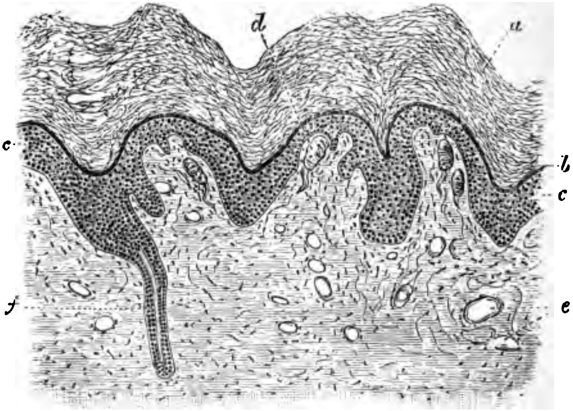


Fig. 252.—Vertical Section through the Skin of Human Finger.

a, Stratum corneum ; *b*, stratum lucidum ; *c*, stratum Malpighii ; *d*, Meissner's, or tactile corpuscle ; *e*, blood-vessels cut across ; *f*, sudoriferous canal or duct.

373. The superficial part of the subcutaneous

tissue, or, as some have it, the deep part of the corium, contains the sudoriparous or *sweat glands*. Each gland is a single tube coiled up into a dense mass of about $\frac{1}{60}$ of an inch in diameter—in some places, as in the axilla, reaching as much as six times this size. From each gland a duct—the *sudoriferous canal*—passes through the corium in a slightly wavy and vertical direction towards the epidermis; it penetrates more or less spirally through the interpapillary process of the stratum Malpighii and the rest of the epidermis, and appears with an open mouth on the free surface of the skin.

The total number of sweat glands in the human skin has been computed by Krause to be over two millions; but it varies greatly in different parts of the body, the largest number occurring in the palm of the hand, the next in the sole of the foot, the next on the dorsum of the hand and foot, and the smallest in the skin of the dorsum of the trunk.

374. The sudoriferous canal and the coiled tube possess a distinct lumen; this is lined with a delicate cuticle, especially marked in the sudoriferous canal and in the commencement of the coiled tube. In the epidermis the lumen bordered by this cuticle is all that is present of the sudoriferous canal. It receives a continuation from the deep layers of the stratum Malpighii and from the basement membrane; the former is the lining epithelium, the latter the limiting membrana propria of the sudoriferous canal. The epithelium consists of two or three layers of small polyhedral cells, each with a spherical or oval nucleus.

375. The structure of the sudoriferous canal is, then, a limiting membrana propria, an epithelium composed of two or three layers of polyhedral cells, an internal delicate membrane, and, finally, the central cavity, or lumen.

The first part—about one-third or one-fourth—

of the coiled tube (Fig. 253) is of the same structure, and is directly continuous with the sudoriferous canal, with which it is identical, not only in structure, but in size. The remainder of the coiled tube—*i.e.* the distal part—is larger in diameter, and differs in these essential respects, that its epithelium is a single layer of transparent columnar cells, and that there is between this and the limiting membrana propria a *layer of non-striped muscle cells* (Kölliker) arranged parallel with the long axis of the tube. In some places, as in the palm of the hand and foot, in the scrotum, the nipple of the breast, the scalp, but especially in the axilla, this distal portion of the coiled tube is of very great length and breadth, and its epithelial cells contain a variable amount of granules.

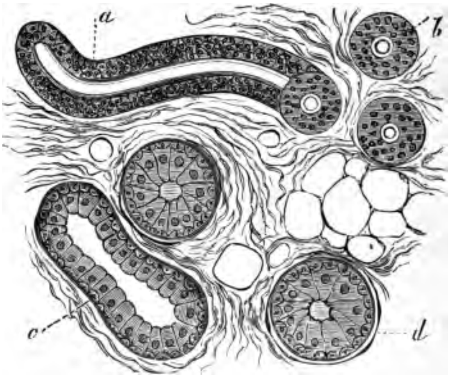


Fig. 253.—From a Section through Human Skin, showing the sweat gland tubes cut in various directions. (*Atlas.*)

a, First part of the coiled tube seen in longitudinal section; *b*, the same seen in cross-section; *c*, distal part seen in longitudinal section; *d*, the same seen in cross-section.

It appears to me that the cells resemble in this respect those of the serous salivary glands and the chief cells of the gastric glands (Langley), inasmuch as they produce in their interior larger or smaller granules which are used up during secretion, from the periphery towards the lumen.

376. The **ceruminous glands** of the meatus auditorius externus are of the same structure as the distal portion just described, except that the inner part of the cell protoplasm of the epithelium contains yellowish or brownish pigment, found also in their secretion—*i.e.* in the wax of the ear.

Around the anus there is an elliptical zone, in the skin of which are found large coiled gland tubes—the *circum-anal glands* of A. Gay—which are identical in structure with the distal portion of the sweat gland-tubes.

377. The sweat gland develops as a solid cylindrical outgrowth of the stratum Malpighii of the epidermis, which gradually elongates till it reaches the superficial part of the subcutaneous tissue, where it commences to coil. The lumen of the tube is of later appearance. The membrana propria is derived from the tissue of the cutis, but the epithelium and muscular layer are both derived from the original outgrowth of the epidermis.

378. The **hair-follicles** (Fig. 254).—The skin almost everywhere contains cylindrical *follicles*, planted more or less near to one another, and in groups. In each of them is fixed the *root of a hair*; that part of the hair which projects beyond the general surface of the skin is the *shaft*.

A very few places contain no hair follicles, such, for instance, as the volar side of the hand and foot, and the skin of the penis.

In size, the hairs and hair-follicles differ in different parts. Those of the scalp, the cilia of the eyelids, the hairs of the axilla and pubic region, those of the male whiskers and moustache, are coarse and thick, while the hairs of other places—*e.g.* the outer surface of the eyelids, the inside of the arm and forearm, etc.—are very minute; but as regards structure, they are all very much alike.

379. A complete hair and hair-follicle—that is, the papillary hair of Unna—shows the following structure:—

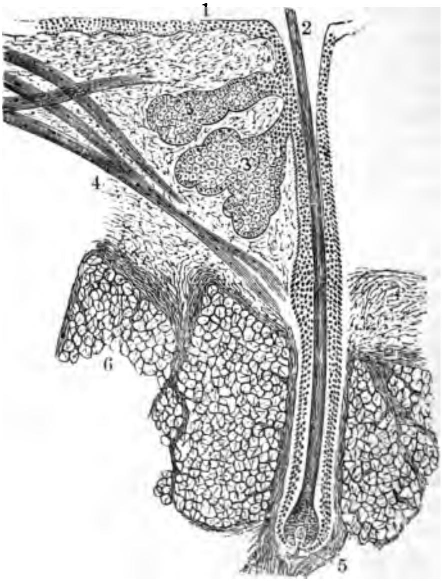


Fig. 254.—Longitudinal Section through a Human Hair. (*Atlas.*)

1, Epidermis; 2, mouth of hair follicle; 3, sebaceous follicle; 4, musculus arrector pili; 5, papilla of hair; 6, adipose tissue.

The *hair-follicle.* Each hair-follicle commences on the free surface of the skin with a funnel-shaped opening or *mouth;* it passes in an *oblique* direction through the corium into the subcutaneous tissue, in whose middle strata—*i.e.* in the stratum adiposum—it terminates with a slightly enlarged extremity, with which it is invaginated over a relatively small fungus-shaped *papilla.* This latter is of fibrous tissue, containing numerous cells and a loop of capillary blood-vessels.

Minute hairs do not reach with their follicles to such a depth as the large coarse hairs, the former not extending generally much farther than the deep part of the corium. Degenerating and imperfect hairs (see below) also do not reach to such a depth as the perfect large hair-follicles. In individuals with "woolly" hair—*e.g.* the negro race (C. Stewart), and in animals with "woolly" hair, such as the fleece of sheep—the deep extremity of the hair-follicle is curved, sometimes even slightly upwards.

380. The structure of a hair-follicle is as follows (Fig. 255): There is an outer coat composed of fibrous tissue; this is the fibrous coat of the *hair-sac.* It is merely a condensation of the surrounding fibrous tissue, and is continuous with the papilla at the extremity of the hair-follicle. About the end of the hair-follicle, or sometimes as much as in the lower fourth, there is inside of this fibrous layer of the hair-sac a single continuous layer of transversely or *circularly-arranged spindle-shaped cells,* each with an oval flattened or staff-shaped nucleus, completely resembling, and generally considered to be, non-striped muscle-cells. Inside of this layer of the hair-sac is a glassy-looking, hyaline, basement membrane, which is not very distinct in minute hairs, but is sufficiently conspicuous in large adult hair-follicles. This *glassy membrane,* as it is called, is a direct continuation of the basement membrane of the surface of the corium, and it can be traced as a delicate membrane also over the surface of the hair-papilla.

381. Next to the glassy membrane is the *outer root-sheath*, the most conspicuous part of the hair-follicle. It consists of a thick stratified epithelium of exactly the same nature as the stratum Malpighii of the epidermis, with which it is directly continuous, and from which it is developed. In the outer root-sheath the layer of cells next to the glassy membrane is columnar, just like the deepest layer of cells in the stratum Malpighii; then follow inwards several layers of polyhedral cells; and, finally, flattened nucleated scales form the innermost boundary of the outer root-sheath. The stratum granulosum of the stratum Malpighii is not continued beyond the mouth of the hair-follicle, but there it is generally very marked. The outer root-sheath becomes greatly attenuated at the papilla—in fact, it is there continuous with the cells constituting the hair-bulb.

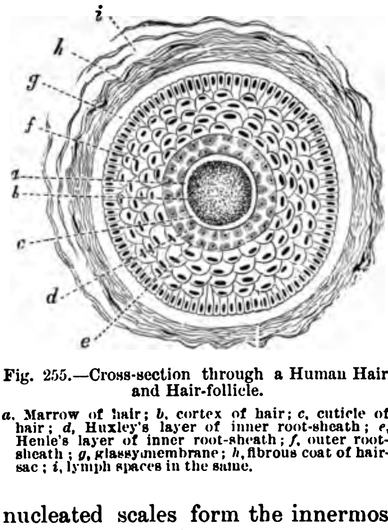


Fig. 255.—Cross-section through a Human Hair and Hair-follicle.

a, Marrow of hair; *b*, cortex of hair; *c*, cuticle of hair; *d*, Huxley's layer of inner root-sheath; *e*, Henle's layer of inner root-sheath; *f*, outer root-sheath; *g*, glassy membrane; *h*, fibrous coat of hair-sac; *i*, lymph spaces in the same.

382. The centre of the hair-follicle is occupied by the *root of the hair*, which terminates with an enlarged extremity—the *hair-bulb*; this grasps the whole papilla. The hair-bulb is composed of polyhedral epithelial cells, separated from one another by cement substance, and continuous with the cells of the ex-

tremity of the outer root-sheath, from which they originate in the first instance; just over the papilla there is a *special row of short columnar cells*, which are in an active state of multiplication, in consequence of which new cells are constantly being formed over the papilla. As a result of this there is a gradual pushing outwards, within the cavity of the hair-follicle, of the cells previously formed; these cells form the hair itself. Nearest to the papilla all the cells of the hair are polyhedral, farther outwards—*i.e.* towards the surface of the skin—they become more elongated and spindle-shaped, and constitute the cells of the hair-substance; except in the very centre of the hair, where they remain polyhedral, so as to represent the cells of the *marrow of the hair*, and in the periphery of the hair, where they remain more or less polyhedral, so as to form the *inner root-sheath.*

383. The **root of the hair,** except at the hair-bulb, shows the following parts: The *substance of the hair*, *the cuticle*, and the *inner root-sheath.* The substance of the hair is composed of the *hair-fibres*—*i.e.* long thin fibres, or narrow long scales, each composed of hyaline horny substance, and possessed of a thin staff-shaped remnant of a nucleus. These are held together by a certain amount of interstitial cement substance. Towards the bulb they gradually change into the spindle-shaped cells above mentioned. They can be isolated by strong acids and alkalies. In pigmented hairs there occur numerous *pigment granules between* the hair-fibres, but also *diffused pigment in* their substance. The same is noticed with reference to the hair-bulb—namely, pigment granules being present in the intercellular cement, and pigment also in the cell substance. In the centre of many hairs is a cylindrical *marrow*, containing generally one row of polyhedral cells, which are, to a great extent, filled with air.

384. On the surface of the hair-substance is a thin *cuticle*, a single layer of horny non-nucleated hyaline scales arranged more or less transversely; they are imbricated, and, according to the degree of imbrication, the cuticle shows more or less marked projections, which give to the circumference of the hair the appearance of minute teeth, like those of a saw.

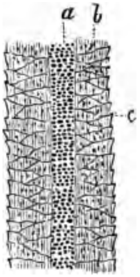


Fig. 256.—Longitudinal View of the Shaft of a Pigmented Human Hair.

a, Marrow of hair; *b*, fibres of hair-substance; *c*, cuticle.

385. The inner root-sheath in well-formed, thick hairs is very distinct, and consists of a delicate *cuticle* next to the cuticle of the hair; then an *inner*, or *Huxley's*, *layer*, which is a single, or sometimes double, layer of horny cubical cells, each with a remnant of a nucleus; and, finally, an *outer*, or *Henle's*, *layer*—a single layer of non-nucleated horny cubical cells.

The **shaft of the hair** (Fig. 256), or the part projecting over the free surface of the skin, is of exactly the same structure as the root, except that it possesses no inner root-sheath.

386. As mentioned above, at the hair-bulb the polyhedral cells constituting this latter gradually pass into the different parts of the hair—*i.e.* marrow-substance, cuticle, and inner root-sheath—and the continual new production of cells over the papilla causes a gradual progression and conversion of the cells, and a corresponding growth in length of the hair.

Pigmented hairs, as mentioned above, contain pigment granules between—*i.e.* in the interstitial substance cementing together—the hair-fibres, and diffuse pigment in their substance. According to the amount of these pigments, but especially of the interstitial *pigment* granules (Pincus), the colour of the hair is of a greater or lesser dark tint. In red hairs there is chiefly diffuse pigment. In white or albino hairs neither the one nor the other pigment is present; in grey there is air at least in the superficial layers of the hair substance, besides absence of pigment.

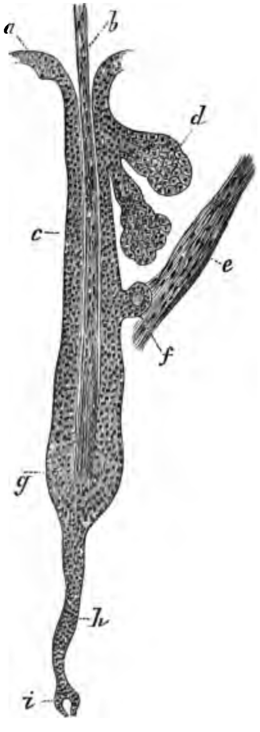


Fig. 257.—From a section through Human Scalp, showing a degenerating hair. (*Atlas.*)

a, Epidermis; *b*, hair; *c*, outer root-sheath of hair follicle; *d*, sebaceous follicle; *e*, arrector pili; *f*, cyst grown out of the outer root-sheath; *g*, hair-knob; *h*, new outgrowth of the outer root-sheath; *i*, new papilla.

Sleek hairs are circular, curly oval, in cross-section. Sleek hairs are implanted with their hair-bulb straight; in curly hairs the hair-bulb forms a more or less pronounced hook. This is the cause for the more or less spiral twisting of the hair-shaft of curly hairs during its growth outwards.

387. **New formation of hair** (Fig. 257).—Every hair, be it fine and short or thick and long, under normal conditions, has only a limited existence, for its hair-follicle, including the papilla, sooner or later undergoes degeneration, and subsequent to this a new papilla and a new hair are formed in its place. What happens is this—the lower part of the hair-follicle, including the papilla and hair-bulb, degenerate and are gradually absorbed. Then there

is left only the upper part of the follicle, and in the centre of this is the remainder—*i.e.* non-degenerated portion—of the hair-root. The fibres of this are at the extremity fringed out and lost amongst the cells of the outer root-sheath of the follicle. This represents the *hair-knob* (Henle). Now, from the outer root-sheath a solid cylindrical outgrowth of epithelial cells into the depth takes place ; against the extremity of this a new papilla is formed. In connection with this new papilla, and in the centre of that cylindrical outgrowth, a new hair-bulb and hair are formed, and as the latter gradually grows outwards towards the surface, it lifts, or rather pushes, the old hair—*i.e.* the hair-knob—out of the follicle. The outer part of the follicle of the old hair persists.

Thus we find in all parts of the skin where hairs occur complete or papillary hairs side by side with degenerating hairs or hair-knobs.

388. **Development of hair.**—In the human fœtus the hair-follicles make their first appearance about the end of the third month, as solid cylindrical outgrowths from the stratum Malpighii. This is the rudiment of the outer root-sheath. After having penetrated a short distance into the corium, this latter becomes condensed around it as the rudiment of the hair-sac, and at the distal extremity forms the papilla growing against the outer root-sheath and invaginating it. On the surface of the papilla a rapid multiplication of the epithelial cells of this extremity of the outer root-sheath takes place, and this forms the hair-bulb, by the multiplication of whose cells the hair and the inner root-sheath are formed. As growth and multiplication proceed at the hair bulb, so the new hair, with its pointed end, gradually reaches the outer surface. It does not at once penetrate the epidermis, but remains growing and burrowing its way for some time in the stratum corneum of the

epidermis in a more or less horizontal direction, till it finally lifts itself out of this beyond the free surface.

389. In many mammals occur, amongst ordinary hairs, special large hairs, with huge hair-follicles planted deeply into the subcutaneous tissue; such are the big hairs in the skin about the lips of the mouth in the dog, cat, rabbit, guinea-pig, mouse and rat, etc. These are the *tactile hairs* (Fig. 258). Their hair-follicle possesses a thick hair-sac, in which are contained large sinuses intercommunicating with one another and with the blood system; these sinuses are separated

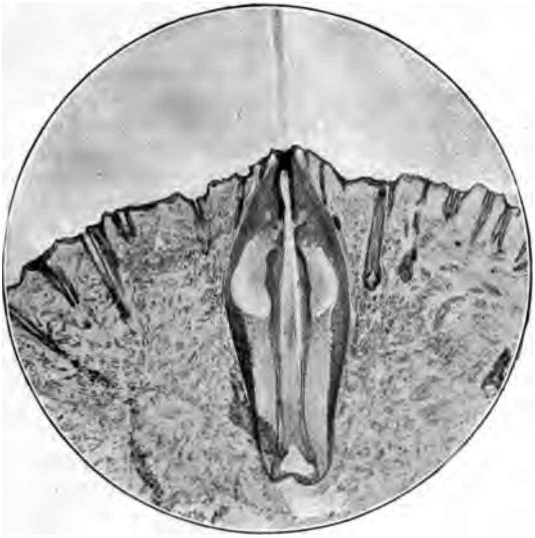


Fig. 258.—Section through the Skin of the Lip of a Rabbit's Mouth. (*Photograph. Low power.*)

Small ordinary hair-follicles, one large tactile hair and hair-follicle. The dark thick boundary is the tissue of the hair-sac. the clear parts inside are the masses of blood spaces, the dark line next to the hair itself is the outer root-sheath.

by trabeculæ of non-striped muscular tissue, and represent, therefore, a cavernous tissue. The papilla is large, and so is the outer root-sheath and the hair-root in all its parts. There are vast numbers of nerve-fibres, distributed and terminating amongst the cells of the outer root-sheath (Arnstein).

390. With each hair-follicle are connected one or two *sebaceous follicles*. These consist of several flask-shaped or oblong alveoli, joined into a common short duct opening into the hair-follicle near the surface—*i.e.* that part called the neck of the hair-follicle.

The alveoli have a limiting membrana propria; next to this is a layer of small polyhedral, granular-looking epithelial cells, each with a spherical or oval nucleus; next to this, and filling the entire cavity of the alveolus, are large polyhedral cells, each with a spherical nucleus; the cell substance is filled with minute oil globules, between which is left a sort of honeycombed reticulated stroma. The cells nearer to the centre of the alveolus are the largest. Towards the duct they become shrivelled up into an amorphous mass. The duct itself is a continuation of the outer root-sheath.

As multiplication goes on in the marginal layer of epithelial cells—*i.e.* those next the membrana propriæ—the products of this multiplication are gradually shifted forward towards the duct, and through this into the neck and mouth of the hair-follicle, where they constitute the elements of *sebum*.

There is a very characteristic misproportion between the size of the hair-follicle and that of the sebaceous gland in the embryo and newly-born, the sebaceous gland being there so large that it forms the most conspicuous part, the minute hairs (lanugo) being situated, as it were, in the duct of the sebaceous follicle.

391. In connection with each hair-follicle, espe-

cially where they are of good size—as in the scalp—there is a bundle, or rather group of bundles, of non-striped muscular tissue; this is the *arrector pili.* It is inserted in the hair-sac near the bulbous portion of the hair-follicle, and passes in an oblique direction towards the surface of the corium, grasping, as it were, on its way the sebaceous follicle, and terminating near the papillary layer of the surface of the corium. The arrector pili forms with the hair-follicle an acute angle—this latter being planted into the skin in an

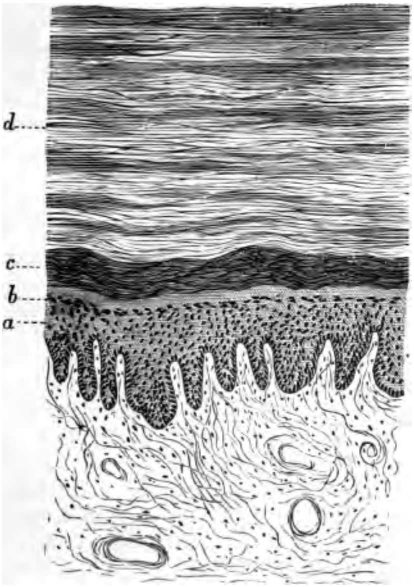


Fig. 259.—Vertical Section through the Human Nail and Nail-bed.

a, Stratum Malpighii of nail-bed; *b*, stratum granulosum of nail-bed; *c*, deep layers of nail substance; *d*, superficial layers of same.

oblique direction, as mentioned above—and consequently, when the arrector contracts, it has the effect of raising the hair-follicle and hair (cutis anserina—"goose's skin"), and of making the hair assume a more upright position (causes it, as we say, to "stand on end"). At the same time, it compresses the sebaceous follicle, and thus facilitates the discharge of the sebum.

392. The corium of the scrotum, of the nipple of the breast, of the labia pudendi majora, and of the penis, contains numbers of bundles of non-striped muscular tissue (Kölliker), independent of the hairs; these run in an oblique and horizontal direction, and form plexuses.

393. **The nails** (Fig. 259).—We distinguish the *body* of the nail from the *free margin* and from the *root*; the body is the nail proper, and is fixed on to the *nail-bed*, while the nail-root is fixed on the nail-matrix—*i.e.* the posterior part of the nail-bed. The nail is inserted, with the greater part of its lateral and with its posterior margin, in the *nail-groove*, a fold by which the nail-matrix passes into the surrounding skin.

394. The *substance* of the nail is made up of a large number of strata of homogeneous horny scales—the *nail-cells*—each with a staff-shaped remnant of a nucleus.

The corium of the nail-bed is highly vascular; it is firmly fixed by stiff bands of fibrous tissue on the subjacent periosteum; it is covered with a stratum Malpighii of the usual description, except that the stratum granulosum is absent in the nail-matrix, but is present in a rudimentary state in the rest of the nail-bed. The nail itself represents the stratum lucidum, of course of exaggerated thickness, situated over the stratum Malpighii of the nail-bed. There is no stratum corneum over the nail.

The stratum Malpighii and corium of the nail-bed are placed into permanent minute folds, and the nail possesses on its lower surface corresponding linear indentations.

395. In the fœtal nail-bed the stratum Malpighii is covered with the usual stratum lucidum and stratum corneum, but the former is the larger; by a rapid multiplication of the cells of the stratum Malpighii, and a conversion of its superficial cells into the scales of the stratum lucidum, the fœtal nail is produced. At this early stage the nail is covered by stratum corneum. By the end of the fifth month the nail margin breaks through this stratum corneum, and by the seventh month the greater part of the nail has become clear of it.

396. **The blood-vessels of the skin.**—The blood-vessels are arranged in different systems for the different parts of the skin (Tomsa):—

(*a*) There is, first, the vascular system of the adipose tissue, differing in no way from the distribution of blood-vessels in fat tissue of other places.

(*b*) Then there is the vascular system of the hair-follicle. The papilla has a capillary loop, or rather a minute arteriole, a capillary loop, and a descending vein, and the fibrous tissue of the hair-sac possesses capillaries arranged as a network with elongated meshes, with its afferent arteriole and efferent vein.

(*c*) The sebaceous follicle has its afferent arteriole and efferent vein, and capillary networks surrounding the alveoli of the gland. The arrector pili and other bundles of non-striped muscular tissue possess capillary networks with elongated meshes.

(*d*) The sweat glands have an afferent arteriole, from which proceeds a very rich network of capillaries, twining and twisting round the gland-tube. The duct possesses its separate afferent arteriole and capillaries, forming elongated meshes.

(*e*) The last arterial branches are those that reach the surface of the corium, and there break up into a dense capillary network with loops for the papillæ. In connection with these capillaries is a rich plexus of veins in the superficial layer of the corium.

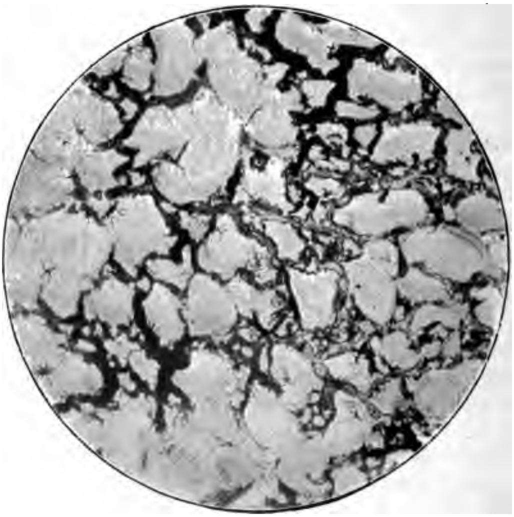


Fig. 260.—Skin of the Web of Frog of which the lymphatics had been injected, showing the dense plexus of lymphatic vessels. (*Photograph. Low power.*)

(*f*) In the nail-bed are dense networks of capillaries, with loops for the above-named folds.

397. **The lymphatics** (Fig. 260).—There are networks of lymphatic vessels in all strata of the skin; they are, more or less, of horizontal expansion, with oblique branches passing between them. Their wall is a single layer of endothelial cells, and some of them *possess* valves. Those of the surface of the corium

take up lymphatics of the papillæ. The subcutaneous lymphatics are the biggest. The fat tissue, the sweat-glands, and the hair-follicles possess their own lymphatic clefts and sinuses. The interfascicular spaces of the corium and subcutaneous tissue are directly continuous with the lymphatic vessels in these parts.

398. **The nerves.**—The nerve-branches break up into a dense plexus of fine nerve fibres in the superficial layer of the corium. This plexus extends horizontally, and gives off numerous elementary fibrils to the stratum Malpighii, in which they ascend vertically and in a more or less wavy fashion towards the stratum lucidum (Langerhans, Podkopaeff, Eberth, Eimer, Ranvier, and others). According to some, they terminate with a minute swelling; according to others, they form networks; according to more recent observations, some of the fibrils terminate also in the substance of the deep epithelial cells (*see* Chap. XIV.).

The subcutaneous nerve-branches of some places —palm of hand and foot, and skin of penis—give off single medullated nerve fibres, terminating in a Pacinian corpuscle, mentioned in a former chapter. In the volar side of the fingers and toes there occur in some of the papillæ of the corium the tactile or Meissner's corpuscles, each connected with one or two medullated nerve fibres, as described in a previous chapter. The outer root-sheath of the hair-follicles contains the terminations of fine nerve fibres, in the shape of primitive fibrillæ (Jobert, Bonnet, and Arnstein). According to Jobert, the nerve fibres entwine the hair-follicle in circular turns. The tactile hairs possess a greater supply of nerves than the ordinary hair-follicles.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

THE CONJUNCTIVA AND ITS GLANDS.

399. (1) **The eyelids** (Fig. 261).—The outer layer of the eyelids is *skin* of ordinary description; the inner is a delicate, highly vascular membrane—the *conjunctiva palpebræ.* This includes a firm plate—the *tarsal plate*—which is not cartilage, but very dense, white, fibrous tissue. In it lie embedded the *Meibomian glands.* These extend in each eyelid in a vertical direction from the distal margin of the tarsal plate to the free margin of the eyelid; in the posterior angle of this margin lies the opening or mouth of each of the Meibomian glands.

The *duct* of a Meibomian gland is lined with a continuation of the stratified pavement epithelium, lining the free margin of the lid; it passes in the tarsal plate toward its distal margin, and takes up on all sides short minute ducts, each of which becomes enlarged into a spherical, saccular, or flask-shaped *alveolus.* This is *identical in structure and secretion with the alveoli of the sebaceous follicles of the skin.*

400. The conjunctival layer is separated from the subcutaneous tissue of the skin layer of the eyelid by the *bundles of the sphincter orbicularis*—striped muscular tissue. Some bundles of this extend near the free margin of the lid, and represent what is known as the musculus ciliaris Riolani. This sends bundles around the mouth of the Meibomian ducts.

401. At the anterior angle of the free margin of the lid are the eyelashes or *cilia*, remarkable for their

thickness and rapid reproduction. Near the cilia, but towards the Meibomian ducts, open the ducts of peculiar large glands—the *glands of Mohl.* Each of these is a wavy or spiral tube, passing in a vertical

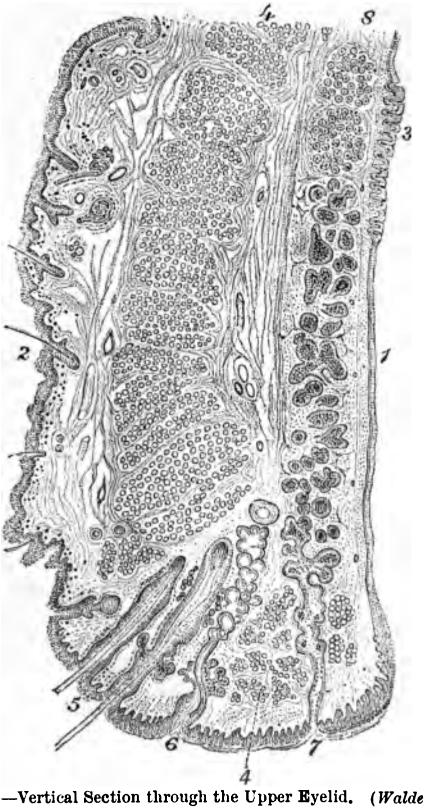


Fig. 261.—Vertical Section through the Upper Eyelid. (*Waldeyer.*)
1, Conjunctiva; 2, skin; 3, permanent folds of the conjunctiva; 4, bundles of the sphincter orbicularis; 5, eyelashes; 6, mouth of the gland of Mohl; 7, duct of the Meibomian gland; 8, tarsal glands.

direction from the margin of the lid towards its distal part; it completely coincides in structure with the large portion of a sweat gland—*i.e.* that part containing a columnar epithelial lining, and between this and the membrana propria a longitudinal layer of non-striped muscular cells.

The free margin is covered, as mentioned above, with stratified pavement epithelium, into which the mucous membrane extends in the shape of minute papillæ. In the conjunctiva palpebræ the epithelium is a thin stratified pavement epithelium; there are no papillæ, but the sub-epithelial mucosa—that is, the layer situated between the epithelium of the surface and the tarsal plate—contains a dense network of capillary blood-vessels.

402. Passing from the eyelids on to the eyeball, we have the continuation of the conjunctiva palpebræ—*i.e.* the fornix conjunctivæ—and, further, the conjunctiva fixed to the sclerotic, and terminating at the margin of the cornea—the conjunctiva bulbi. The epithelium covering the conjunctiva fornicis and conjunctiva bulbi is stratified epithelium, the superficial cells being short columnar; next to the fornix the superficial cells are beautiful columnar, and the mucosa underneath the epithelium is placed in regular folds (Stieda, Waldeyer). Towards the cornea the epithelium of the conjunctiva assumes the character of stratified pavement epithelium, and minute papillæ extend into it from the mucosa.

403. The mucous membrane is fibrous tissue, containing the networks of capillary blood-vessels.

Into the fornix lead minute mucous glands, embedded in the conjunctiva fornicis; they are the *glands of Krause.* Similar glands exist in the distal portion of the tarsal plate.

404. The **blood-vessels** of the conjunctiva terminate as the capillary network of the superficial

layer of the mucosa, and as capillary networks for the Meibomian glands, Krause's gland, etc. Around the corneal margin the conjunctival vessels are particularly dense, and loops of capillaries extend from it into the very margin of the cornea.

405. The **lymphatics** form a superficial and deep network. Both are connected by short branches. The deep vessels are possessed of valves. The superficial plexus is densest at the limbus corneæ, and they are in direct connection with the interfascicular lymph clefts, both of the sclerotic and cornea. In the margin of the lid the superficial lymphatics of the skin anastomose with those of the conjunctiva.

Lymph follicles occur in groups in the conjunctiva of many mammals about the inner angle of the eye. In the lower eyelid of cattle they are very conspicuous, and known as the glands of Bruch. They are also well marked in the third lid of many mammals.

According to Stieda and Morano, isolated lymph follicles occur also in the human conjunctiva.

406. The **nerves** are very numerous in the conjunctiva; they form plexuses of non-medullated fibres underneath the epithelium. From these plexuses fine fibrils pass into the epithelium of the surface, between whose cells they terminate as a network (Helfreich, Morano). End bulbs of Krause occur in great numbers in man and calf. They have been mentioned in a former chapter.

407. (2) The **lachrymal glands** are identical in structure with the serous or true salivary glands. The arrangement of the connective-tissue stroma, the nature and structure of the ducts—especially of the intralobular ducts—and alveoli, the distribution of blood-vessels and lymphatics, are exactly the same as in the true salivary glands. Reichel has found that the epithelial cells lining the alveoli are well defined, conical or cylindrical, transparent, and slightly

granular during rest; but during secretion they grow smaller, more opaque and more granular, their outlines are not well defined, and the nucleus becomes more spherical and placed more centrally.

408. In most mammals there is in the inner angle of the eye, and closely placed against the surface of the eyeball, a gland called *Harder's gland.* According to Wendt, this is either a true serous gland, like the lachrymal—as in the ox, sheep, and pig—or it is identical in structure with a sebaceous gland, as in the mouse, rat, and guinea-pig; or it consists of two portions, one of which (white) is identical with a sebaceous, while the other (rose-coloured) is a true serous gland; such is the case in the rabbit and hare According to Giacomini, a rudiment of Harder's gland exists also in the ape and man.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

CORNEA, SCLEROTIC, LIGAMENTUM PECTINATUM AND CILIARY MUSCLE.

409. I. THE **cornea** (Fig. 262) of man and many mammals consists of the following layers, counting from front to back:—

(1) The *epithelium of the anterior surface* (*see* Fig. 26). This is a very transparent, stratified pavement epithelium, such as has been described in par. 22. It is directly continuous with the epithelium of the conjunctiva, but it is more transparent; in dark pigmented eyes of mammals the epithelium of the conjunctiva is also pigmented. In these cases the pigment, as a rule, does not pass beyond the margin of the cornea.

410. (2) Next follows a homogeneous elastic membrane, *Bowman's membrane*, or elastica anterior. It is best shown in the human eye, but is present, even though only rudimentary, in the eye of mammals.

(3) Then follows the *ground substance*, or substantia propria, of the cornea. This is composed of lamellæ of bundles of fibrous connective tissue. Neighbouring lamellæ are connected with one another by oblique bundles.

The fibre bundles within each lamella run parallel to the surface of the cornea, but may cross one another under various angles.

In the anterior layer of the ground substance some of the bundles pass through several lamellæ in an oblique manner; they represent the fibræ arcuatæ.

The fibrils within the bundles, and the bundles, and the lamellæ of bundles are held together by an interstitial, albuminous, semi-fluid cement substance, which, like other similar interstitial substances, belongs to the globulins, and is soluble in 10 per cent. saline solution (Schweigger Seidel). A few elastic fibrils are seen here and there. Between the lamellæ are left the lacunæ and canaliculi for the branched, flattened, nucleated, *corneal corpuscles*, described in a previous chapter (Figs. 37, 38). They anastomose with one another within the same plane, and also, to a limited degree, with those of neighbouring planes.

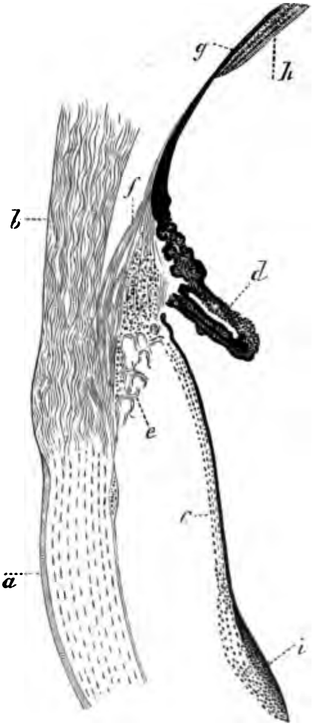


Fig. 262.—From a Vertical Section through the Membranes of the Eye of a Child. (*Atlas.*)

a, Cornea; *b*, sclerotic; *c*, iris; *d*, processus ciliaris; *e*, ligamentum pectinatum; *f*, ciliary muscle, its meridional bundles; *g*, choroid membrane; *h*, retina of the ora *serrata*; *i*, sphincter pupillæ in cross-*section.*

411. (4) The **membrana Descemeti**, or elastica posterior, is a resistant elastic membrane, conspicuous by its thickness in all corneæ.

(5) The posterior surface of this membrane is covered with

a mosaic of beautiful *polygonal endothelial cells*, each with an oval nucleus—the endothelium of Descemet's membrane. Under stimulation these cells contract. At first they appear slightly and numerously branched, but gradually their processes become longer and fewer, and ultimately they are reduced to minute clumps of nucleated protoplasm, each with a few long processes.

There are no blood-vessels in the normal cornea, except in fœtal life, when there is underneath the anterior epithelium a plexus of capillaries.

The lymphatics are represented as the intercommunicating lymph-canalicular system—*i.e.* the lacunæ and canaliculi of the corneal corpuscles ; and in connection with these are lymph channels lined with a continuous endothelium and containing the nerve bundles.

412. The **nerves** (Figs. 103, 105, 106) are distributed as the nerves of the anterior layers, and as those of the Descemet's membrane. The first form rich plexuses of fibrillated axis cylinders, with triangular nodal points (Cohnheim), in the anterior layers of the ground substance; from this plexus pass obliquely through Bowman's membrane short branches —the rami perforantes (Kölliker)—and these immediately underneath the epithelium break up into their constituent primitive fibrils, the latter coming off the former brush-like (Cohnheim). These primitive fibrillæ ultimately ascend into the anterior epithelium (Hoyer, Cohnheim, and others), where they branch, and nearly reach the free surface. They always run between the epithelial cells, and are connected into a network. According to some observers, they terminate with free ends, pointed or knobbed ; but according to others these apparent free ends are not in reality free endings (Figs. 107, 263 and 264).

413. The nerves of Descemet's membrane form also a plexus of non-medullated fibres in the posterior layers of the ground substance; from them come off vast numbers of primitive fibrillæ, running a more or less straight and long course, crossing one another often under right angles; they give off very fine fibrils, which are closely associated with the corneal corpuscles, without, however, really becoming continuous with their protoplasm.

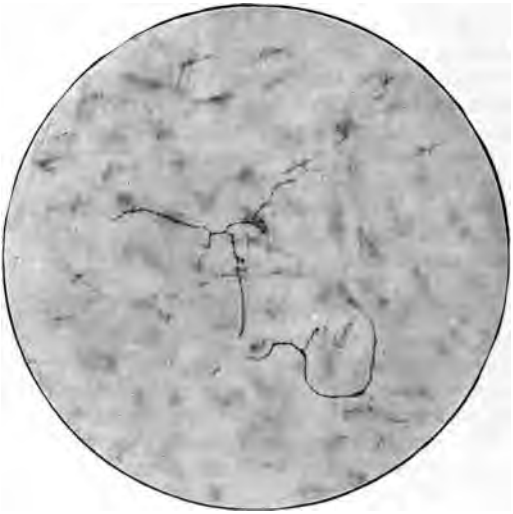


Fig. 263.—From a Horizontal Section through the Gold-stained Cornea of Rabbit; the corneal (branched) cells are faintly indicated, but the nerve fibrillæ are well marked, also their lateral branchlets, terminating apparently with a minute knob. (*Photograph. Moderate magnification.*)

414. II. The **sclerotic** consists of lamellæ of tendinous tissue. The bundles of fibrous tissue are *opaque* as compared with those of the cornea, although

they pass insensibly into them. There are lymph clefts between the lamellæ and trabeculæ, and in them lie the flattened connective-tissue corpuscles, which, in the dark eyes of some mammals only, contain pigment granules. Numerous elastic fibrils are met with in the inner layers of the sclerotic.

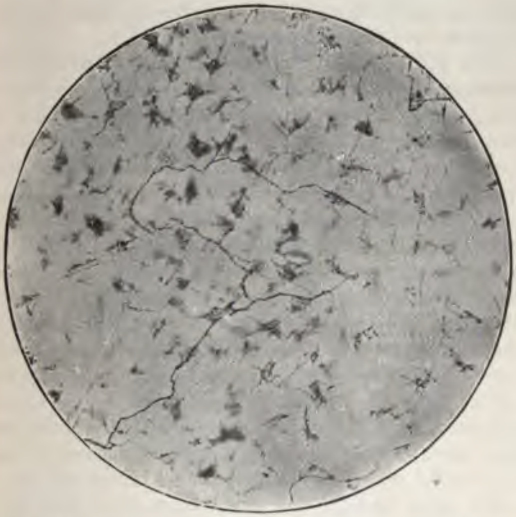


Fig. 264.—From the same preparation as in preceding figure, showing the fine Nerve Fibrils passing along the processes and bodies of the branched corneal corpuscles. (*Photograph. Moderate magnification.*)

415. Between the sclerotic and choroid membrane is a loose fibrous tissue, which acts also as the supporting tissue for the blood-vessels passing to and from the choroid. The part of this loose tissue next to the sclerotic, and forming part, as it were, of the sclerotic, contains, in dark eyes of mammals, numerous pigmented connective-tissue corpuscles ; it

is then called *lamina fusca*. The rest—*i.e.* next to the choroid membrane—is the supra-choroidal tissue.

416. There are blood-vessels in the sclerotic, which belong to it; they are arterioles, capillaries, and veins; in addition to these are the vascular branches passing to and from the choroid.

417. III. The **ligamentum pectinatum iridis** (*see* Fig. 262) is a conical mass of spongy tissue joining firmly the cornea and sclerotic to the iris and ciliary processes. It forms an intimate connection, on the one hand, with the junction of cornea and sclerotic, and on the other, with that of the iris and ciliary processes. This ligament is composed of trabeculæ and lamellæ of stiff elastic fibres, forming a continuity, on the one hand, with the lamina Descemeti of the cornea and the elastic fibres of the sclerotic, and on the other with the tissue of the ciliary border of the iris. The trabeculæ anastomose, so as to form a honeycombed plexus, and the spaces in this plexus are lined with a layer of flattened endothelial cells, directly continuous with the endothelium of Descemet's membrane on the one hand, and with the layer of endothelial cells covering the anterior surface of the iris on the other hand. In some mammals, the spaces in the ligamentum pectinatum near the iris are very considerable, and are called the spaces of Fontana.

The interlamellar and interfascicular lymph spaces of the sclerotic form an intercommunicating system.

The nerves form a dense plexus of non-medullated fibres in the tissue of the sclerotic (Helfreich).

At the point of junction of the cornea and sclerotic, but belonging to the latter, and in the immediate neighbourhood of the ligamentum pectinatum iridis, is a circular canal—the *canal of Schlemm;* this is lined with endothelium, and is considered by some (Schwalbe) as a lymphatic canal; by others (Leber) as a venous vessel.

418. IV. The **ciliary muscle** (Fig. 262), or tensor choroideæ, is fixed to this ligamentum pectinatum; it is composed of bundles of non-striped muscular tissue. This muscle consists of two parts: (*a*) one of circular bundles nearest to the iris—this is the portio Mülleri; (*b*) the greater part is composed of radiating bundles, passing from the ligamentum pectinatum in a meridional direction for a considerable distance backwards into the tissue of the choroid membrane. It occupies the space between the ligamentum pectinatum, sclerotic, ciliary processes, and the adjoining portion of the choroid membrane. The bundles of the muscle are arranged more or less in lamellæ; within each lamella they form plexuses.

A rich plexus of non-medullated nerve fibres, with groups of ganglion cells, belongs to the ciliary muscle.

CHAPTER XXXIX

IRIS, CILIARY PROCESSES AND CHOROID.

419. I. THE **iris** consists of the following layers :—

(1) The endothelium of the anterior surface : transparent, flattened, or polyhedral cells, each with a spherical or slightly oval nucleus; in dark-coloured eyes of man and mammals brown pigment granules are contained in the cell substance.

(2) A delicate hyaline basement membrane : it is continuous through the trabeculæ of the ligamentum pectinatum with the membrana Descemeti of the cornea.

(3) The substantia propria: this is the ground substance; it consists of fibrous connective tissue in bundles, accompanying the blood-vessels, which are very numerous in the tissue of the iris. Many connective-tissue corpuscles are found in the substantia propria; they are more or less branched, and many of them contain, in all but albino and blue eyes, yellowish-brown pigment granules. The depth of the colour varies according to the number of these pigmented connective-tissue cells, and to the amount of the pigment granules present in them.

(4) A hyaline delicate basement membrane limits the substantia propria on the posterior surface; this is an elastic membrane, and is continued over the ciliary processes and choroid as the *lamina vitrea.*

420. (5) The last layer is the epithelium of the posterior surface; this is a layer of polyhedral cells, filled with dark pigment granules, except in albinos,

where there are no pigment granules This endothelium is called the uvea, or tapetum nigrum. The interstitial cement substance between the cells is not pigmented, but transparent.

The name "uvea" is sometimes applied to the whole of the iris, ciliary processes, and choroid membrane.

In blue eyes the posterior epithelium is the only pigmented part of the iris, and so it is also in new-born children, whose iris appears blue. In all cases where the iris appears blue, this is due to the dark back —*i.e.* the pigmented epithelium of the posterior surface—being viewed through a dull layer—*i.e.* the substance of the iris.

421. Near the pupillary border the posterior section of the substantia propria contains a broad layer of circular bundles of non-striped muscular tissue: this is the *sphincter pupillæ.* In connection with this are bundles of non-striped muscular fibres, passing in a radiating direction towards the ciliary margin of the iris: these are the bundles of the *dilatator pupillæ*, forming a sort of thin membrane near the posterior surface of the iris (Henle and others). At the ciliary margin the bundles take a circular direction and form a plexus (Ivanoff).

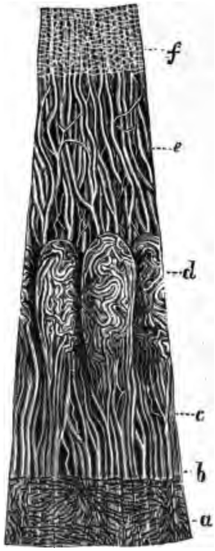


Fig. 265. — Blood-vessels (injected) of the Iris and Choroid Membrane of the Eye of a Child. (*Kölliker, after Arnold.*)

a, Capillaries of the choroid; *b*, ora serrata; *c*, blood-vessels connected with, *d*, those of the ciliary processes, and with *e*, those of the iris; *f*, capillary network of the pupillary sphincter.

422. The **blood-vessels** (Fig. 265) of the iris are very numerous. The arteries are derived from the circulus arteriosus iridis major, situated at the ciliary margin of the iris, and from the arteries of the ciliary processes. These arteries run in a radiating direction towards the pupillary margin, where they terminate in a dense network of capillaries for the sphincter pupillæ. But there are also numerous capillary blood-vessels of a more or less longitudinal direction near the posterior surface of the iris. The veins accompany the arteries, and both are situated in the middle stratum of the substantia propria.

In the sheath of the blood-vessels are *lymph clefts* and *lymph sinuses;* there appear to be no other lymphatics.

423. The **nerve fibres** are very numerous (Arnold, Formad), and in the outer or ciliary portion of the iris form a rich plexus, from which are derived : (*a*) networks of non-medullated fibres for the dilator pupillæ; (*b*) a network of fine non-medullated fibres for the anterior surface; and (*c*) a network of non-medullated fibres for the sphincter pupillæ.

The capillary blood-vessels are also accompanied by fine nerve fibres (A. Meyer), and, according to Faber, there exist ganglion cells in these nerve networks.

424. II. The **ciliary processes** are similar in structure to the iris, except, of course, that they do not possess an anterior endothelium or an anterior basement membrane. The *substantia propria* is fibrous tissue with elastic fibres and numerous branched cells, pigmented in dark (but not in blue) eyes. The posterior basement membrane is very thick, and is called the *lamina vitrea;* in it may be detected bundles of fine fibrils. It possesses permanent folds arranged in a network (H. Müller). The inside of it is covered with a layer of pigmented poly-

hedral epithelium, the *tapetum nigrum:* the cells are polygonal when viewed from the surface. The individual cells are separated by thin lines of a transparent cement substance. This pigmented epithelium is covered with a layer of transparent columnar

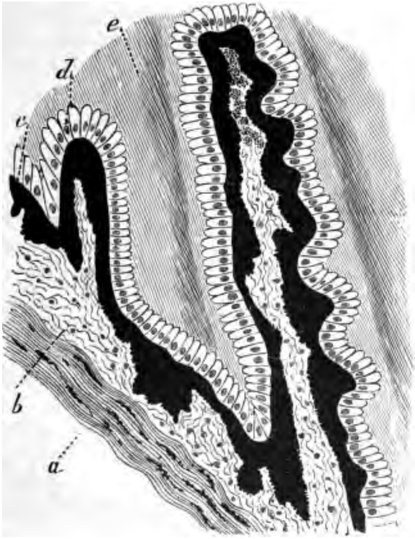


Fig. 266.—From a Vertical Section through the Ciliary Processes of the Ox's Eye. (*Atlas.*)

a, Fibrous tissue with pigmented cells; *b*, loose fibrous tissue forming the proper membrane of the ciliary process; *c*. pigmented epithelium covering the posterior surface of the ciliary process; *d*, epitheloid cells, forming the pars ciliaris retinæ covering the back of the ciliary processes; *e*, Zonula Zinnii, with bundles of fibres.

epitheloid cells, each with an oval nucleus. These are closely fixed on the tapetum nigrum, and are the continuation of the retina over the ciliary processes: this is the *pars ciliaris retinæ* (Fig. 266).

425. The arterial branches for the ciliary processes

and muscle are chiefly derived from the circulus arteriosus iridis major, and form a dense network of capillaries for the former; each ciliary process possesses a conical group of capillaries (Fig. 265).

426. III. The **choroid** membrane consists—counting from outwards, *i.e.* from the sclerotic, inwards, *i.e.* towards the retina—of the following layers:—

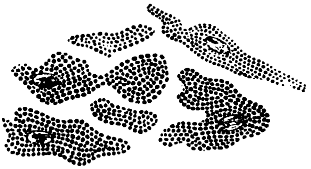


Fig. 267.—Pigmented Connective-tissue Cells of the Choroid Coat. (*Atlas.*)

(1) The membrana supra-choroidea. This is a continuation of the sclerotic, with which it is identical in structure; the spaces between its lamellæ are lined with endothelium, and represent lymph spaces (Schwalbe).

(2) Next follows an elastic layer which contains networks of elastic fibres, the branches of the arteries and veins, and, in its outer portion, pigmented cells (Fig. 267).

427. (3) Then follows the membrana chorio-capillaris, a dense network of capillary blood-vessels embedded in a tissue containing numerous branched and unbranched pigmented and unpigmented connective-tissue cells.

(4) The lamina vitrea; and, finally,

(5) The tapetum nigrum, or the pigmented epithelium, which, however, is considered part of the retina. In the region of the ora serrata of the retina—*i.e.* next to the ciliary processes—also this zone of the choroidea is lined with a layer of transparent, columnar, epitheloid cells, representing the pars ciliaris retinæ.

428. The arteriæ ciliares breves and recurrentes, situated in the outer part of the choroidal tissue, form

ultimately the dense networks of capillaries for the chorio-capillaries. The veins derived from this pass into the outer part of the choroid, where they anastomose so as to form the peculiar large veins, which are called the venæ vorticosæ.

In the eyes of some animals (cat, dog, sheep, ox) there exists a special layer of cells (cat, dog) or fibres (herbivora), which, owing to its capability of reflecting a great deal of light, is called the *tapetum lucidum* or membrana versicolor of Fielding. This layer when present is situated between the stroma of the choroid (layer 2) and the membrana choriocapillaris (layer 3).

CHAPTER XL.

THE LENS AND VITREOUS BODY.

429. (1) **The lens** consists of a thick, firm, elastic capsule and of the lens substance. The former shows fine longitudinal striæ, and diminishes in thickness towards the posterior pole of the lens. The surface of the capsule facing the anterior surface of the lens substance is lined with a single layer of polyhedral, granular-looking, epithelial cells, each with a spherical or oval nucleus. This epithelium stops as such at the margin of the lens, where its cells, gradually elongating, pass into the lens fibres. The nuclei of these lie in a curved plane belonging to the anterior half of the lens: this is the *nuclear zone.* The lens substance consists of the *lens fibres.* These are band-like, hexagonal in transverse section; their outline is beset with numerous fine ridges and furrows, which in neighbouring fibres, fitting the one into the other, form a firm connection between the fibres (Valentin, Henle, Kölliker, and others). The fibres of the peripheral portion are broader and thicker, and their substance is less firm than those of the centre—*i.e.* of the lens nucleus. The substance of the lens fibres is finely granular and delicately and longitudinally striated.

430. The lens fibres (Fig. 268) are arranged in concentric lamellæ, each consisting of a single layer of fibres joined by their broad surfaces. Each fibre is slightly enlarged at the extremities; and in each lamella the fibres extend from the anterior to the posterior surface. Their extremities are in contact

with the ends of the fibres of the same lamella in the *sutures*, or the rays of the so-called *lens stars*. In the lens of the newly-born child, the stars of both anterior and posterior lamellæ possess three such rays, while in the adult each of these rays has secondary rays. In these rays there is a homogeneous thin layer of an albuminous cement substance; a similar substance in minute quantity is also present between the lamellæ, and in it occur smaller or larger clefts and channels, which evidently carry the nutritious fluid for the lens fibres.

431. (2) The **vitreous body** is a fluid substance enclosed in a delicate hyaline capsule—the *membrana hyaloidea.* This membrane, at the margin of the fossa patellaris of the vitreous body—*i.e.* the fossa in which the lens is lodged—and without covering this fossa, passes as the zonula ciliaris, or zonula Zinnii, or *suspensory ligament* of the lens, to the margin of the latter, to which it is firmly adhering. So it adheres also to the surface of the ciliary processes. The zonula Zinnii is hyaline and firm, and is strengthened by numbers of bundles of minute stiff fibrils.

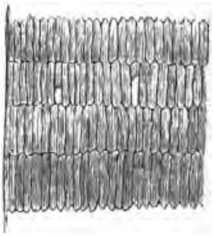


Fig. 268.—From a Section through the Lens of Dog. (*Atlas.*)

Showing four lamellæ; in each the component lens fibres are cut across; they appear as flattened hexagons.

Between the suspensory ligament of the lens, the margin of the lens and of the fossa patellaris is a circular lymph space, called the canalis Petiti.

Beneath the membrana hyaloidea are found isolated nucleated granular-looking cells (the sub-hyaloid cells of Ciaccio), possessed of amœboid movement (Ivanoff).

432. The substance of the corpus vitreum appears

differentiated by clefts, concentric in the peripheral, radiating in the central part (Brücke, Hannover, Bowman, Ivanoff, Schwalbe). But these do not contain any distinct membranous structures (Stilling, Ivanoff, Schwalbe).

The canalis hyaloideus, or canal of Stilling, extends from the papilla nervi optici to the posterior capsule of the lens, and is lined with a continuation of the membrana hyaloidea.

433. In the substance of the corpus vitreum occur isolated nucleated cells, possessed of amœboid movements, and some contain vacuoles, indicating commencing degeneration. They are all identical with white blood-corpuscles (Lieberkühn, Schwalbe).

Fine bundles of fibrils are occasionally seen in the substance of the vitreous body.

CHAPTER XLI.

THE RETINA.

434. The retina (Fig. 269) consists of the following layers, counting from inwards towards the choroid membrane: — (1) The membrana limitans interna, which is next to the membrana hyaloidea of the vitreous body; (2) the nerve fibre layer; (3) the layer of ganglion cells; (4) the inner granular or inner molecular layer; (5) the layer of inner nuclei; (6) the outer granular, or outer molecular, or internuclear layer; (7) the layer of outer nuclei; (8) the membrana limitans externa; (9) the layer of rods and cones; and (10) the pigmented epithelium of the retina, or the tapetum nigrum mentioned above (p. 439), which forms, at the

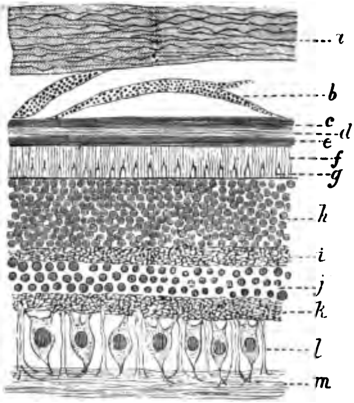


Fig. 269.—From a Transverse Section through the Eye of Sheep; peripheral portion of retina. (*Atlas.*)

a, Inner part of sclerotic; *b*, supra-choroidal (pigmented) lamellæ; *c*, *d*, layers of choroid coat; *e*, pigmented epithelium of retina; *f*, layer of rods; *g*, cones; *h*, layer of outer nuclei; *i*, outer molecular layer; *j*, layer of inner nuclei; *k*, inner molecular layer; *l*, layer of ganglion cells, with the radial or Müller's fibres between; *m*, layer of nerve fibres.

same time, the inner lining epithelium of the choroid membrane.

435. From this arrangement are excepted (*a*) the papilla nervi optici, (*b*) the macula lutea and fovea centralis retinæ, and (*c*) the ora serrata of the retina.

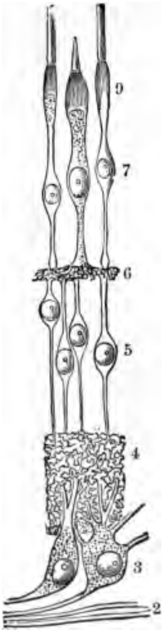


Fig. 270.—Diagram of the Nervous Elements of the Retina.

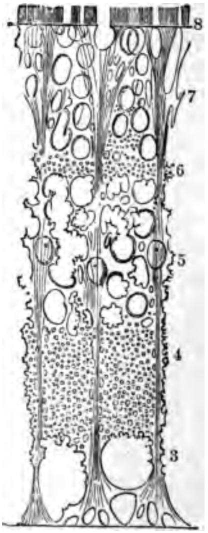


Fig. 271.—Diagram of the Connective-Tissue Substance of the same.

2, Nerve fibres; 3, ganglion cells; 4, inner molecular layer; 5, inner nuclear layer; 6, outer molecular layer; 7, outer nuclear layer; 8, **membrana limitans** externa; 9, rods and cones. (*Max Schultze.*)

(*a*) The papilla nervi optici, or the blind spot of the retina, represents the entrance of the optic nerve fibres into the retina; thence, as from a centre, they spread out in a radiating direction into the saucer-shaped retina, of which they form the internal layer. No other elements of the retina are present at the papilla, except a continuation of the limitans interna. At the papilla nervi optici the arteria and vena centralis nervi optici also enter, and spread out with their branches in the inner layers of the retina. A large lymph space is also found there.

(*b*) The macula lutea and fovea centralis will be considered after the various layers of the retina have been described.

(*c*) At the ora serrata all circular and nuclear elements of the retina—except the pigmented epithelium—and the nerve fibres, come to an end; but the limitans interna, with its peculiar radial or Müller's fibres, is continued over the ciliary processes in the shape of columnar epitheloid nucleated cells mentioned above: this is the pars ciliaris retinæ.

436. *Structure of the layers of the retina* (Figs. 270, 271).

(1) The **membrana limitans interna** is composed of more or less polygonal areas, which are the ends or bases of pyramidal, finely-striated fibres —the *radial fibres of Müller*. Each radial fibre passes from the limitans interna in a vertical direction through all layers to the limitans externa, and on its way gives off numerous lateral branchlets, fibrils and membranes, which anastomose with one another so as to form a honeycombed stroma or matrix for all cellular and nuclear elements of the retinal layers. In the nerve fibre layer the radial fibres are thickest, this being, in fact, the pyramidal basis; in the inner nuclear layer each possesses an oval nucleus.

437. (2) **The layer of nerve fibres.**—The optic nerve fibres at their entrance into the eyeball

lose their medullary sheath, and only the transparent axis cylinder is prolonged into the retina. In man, medullated nerve fibres in the retina are very exceptional; in the rabbit there are two bundles, whose fibres retain their medullary sheath in the retina (Bowman). The nerve fibres remain grouped in bundles in the retina, and even form plexuses. For obvious reasons, the number of nerve fibres in the nerve fibre layer diminishes towards the ora serrata.

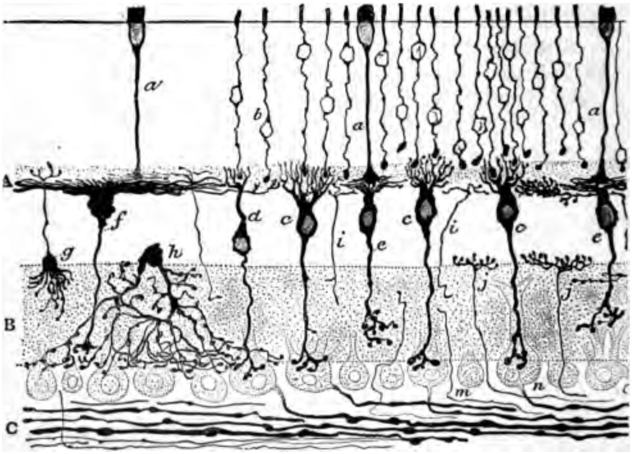


Fig. 272. — Section of Retina of Dog. (*After Cajal, from Quain's "Anatomy."*)

a, Cone fibre; *b*, rod fibre and nucleus; *c*, *d*, bipolar cells with inner nuclei, with vertical ramifications to receive the knobbed ends of the rod fibres, *e*, *f*, with flattened ramifications for the arborising ends of the cone fibres; *g*, ganglion cell sending an axon to the outer molecular layer; *h*, spongioblast; *i*, nerve fibres passing to the outer molecular layer; *j*, centrifugal nerve fibres passing into, and terminating in, inner molecular layer; *m*, nerve fibres passing to inner molecular layer; *n*, ganglion cells; A, outer molecular layer; B, inner molecular layer; C, nerve fibre layer.

438. (3) **The layer of ganglion cells.**—There is one stratum of these cells only, except in the *macula* lutea, where they form several strata. Each

cell is multipolar, and possessed of a large nucleus. One process is directed inwards and becomes the axon, being a fibre of the nerve fibre layer. Several branched processes or dendrites pass from the opposite side of the cell into the next outer layer—*i.e.* the inner molecular layer.

From the researches of Ramón y Cajal, it is clear that the dendrites terminate by arborisations or dendrons in the next or inner molecular layer (*see* Figs. 272, 273, and 274).

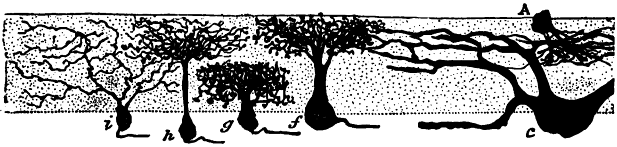


Fig.273.—From the Retina of Dog. (*After Cajal, from Quain's " Anatomy.*

A, Small amacrine (spongioblast) of the inner molecular layer; *c*, large ganglion cell; *f*, *g*, *h*, *i*, small ganglion cells arborising in the inner molecular layer.

The ganglion cells are separated from one another by the radial fibres of Müller.

439. (4) The **inner molecular layer** is a fine and dense reticulum of fibrils, with a small amount of granular matter between. The fibrils are connected with lateral branchlets of the radial fibres of Müller. This layer is, on account of its thickness, a conspicuous part of the retina. In lower vertebrates it appears stratified.

As mentioned just now, it contains the terminal arborisations of the dendrites of the ganglion cells.

440. (5) The **inner nuclear layer** contains in a honeycombed matrix of a hyaline stroma numerous nuclei, in two, three, or four layers. In the amphibian retina these form a larger number of layers. Some oblong nuclei of this layer belong, as has been mentioned above, to the radial fibres of Müller.

Next to the molecular layer are small nuclei belonging to flattened branched cells (Vintschgau), the *spongioblasts* of W. Müller. These cells have been shown by Golgi's method to be possessed of rich arborisations, which extend horizontally into the outer and inner

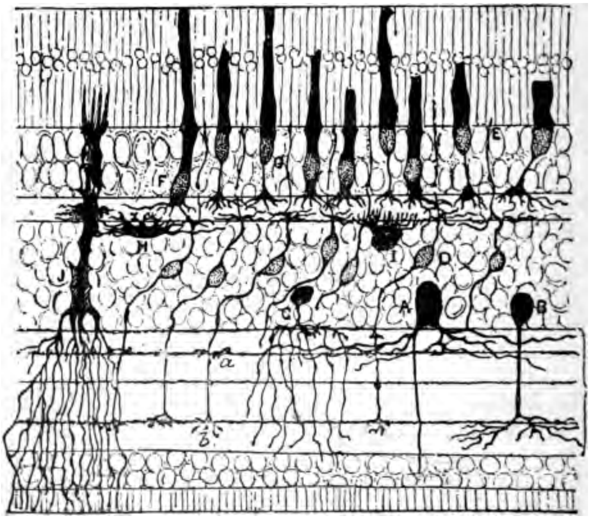


Fig. 274.—Section of Retina of Bird. (*After Cajal, from Quain's "Anatomy."*)

A, B, Large spongioblasts of inner nuclear layer; C, small spongioblast; D, bipolar cell of inner nuclear layer with *a* and *b* arborising in inner molecular layer and also terminating at E at the limitans externa; F, G, rod and cone nuclei; H, I, cells with arborisations in outer molecular layer; J, radial fibre of Müller.

molecular layers (*see* Fig. 272). Ramón y Cajal designates them as *amacrines*. But the great majority of the nuclei of this layer are slightly oval, with a reticulum in their interior. Each belongs to a spindle-shaped cell, with a small amount of protoplasm around the nucleus; it is, in fact, a bipolar ganglion cell (Max Schultze), of which one process (the inner) passes as a fine varicose fibre into the inner molecular layer, where it terminates as a delicate dendron, while the other or outer process passes into the next outer layer of the retina—*i.e.* the outer molecular layer, to terminate here by a rich arborisation or dendron (Fig. 272).

(6) The **outer molecular layer** is of the same structure as the inner molecular layer—*i.e.* a fine reticulum of fibrils—but is considerably thinner than the latter. It also contains the dendrons of cells inside and outside it (Fig. 272).

441. (7) The **outer nuclear layer** contains, in a honeycombed matrix, a large number of oval nuclei. In the retina of man and mammals these nuclei are always present in considerably greater numbers or layers than those of the inner nuclear layer, but in the amphibian animals the reverse is the case. They are smaller than the nuclei of the inner nuclear layer, and show often a peculiar transversely-ribbed differentiation of their contents (Henle, Krause). The honeycombed matrix of this layer is in connection with lateral branchlets of the radial fibres of Müller, with which it forms a sort of limiting delicate membrana propria at the outer surface of the layer; this is

442. (8) **The limitans externa.**—The nuclei of the outer nuclear layer next to this limitans externa are connected, in the retina of man and mammals, with the cones, while the nuclei farther inwards from the limitans externa are connected with the rods. In both instances the connection is established through holes in the limitans externa. Each nucleus of the outer nuclear layer is, in reality, that of a spindle-shaped cell with a minute amount of protoplasm; this is prolonged outwards, as the outer part of the rod- or cone-fibre, to become connected with a

rod or cone respectively, while inwards it passes into a longer, more conspicuous fibre, the inner part of the rod- or cone-fibre (Fig. 272). According to Ramón y Cajal, the cone-fibre terminates as a flat dendron in contact with the tufty arborisation of the outer process of the cells of the inner nuclear layer – *i.e.* in the outer molecular layer ; the rod-fibre on the other hand terminates in the outer molecular layer as a small knob (Fig. 272) in the outer dendron of the same cells

443. (9) **The rods and cones.**—Each *rod* is of cylindrical shape, with rounded or conical outer extremity ; it consists of an outer and inner member, joined by linear cement. Its substance is bright and glistening, and that of the outer member is composed of the neurokeratin of Kühne and Ewald. In the fresh state the outer member shows a more or less fine and longitudinal striation, due to longitudinal fine ridges and furrows (Hensen, Max Schultze). After certain reagents, such as serum, liquor potassæ, the outer rod-member disintegrates into numerous transverse, thin, homogeneous-looking discs (Hannover). The inner member in the human rods is slightly broader than the outer ; it is pale or finely and longitudinally striated, and contains in many instances a peculiar lenticular structure ; in the human and mammalian retina this is absent, but in its stead is a mass of longitudinal fibrils (Max Schultze). The inner member passes through a hole in the limitans externa, and becoming thinner, represents the outer part of the rod-fibre.

444. Each *cone* is composed of an outer, short, pointed, conical member, and an inner larger member with convex surface : this is the *body* of the cone. The outer member of the cone separates under certain conditions also into thin transverse discs. The body of the cone is longitudinally and finely striated. The

outer extremity of the body of the cones in many birds, reptiles, and amphibia contains a spherical corpuscle of red, orange, yellow, green, or even blue colouration.

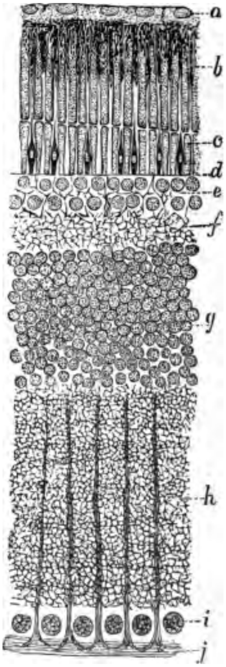


Fig. 275.—Vertical Section through Retina of Frog. (*Atlas.*)

a, Pigmented epithelium of retina or tapetum nigrum; *b*, outer members of rods, those of cones between them; *c*, inner members of rods and cones; *d*, limitans externa; *e*, outer nuclei; *f*, outer molecular layer; *g*, inner nuclei; *h*, inner molecular layer; *i*, nuclei of ganglion cells; *j*, nerve fibres; the pyramidal extremities of the radial fibres are well shown.

The cones are shorter than the rods, the pointed end of the former not reaching much farther than the junction between the outer and inner members of the rods.

In the macula lutea and fovea centralis of man and most mammals there are present cones only, and towards the peripheral portion of the retina they gradually decrease in numbers; in the peripheral part there are only rods. But in birds the cones exceed the rods everywhere.

In the bat and mole the macula lutea possesses no cones, and in the owl, rat, mouse, guinea-pig and rabbit they are few and small.

445. The outer members of the rods (only) show in the fresh and living state a peculiar diffuse purplish colour (Leydig, Boll, Kühne): this is the visual purple or Rhodopsin of Kühne. When exposed to sunlight it passes through red, orange, and yellow, and finally disappears altogether—becomes bleached. There is

no visual purple in the rods of Rhinolophus hipposideros, fowl and pigeon; in those retinæ in which the cones contain coloured globules (*see* above) the surrounding rods are wanting in the visual purple.

The visual purple stands in an intimate relation to the pigmented epithelium of the retina, since a retina regains its visual purple after bleaching, when replaced on the pigmented epithelium (Kühne). This holds good, of course, only within certain limits.

446. (10) The **pigmented epithelium** (Fig. 275), or tapetum nigrum, is composed of polygonal protoplasmic cells, which, when viewed from the surface, appear as a mosaic, in which they are separated from one another by a thin layer of cement substance. Each cell shows an outer non-pigmented part, containing the slightly flattened oval nucleus, and an inner part next to the rods and cones, which is full of pigmented crystalline rods (Frisch). This part is prolonged into numerous fine fibrils, each containing a row of the pigmented particles, and these fibrils pass between the outer members of the rods, to which they closely adhere, and which in reality become almost entirely ensheathed in them (M. Schultze). Each cell supplies a number of rods with these fibrils. Sunlight causes a protrusion of these fibrils from the cell body, whereas in the dark they are retracted (Kühne), in a manner similar to what takes place in pigmented connective-tissue cells. (*See* par. 43.) The tint of this pigment is darker in dark than in light eyes. It is bleached by the light in the presence of oxygen (Kühne), but it persists in the absence of oxygen (Mays).

447. The **macula lutea** (Fig. 276) of man and ape contains a diffuse yellow pigment, between the elements of the retina (M. Schultze). In man and most mammals, as mentioned above, there are *hardly* any rods here, but cones only; these are

longer than in other parts, and in the fovea centralis they are longest, and, at the same time, very thin. Since there are only cones here, the nuclei of the outer nuclear layer are limited to a very few layers (generally about two) next to the membrana limitans externa. For this reason, the rest of the outer nuclear layer is occupied by the cone-fibres only, which in the fovea centralis pass in a slanting, or almost horizontal, direction sideways into the outer molecular layer. The ganglion cells form several strata in the macula lutea. In the fovea centralis are present the cones (very long and thin), the limitans externa, the few nuclei representing the outer nuclear layer, a thin continuation of the inner molecular layer, and the limitans interna.

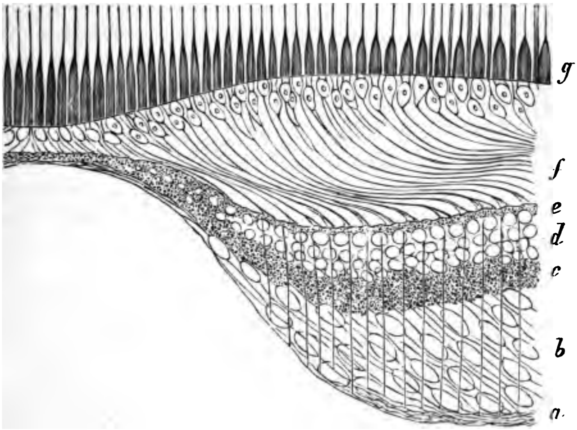


Fig. 276.—From a Vertical Section through the Macula lutea and Fovea centralis. (*Diagram by Max Schultze.*)

a, Nerve fibres; *b*, ganglion cells; *c*, inner molecular layer; *d*, inner nuclei; *e*, outer molecular layer; *f*, cone-fibres with their outer nuclei; *g*, cones.

448. In the embryo, the primary optic vesicle

becomes invaginated so as to form the optic cup, which consists of two layers—an outer, giving origin to the pigmented epithelium; and an inner, the retina proper. In this latter the rods and cones, with their fibres and the nuclei of the outer nuclear layer, are represented by columnar epithelial cells (the *sensory epithelium*), while all the other layers—*i.e.* the outer molecular, inner nuclear, inner molecular layer, ganglion cells, nerve fibres, and limitans interna—are represented by a separate layer: Brücke's tunica nervea or Henle's stratum nerveum.

449. The **blood-vessels** of the retina. The branches of the arteria and vena centralis of the optic nerve can be traced into the retina in the layer of nerve fibres and ganglion cells, while the capillaries connecting the arteries with the veins extend as far as the outer molecular layer.

The **lymphatics** of the retina exist as perivascular lymphatics of the retinal veins and capillaries (His). Lymph channels are present in the nerve fibre layer.

450. The **lamina cribrosa** is the part of the sclerotic and choroid membrane through which the optic nerve fibres have to pass in order to reach the papilla nervi optici. In the optic nerve the fibres are grouped in larger or smaller groups—not bundles in the sense of those present in other nerves and surrounded by perineurium (*see* Chapter XIV.); these groups are surrounded by septa of connective tissue, and they pass through corresponding holes of the sclerotic and choroid.

451. The **optic nerve** possesses three sheaths, composed of fibrous connective tissue: an outer, or dural; a middle, or arachnoidal; and an inner, or pial, sheath—all continuations of the membranes of the brain. The pial sheath is the perineurium, the *optic nerve* being comparable to a compound nerve-

bundle (*see* Chapter XIV.). The dural sheath of the optic nerve, at its entrance into the lamina cribrosa, passes into the outer strata of the sclerotic, while the arachnoidal and pial sheaths pass into the inner strata of the sclerotic. Outside the dural sheath is a lymph space—the supravaginal space; and also between these various sheaths are lymph spaces—the subdural or subvaginal space of Schwalbe, and the subarachnoidal space. The supravaginal and subvaginal spaces anastomose with one another (Michel).

452. Around the sclerotic is a lymph space limited by a fibrous membrane—the *Tenonian capsule*: the space is called the *Tenonian space*. The supravaginal space anastomoses with this Tenonian space, and into it pass also the lymph clefts in the suprachoroidal tissue (Schwalbe), by means of the lymph canalicular system of the sclerotic (Waldeyer). The suprachoroidal lymph spaces communicate also with the subarachnoidal space of the optic nerve.

CHAPTER XLII.

THE OUTER AND MIDDLE EAR.

453. THE meatus auditorius externus is lined with a delicate skin, in structure identical with, but thinner than, the skin of other parts. The ceruminous glands have been mentioned and described before. The cartilage of the auricula and its continuation into the meatus auditorius externus is elastic cartilage.

454. The **membrana tympani** separating the outer from the middle ear has for its matrix a firm stratum of stiff trabeculæ of fibrous connective tissue, with numerous elastic fibrils and elastic membranes. This is the middle and chief stratum of the membrane: outwards it is covered with a delicate continuation of the skin of the meatus auditorius externus, and inwards with a continuation of the delicate mucous membrane lining the cavum tympani. In the middle stratum of the membrana tympani the trabeculæ radiate more or less from the junction of the manubrium mallei with the membrane; but towards the periphery many are also arranged in a circular direction. The former belong to the outer, the latter to the inner, portion of the middle stratum.

The mucous membrane lining the tympanic surface of the membrane is delicate connective tissue, covered with a single layer of polyhedral epithelial cells.

The blood-vessels form capillary networks for all three layers—*i.e.* a special network for the skin layer, a second for the middle stratum, and a third one for the mucous layer; the lymphatics are also arranged in this way. An intercommunicating system of lymphatic sinuses and clefts (Kessel) is left between the trabeculæ. The non-medullated nerve fibres form plexuses for the skin and mucous layer; from these pass off fine fibrils, which form a sub-epithelial network, and from this the fibrils pass into the epithelium.

455. The **tuba Eustachii** is lined with a mucous membrane, which is a continuation of that lining the upper part of the pharynx, and therefore, like it, is covered on its inner or free surface with columnar ciliated epithelium. As in the pharynx, so also here, we find a good deal of adenoid tissue in the mucous membrane.

The cartilage of the tuba Eustachii in the adult approaches in structure the elastic cartilages of other parts.

456. The **cavum tympani,** including the cellulæ mastoideæ and the surface of the ossicula auditus, is lined with a delicate connective-tissue membrane. Its free surface is covered with a single layer of polyhedral epithelial cells in the following regions: on the promontory of the inner wall of the cavity, on the ossicula auditus, on the roof of the cavity, and in the cellulæ mastoideæ; in all other parts it is columnar ciliated epithelium, like that lining the tuba Eustachii.

457. The three **ossicula auditus** are osseous substance covered with periosteum, which is covered with the delicate mucosa just described. The ligaments of the bones are, like other ligaments, made up of straight and parallel bundles of fibrous connective tissue. The articulation surface of the head of the malleus, of the incus, of the extremity of the long process of the incus, and of the stapes, are covered with hyaline (articular) cartilage.

CHAPTER XLIII.

THE INTERNAL EAR.

458. THE osseous labyrinth consists of the vestibule, prolonged on one side into the cochlea, and on the other into the three semicircular canals, each of which possesses an ampulla at one extremity. The vestibule shows two divisions—the fovea hemispherica next to the cochlea, and the fovea hemi-elliptica next to the semicircular canals. The cochlea consists of two and a half turnings twisted round a bony axis—the modiolus. From this a bony lamina extends towards the outer wall for each turn, but does not reach it: this is the lamina spiralis ossea. It extends through all turns, and it subdivides the cavity of each turn into an upper passage, or scala vestibuli, and a lower, or scala tympani. At the top of the cochlea the two scalæ pass into one another by the helicotrema. The scala vestibuli opens into the fovea hemispherica, while the scala tympani at its commencement—*i.e.* at the proximal end of the first turn—would be in communication, by the fenestra rotunda, with the cavum tympani, were it not that this fenestra rotunda is closed by a membrane—the secondary membrane.

459. The semicircular canals start from, and return to, the fovea hemi-elliptica of the vestibule.

The fenestra ovalis leads from the cavum tympani into the vestibule—its hemispheric division; and this fenestra ovalis is, in the fresh condition, filled out by a membrane, in which the basis of the stapes is fixed, the circumference of this being nearly as great as that *of the fenestra.*

460. The osseous labyrinth in all parts consists of ordinary osseous substance, with the usual periosteum lining its outer surface and its inner cavities. These cavities contain the albuminous fluid called *perilymph.* But they are not filled out by this, since, in each of the two divisions of the vestibule, in each of the semicircular canals, and in the cochlea, is a membranous structure, analogous in shape to the corresponding division of the labyrinth. These membranous structures possess a cavity filled with the same albuminous fluid as above, called the *endolymph.* These structures are disposed thus : in the fovea hemispherica is a spherical sac, called the *saccule ;* in the fovea hemi-elliptica is an elliptical sac, the *utricle ;* in each of the three semicircular canals is a membranous semicircular tube, which possesses also an ampulla corresponding to the ampulla of the bony canal.

461. In the cochlea is a membranous canal, triangular in cross-section—the scala media or cochlear duct—which also twists two and a half times from the basis to the apex of the cochlea, and is placed against the end of the lamina spiralis ossea so as to occupy a position between the peripheral part of the scala vestibuli and scala tympani.

462. The different divisions of the membranous labyrinth are connected with one another in this manner : the three semicircular (membranous) canals open into the utricle ; this does not form a direct continuity with the saccule, but a narrow canal comes off both from the saccule and utricle ; the two canals join into one minute membranous tube situated in the aqueductus vestibuli. At its distal end it enlarges into the saccus endolymphaticus, situated in a cleft of the dura mater, covering the posterior surface of the petrous bone. The saccule is in communication with the cochlear canal, or scala media, by a short narrow tube—the canalis reuniens of Reichert. Thus the

cavity of the whole membranous labyrinth is in direct communication throughout all divisions, and it represents the inner lymphatic space of the labyrinth. There is no communication between the perilymph and endolymph, and the cavity of the membranous labyrinth stands in no direct relation to the cavum tympani, since the fenestra ovalis and fenestra rotunda both separate the perilymphatic space, or the cavity of the bony labyrinth, from the cavum tympani. The vibrations of the membrana tympani, transferred by the ossicula auditus to the fenestra ovalis, directly affect, therefore, only the perilymph. The fluctuations of this pass from the vestibule, on the one side, towards and into the perilymph of the semicircular canals; and on the other side, through the scala vestibuli, to the top of the cochlea, then by the helicotrema into the scala tympani, and find their conclusion on the membrana secundaria closing the fenestra rotunda. On their way they affect the membrane of Reissner, which separates the scala media from the scala vestibuli, and also the membrana basilaris separating the scala media from the scala tympani; the vibrations of these membranes affect the endolymph, and therefore the nerve-endings (*see* below).

463. **Structure of semicircular canals, utricle and saccule.**—The *membranous semicircular* canals are fixed by stiff bands of fibrous tissue to the inner periosteum of the one (convex) side of the osseous canal, so that towards the concave side there is left the space for the perilymph. A similar condition obtains with regard to the *saccule* and *utricle*, which are fixed by the inner periosteum to one side of the bony part.

The structure of the wall is the same in the semicircular canals, utricle and saccule. The above-mentioned fibrous ligaments of the periosteum form an *outer coat;* inside this is a glassy-looking *tunica* *propria.* At one side (the one away from the bone) this tunica propria forms numerous papillary projections. The internal surface of the membrane is covered with a single layer of polyhedral epithelial cells.

464. Each of the branches of the nervus vestibuli —*i.e.* one for the saccule, one for the utricle, and three for the three ampullæ — possesses a ganglionic swelling. The nerve-branch, having passed through the membranous wall, enters special thickenings of the tunica propria, on that part of the membranous wall next to the bone; in the saccule and the utricle the thickening is called *macula acustica*, in the ampullæ *crista acustica* (Fig. 277) (M. Schultze). This thickening is a large villous or fold-like projection of the tunica propria, into which pass the nerve fibres of the several branches. These fibres are all medullated nerve fibres, and, ascending towards the internal or free surface of that projection, form a plexus. In this plexus are interspersed numerous nuclei. From the medullated fibres pass off minute bundles or primitive fibrillæ, which enter the epithelium that covers the free surface of the projection.

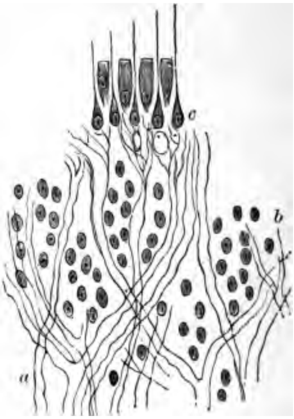


Fig. 277.—From a Transverse Section through the Macula acustica of the Utricle of the Labyrinth of Guinea-pig. (*Atlas.*)

a, Medullated nerve fibres, forming plexuses; *b*, nuclei of the membrane; *c*, sensory epithelium (diagrammatic); the spindle-shaped sensory cells possess long auditory hairs projecting between the conical epithelial cells beyond the free surface.

465. This epithelium is composed of a layer of

columnar or conical cells, between which are wedged in spindle-shaped cells; both kinds possess an oval nucleus. According to Max Schultze and others, each of the spindle-shaped cells is connected by its inner process with the nerve fibrillæ coming from underneath; whereas, towards and beyond the free surface,

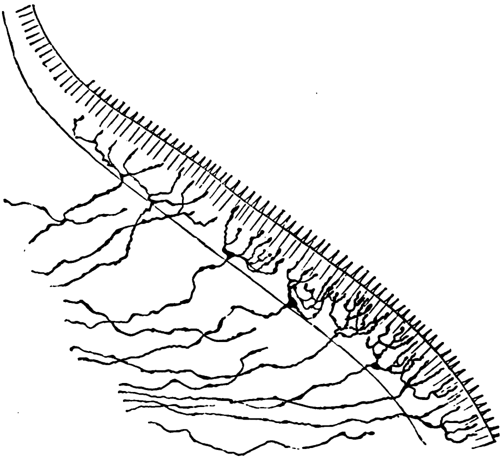


Fig. 278.—Nerve Terminations in the Epithelium of the Macula acustica. The nerve fibres form dendrons in the epithelial layer. (*After Retzius, from Quain.*)

its outer process is prolonged into a long, thin, stiff, *auditory hair.* Max Schultze, therefore, calls the columnar cells *epithelial;* the spindle-shaped ones, *sensory.*

Retzius, on the other hand, maintains that, in the case of fishes at any rate, the epithelial cells are those which are connected each with a bundle of nerve fibrillæ, and that each sends out over the internal free surface a bundle of fine stiff hairs—the auditory hairs. The spindle-shaped cells of Max Schultze, according to this theory, are only supporting cells. The free surface of the epithelium is covered with a homogeneous cuticle, perforated by holes which correspond to the epithelial cells and the auditory hairs.

By Golgi's method Retzius has, however, obtained evidence (Fig. 278) which shows that fine nerve fibres terminate by arborisations or dendrons amongst the epithelial cells (Fig. 177).

On the internal surface of the macula and crista acustica are found the *otoliths*, rhombic crystals, and amorphous masses, chiefly of carbonate of lime, embedded in a gelatinous or granular-looking basis.

466. The **cochlea** (Fig. 279), as has been mentioned above, consists also of a bony shell and a membranous canal, the former surrounding the latter in the same way as the bony semicircular canal does the membranous—*i.e.* the latter is fixed to the outer or convex side of the former. The difference between the cochlea and the semicircular canals is this, that in the cochlea there is a division of the perilymphatic space by an osseous projection—the lamina spiralis ossea—and by the scala media into two scalæ, viz. the (upper) scala vestibuli and the (lower) scala tympani.

467. In the osseous modiolus are numerous parallel canals for bundles or groups of the fibres of the cochlear branch of the auditory nerve; these canals open into the porus internus, in which lies a large ganglion connected with the nerve.

The nerve bundles are situated in the canals of the modiolus, and opposite the lamina spiralis ossea are connected with ganglionic masses—composed of bipolar ganglion cells—called the ganglion spirale of Corti. From this ganglionic mass the nerve fibres (all medullated) can be traced into the lamina spiralis ossea, in which they form rich plexuses extending to its outer

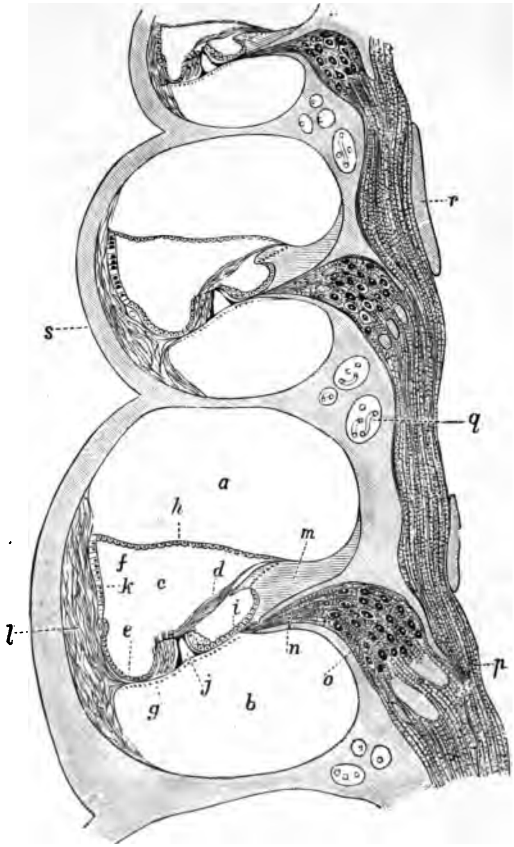


Fig. 279.—From a Vertical Section through the Cochlea of Ear of Guinea-pig, seen in the long axis of the Modiolus. (*Atlas.*)

a, Scala vestibuli; ***b***, scala tympani; ***c***, scala media; ***d***, membrana tectoria; ***e***, cells of Claudius; ***f***, upper outer angle of scala media; ***g***, region of outer hair cells on membrana basilaris; ***h***, membrane of Reissner; ***i***, epithelium lining sulcus spiralis (internus); ***j***, tunnel of Corti's arch; ***k***, stria vascularis; ***l***, ligamentum spirale; ***m***, crista spiralis; ***n***, nerve fibres in lamina spiralis ossea; ***o***, ganglion spirale; ***p***, nerve fibres in modiolus; ***q***, channels in bone containing blood-vessels; ***r***, masses of bone in modiolus; ***s***, outer bony capsule.

margin—*i.e.* as far as the membrana basilaris of the scala media (*see* below).

468. From the margin of the lamina spiralis ossea to the external bony shell extends the membrana basilaris (Fig. 279), forming the lower and chief wall of the scala media, while the upper wall of the canal is formed by the membrane of Reissner, extending under an acute angle from near the margin of the lamina spiralis ossea to the outer bony shell.

On a transverse section through the scala media we see the following structures :—

469. (1) Its **outer wall** is placed close against the periosteum lining the internal surface of the bony shell ; it consists of lamellar fibrous tissue, with numerous stiff elastic bands, and is the vestibular part of a peculiar ligament—the *ligamentum spirale* (Kölliker)—semilunar in cross-section, and with its middle angular projection fixed to the outer end of the membrana basilaris.

470. (2) Its **inner wall** is represented by an exceedingly delicate membrane—the *membrane of Reissner:* this is also its upper wall, extending under an acute angle from the upper outer angle of the scala media to the lamina spiralis ossea. But here it is not fixed on the osseous substance, but on a peculiar projection on this latter—the *crista spiralis* (Fig. 279, *m*) —which is a sort of tissue intermediate between fibrous and osseous tissue, and is added to the vestibular surface of the lamina spiralis ossea. This crista spiralis has on one surface—*i.e.* that directed towards the scala media—a deep sulcus, called the *sulcus spiralis*, or sulcus spiralis internus ; so that of the crista spiralis there are two labia to be distinguished—the labium vestibulare and the labium tympanicum ; the former being the upper, the latter the lower, boundary of the sulcus spiralis (Fig. 279).

471. (3) The **lower wall** of the scala media

is the *membrana basilaris*, extending in a straight line between the labium tympanicum of the crista spiralis and the above-mentioned projection of the ligamentum spirale. The scala media is lined on its whole internal surface with epithelium, this only being derived from the epithelium forming the wall of the auditory vesicle of the embryo, peculiarly modified in certain places. The scala tympani and scala vestibuli are likewise lined with a continuous layer of flattened cells—an endothelium, which on the lower or tympanic surface of the membrana basilaris is somewhat modified, being composed of granular-looking irregular cells.

472. As regards the scala media, the epithelium lining its internal surface is of the following aspect:—Starting with the lower outer angle—*i.e.* where the membrana basilaris is fixed to the ligamentum spirale—we find a single layer of polyhedral or short columnar transparent cells, lining this outer angle—*the cells of Claudius;* ascending on the ligamentum spirale, the cells become shorter, more squamous; as such they are found over a slight projection on the outer wall—*i.e.* the ligamentum spirale accessorium—caused by a small blood-vessel, the vas prominens.

473. Then we come to the **stria vascularis,** lining nearly the upper two-thirds of the outer wall of the scala media. It consists of a layer of columnar and spindle-shaped epithelial cells, between which extend capillary blood-vessels from the ligamentum spirale, and in some animals (guinea-pig) clumps of pigment granules are found between them.

474. Then we pass from the upper angle of the scala on to the membrane of Reissner. This consists of a homogeneous thin membrana propria, covered on its outer vestibular surface with a layer of flattened endothelium, and on its inner surface—*i.e.* that facing

the scala media—with a layer of less flattened, smaller, polyhedral epithelial cells.

475. We come next to the vestibular labium of the crista spiralis, on which are found cylindrical horizontal projections anastomosing with one another: these are the *auditory teeth* (Huschke). The epithelium of Reissner's membrane is continued into the grooves and pits between the auditory teeth as small polyhedral cells, but over the teeth as large, flattened, squamous cells, which, passing on, line the sulcus spiralis and cover also the tympanic labium of the crista spiralis. Now we arrive at the membrana basilaris, on which the epithelium becomes modified into the *organ of Corti.*

476. The **membrana basilaris** consists of a hyaline basement membrane, on which the organ of Corti is fixed; underneath this is the *tunica propria*, a continuation of the tissue of the ligamentum spirale, composed of fine parallel stiff fibrils (Hannover, Henle) stretched in a very regular and beautiful manner in the direction from the ligamentum spirale to the crista spiralis (Nuel). On the tympanic side there is also a hyaline basement membrane. The endothelial cells covering this on the tympanic surface have been mentioned above.

477. **The organ of Corti** (Fig. 280).—Passing outwards from the epithelium lining the sulcus spiralis, we meet with small polyhedral epithelial cells in the region of the termination of the lamina spiralis ossea, next which are columnar-looking cells—the *inner supporting cells;* next to these is the *inner hair-cell*—a columnar, or conical, epithelial cell, with a bundle of stiff hairs, or rods, extending beyond the surface. The inner hair-cells form a single file along the whole extent of the two and a half turns of the scala media.

478. Next to the inner hair-cell is the *inner rod, or inner pillar, of Corti*, and next to this the outer rod,

or outer pillar, of Corti. Each forms a single file for the whole extent of the two and a half turns of the scala media. The two rods are inclined towards one another, and in contact with their upper extremity, or *head;* whereas the opposite extremity, the *foot,* rests under an acute angle on the membrana basilaris, on which it is firmly fixed. The rest of the rod is a slender, more or less cylindrical, piece—the *body.* The outer rod is larger and longer than the inner, the latter being slightly bent in the middle. Owing to the position of the rods, the two files form an arch—the *arch of Corti.* Between it and the corresponding part of the basilar membrane is a space—the *tunnel* of the arch, triangular in cross-section.

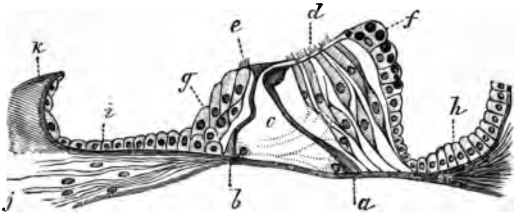


Fig. 280.—Organ of Corti of the Cochlea of Guinea-pig. (*Atlas.*)

a, Outer rod or pillar of Corti; *b,* inner rod or pillar of Corti; *c,* tunnel of arch of Corti; *d,* outer hair-cells; *e,* inner hair-cell; *f,* outer supporting cells containing fat globules; *g,* inner supporting cells; *h,* cells of Claudius; *i,* epithelial cells lining the sulcus spiralis internus; *j,* nerve fibres; *k,* part of crista spiralis.

479. The substance of the rods, or pillars, of Corti is bright, highly refractive, and slightly and longitudinally striated.

The head of the inner rod is triangular, a short process extending inwards towards the inner hair-cell, a long process extending outwards over the head of the outer pillar. Outwards, the triangular head possesses a concave surface grasping the convex surface of the head of the outer rod. This latter possesses a process directed outwards, which is firmly applied to the outer process of the head of the inner rod, the two together forming part of the membrana reticularis (*see* below).

The relation in size between the outer and inner rods is such that the head of one outer rod fits into those of about two inner rods.

480. At the foot, each rod has, on the side directed towards the tunnel, a granular, nucleated mass of protoplasm, probably the remnant of the epithelial cell from which the lower half of the rod is derived; the upper part sometimes has a similar nucleated remnant, proving that this also has been formed by an epithelial cell, so that each rod is in reality derived from two epithelial cells (Waldeyer).

481. Next follow three or four rows of *outer hair-cells*, similar in size and structure to the inner hair-cells. Each of the outer hair-cells seen in a section belongs to a file of hair-cells, extending on the membrana basilaris along the whole extent—*i.e.* two and a half turns — of the scala media. Each hair-cell possesses an oval nucleus and a number of stiff rods, or hairs, disposed in the shape of a horseshoe in the outer part of the free surface of the cell.

Four, and even five, rows or files of hair-cells (Waldeyer), arranged in an alternating manner, are found in man.

The outer hair-cells are also called the cells of Corti; they are conical, and more or less firmly connected with a nucleated spindle-shaped cell—the cell of Deiters. The two cells are more or less fused together in their middle part (Nuel). The cell of Corti is fixed by a branched process to the membrana basilaris, while the cell of Deiters sends a process towards the surface, where it joins the membrana reticularis (*see* below).

482. Farther outwards from the last row of outer

hair-cells are columnar epithelial cells, called the *outer supporting cells of Hensen*; they form the transition

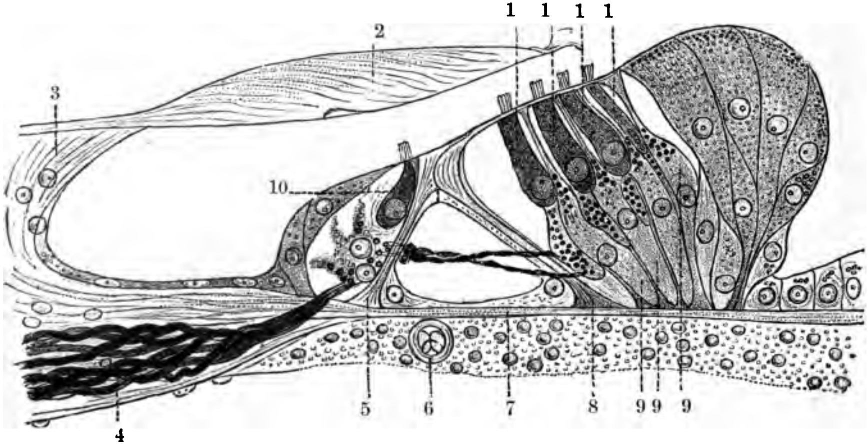


Fig. 281.—Section through the Organ of Corti of the Middle Turn of the Human Cochlea. (*After Retzius, from Quain.*)

1, Outer hair-cells; 2, membrana tectoria; 3, upper labium of crista spiralis; 4, medullated nerve fibres within the lamina spiralis ossea; 5, inner rod of Corti; 6, vas spirale; 7, membrana basilaris; 8, outer rod of Corti; 9, cells of Deiters; 10, inner hair-cell.

to the epithelium lining the outer angle of the scala media—*i.e.* to the cells of Claudius.

In the guinea-pig, the outer supporting cells include fat globules.

483. The **medullated nerve fibres,** which we traced in a former page to the margin of the lamina spiralis ossea, form rich plexuses in this, and pass through holes in it, in order to reach the organ of Corti on the membrana basilaris. Looking from the surface on this part, we notice a row of holes—the *habenula perforata* of Kölliker—a little to the inside of the region of the inner hair-cells. Numerous primitive fibrillæ pass there among small nucleated cells situated underneath the inner hair-cells: these are the granular cells. Some of these nerve fibrillæ—the inner bundle of spiral nerve fibres—become connected with the inner hair-cells; while others—the three outer bundles of spiral fibrils (Waldeyer)—pass, between the inner rods of Corti, right through the tunnel; and, further, penetrating between the outer rods of Corti, they reach the outer hair-cells, with which they become connected (Gottstein, Waldeyer). (Fig. 281.)

484. In connection with the outer process of the head of the inner and outer rods of Corti, mentioned above, is an elastic hyaline membrane—the *lamina* or *membrana reticularis.* It extends outwards over the organ of Corti to the supporting cells of Hensen, and possesses holes for the tops of the outer hair-cells and their hairs. The parts of this membrane between the heads of the rods of Corti and between the outer hair-cells appear of the shape of narrow phalanges—phalanges of Deiters. A cuticular membrane extends from the head of the inner rods of Corti inwards to the inner supporting cells: it possesses holes for the tops of the inner hair-cells.

485. From the vestibular labium of the crista

spiralis to the outer hair-cells of the organ of Corti extends a peculiar fibrillated membrane—the *membrana tectoria.* By means of it the sulcus spiralis internus is bridged over, and so converted into a canal.

486. As we ascend towards the top of the cochlea, all parts in the scala media decrease gradually in size. The organ of Corti, being of an epithelial nature, possesses no blood-vessels. From the anatomical relations of the organ of Corti, it appears most probable that the pillars, or rods, of Corti act as the supporting tissue, or framework, around which the other elements are grouped; and it seems likely that the hair-cells, with their rod-like hairs projecting freely into the endolymph, are the real sound-perceiving elements of the organ of Corti. Their connection with the terminal fibrillæ of the nerves points in the same direction.

As indicated on p. 460, all structures of the scala media, described in the foregoing pages, form an uninterrupted succession through all the turns of the cochlea.

CHAPTER XLIV

THE NASAL MUCOUS MEMBRANE

487. THE lower part of the nasal [illegible] is lined with a mucous membrane which has no [illegible] the olfactory nerve, and therefore [illegible] with the organ of smell. It [illegible] tied, columnar, ciliated epithelium [illegible] nature as that of the respiratory [illegible] larynx and trachea. Large [illegible] ing goblet cells are met with [illegible] thelium is a thick hyaline [illegible] underneath this [illegible] numerous lymph corpuscles [illegible] this infiltration with [illegible] diffuse adenoid tissue [illegible]

488. The mucosa [illegible] layer the network [illegible] includes [illegible] and [illegible] vessels.

In the deeper [illegible] i.e. in the [illegible] larger glands [illegible] mucosa and [illegible] glands are [illegible] e.g. guinea-pig [illegible] [illegible] the [illegible] tongue [illegible] much [illegible] larger glands [illegible] alveolar [illegible]

489. In the upper or **olfactory region** (Fig. 282) of the nasal cavity the mucous membrane is of a different tint, being more of a brownish colour; it contains the ramifications of the olfactory nerve, and is the seat of the organ of smell.

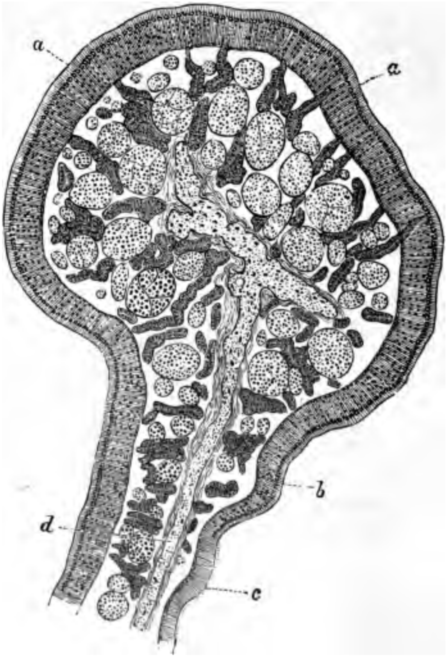


Fig. 282.—From a Section through the Olfactory Region of Guinea-pig. (*Atlas.*)

a, Thick olfactory epithelium; *b*, thin olfactory epithelium; *c*, ciliated non-olfactory epithelium; *d*, bone. The transverse sections of the olfactory nerve bundles and the tubular glands of Bowman are well seen.

490. The free surface is covered with a columnar

epithelium, composed of the following kinds of cells (Fig. 283) :—

(*a*) A superficial layer of long columnar, or rather conical, *epithelial cells*, each with an oval nucleus. In some places the free surface of these cells is covered with a bundle of cilia, similar to the superficial cells of the respiratory part of the nasal cavity ; in most places, however, the cilia are absent ; the former

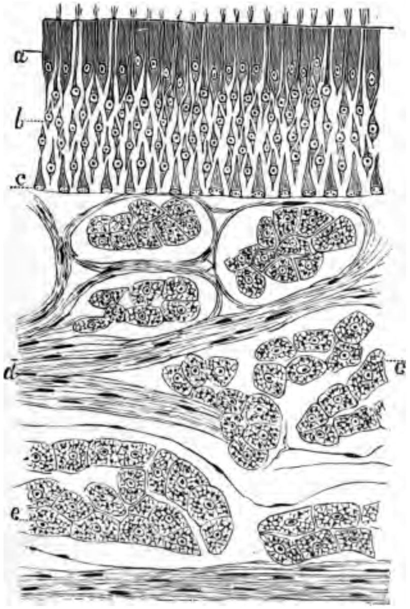


Fig. 283.—From a Vertical Section through the Olfactory Mucous Membrane of Guinea-pig. (*Atlas.*)

a, **Epithelial cells**; *b*, **sensory or olfactory cells**; *c*, **deep epithelial cells**; *d*, **bundles of olfactory nerve fibres**; *e*, **the alveoli of serous (Bowman's) glands.**

condition obtains in those places which are in close proximity to the respiratory region.

(*b*) Between the epithelial cells extend spindle-shaped cells, each with a spherical, or very slightly

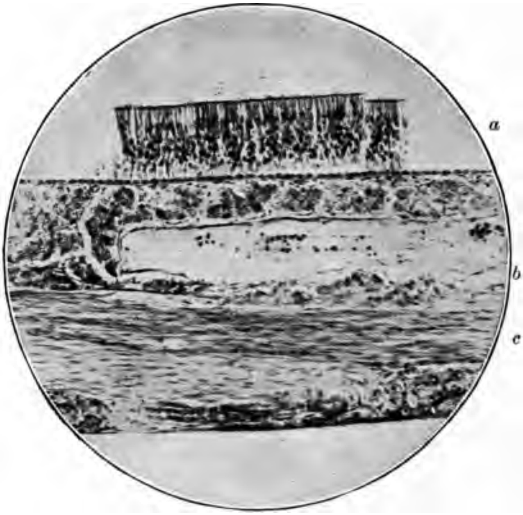


Fig. 284.—From a Vertical Section through Olfactory Membrane of Guinea-pig. (*Photo. Moderate magnification.*)

a, Olfactory epithelium; *b*, mucous membrane with blood-vessel and glands; *c* olfactory nerve fibres cut longitudinally.

oval, nucleus—the *sensory cells* (Max Schultze). Each cell sends one broad process towards the free surface, over which it projects in the shape of a small bundle of shorter or longer rods; whereas a fine varicose filament passes from the cell body towards the mucosa, and, as shown first by M. Schultze, becomes connected with a fibrilla of the plexus of the olfactory nerve fibres.

(*c*) In some places there is a deep layer of *epithelial cells*, each with a spherical nucleus of an inverted conical shape, their pointed extremity passing between the other cells just mentioned and their broad basis resting on the basement membrane (Fig. 283).

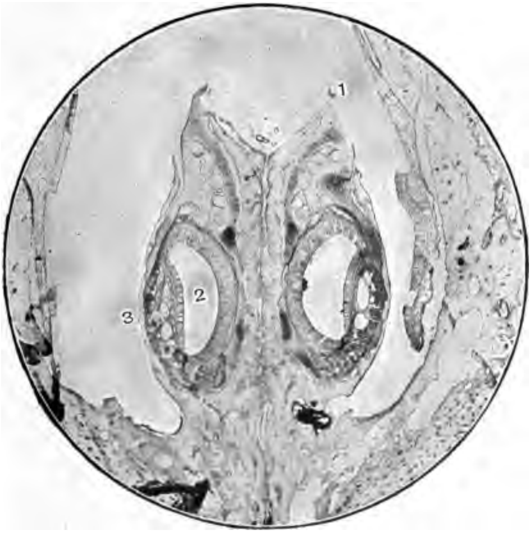


Fig. 285.—Transverse Section through the Lower Part of the Nasal Septum, showing the (bilateral) Organ of Jacobson in cross section. (*Photo. Low power.*)

1, Cartilage extending above and partially around the organ; 2, cavity of the tubular organ, showing on its mesial wall olfactory epithelium, on its lateral wall columnar epithelium; 3, cavernous tissue in the lateral wall.

Von Brunn has shown that there is on the free surface of the epithelium a sort of cuticle—a delicate limitans externa.

491. The mucous membrane is of loose texture, and contains a rich plexus of bundles of olfactory

nerve fibres, extending chiefly in a direction parallel to the surface (Fig. 284). Each nerve fibre is non-medullated—*i.e.* is an axis cylinder composed of minute or primitive fibrillæ, and invested in a neurilemma with

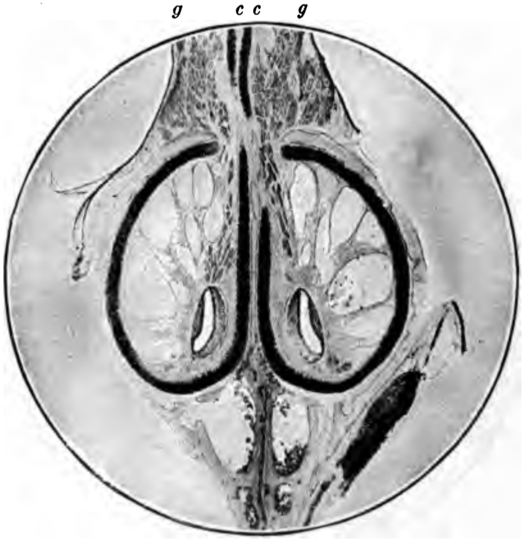


Fig. 286.—Section through the Front Part of Nasal Septum of Rabbit, showing the bilateral organ of Jacobson in transverse section. The tube of the organ of Jacobson is lined on its mesial wall with olfactory epithelium. (*Photo. Low power.*)

g, Glands extending from the upper part of the septum to the junction of the mesial and lateral wall of the organ of Jacobson; *c*, cartilage extending as a nearly complete capsule around each organ of Jacobson. The lateral wall of the organ contains cavernous tissue.

the nuclei of the nerve corpuscles. Near the surface the fibres of the plexus are thin, and they split up into the constituent fibrils which are directly continuous with the fine varicose processes of the sensory cells above named (Fig. 178).

492. The blood-vessels supply with capillary net-

works the superficial part of the mucous membrane and the numerous glands. These are the *glands of Bowman*, extending through the thickness of the mucous membrane. They are tubes, slightly branched, and gradually enlarging towards their distal end; in some parts they are more or less straight. In structure they are identical with serous glands, possessing a minute lumen, and being lined with a layer of columnar albuminous cells. The duct is a very fine canal; it is that part of the gland which is situated in the epithelium of the free surface; it passes vertically through this, and consists of a fine limiting

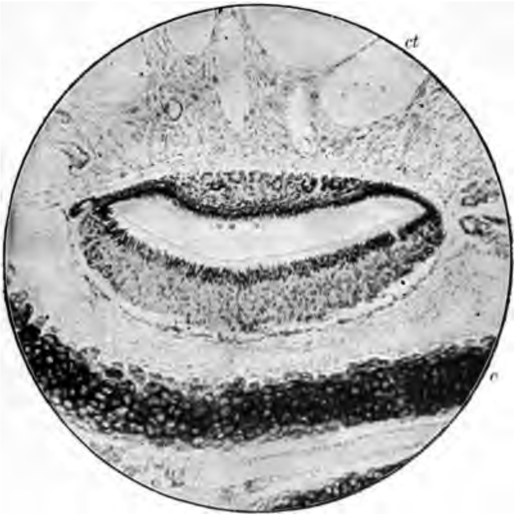


Fig. 287.—From the same Section through the Organ of Jacobson as in the preceding figure, more magnified. (*Photo.*)

c, Cartilage of mesial wall; *ct*, cavernous tissue of lateral wall. The mesial wall is lined with thick olfactory epithelium.

membrane, the continuation of the membrana propria of the gland tube, and a layer of very flattened epithelial cells.

493. There is a definite relation between the size and number of the bundles of the olfactory nerve fibres, the thickness of the olfactory epithelium, and the length of the gland tubes. The size and number of the bundles of the nerve fibres are determined by the thickness of the epithelium—*i.e.* by the number of the sensory cells; the number and thickness of the olfactory nerve bundles determine the thickness of the mucous membrane, and the thicker this is, the longer are the glands of Bowman.

494. The **organ of Jacobson** (Figs. 285, 286, 287) is a minute tubular organ present in all mammals, and, as has been shown by Dursy and Kölliker, also in man. In mammals it is a bilateral tube, compressed from side to side, and situated in the anterior lower part of the nasal septum. Each tube is supported by a hyaline cartilage, in the shape of a more or less plough-shaped capsule—the *cartilage of Jacobson*—and opens in front directly into the nasal furrow (guinea-pig, rabbit, rat, etc.); or it leads into the canal of Stenson (dog), which passes through the canalis naso-palatinus, and opens immediately behind the incisor teeth on the palate. In all instances, however, it terminates posteriorly with a blind extremity.

495. The cavity of the tube is lined with stratified columnar epithelium, which on the lateral wall is ciliated in the guinea-pig and dog, and non-ciliated in the rabbit. The median wall—*i.e.* the one next to the middle line—is lined with olfactory epithelium identical with that of the olfactory region of the nasal cavity. Branches of olfactory nerve fibres also pass into the median wall, and behave in exactly the same manner as in the olfactory region. Numerous serous

glands—belonging chiefly to the upper and lower wall—open into the cavity of the organ of Jacobson.

In the lateral wall there is in many instances a plexus of veins, extending in a longitudinal direction, and between the vessels are bundles of non-striped muscular tissue, thus constituting a sort of cavernous tissue.

CHAPTER XLV.

THE DUCTLESS GLANDS.

496. I. **The hypophysis cerebri.**—The upper or smaller lobe belongs to the central nervous system. The lower or larger lobe is surrounded by a fibrous capsule, which sends numerous minute septa into the interior. These split up into numerous trabeculæ of fibrous tissue, which, by dividing and reuniting, form a dense plexus, with smaller and larger, spherical or oblong, or even cylindrical spaces—the alveoli. In these lie spherical or oblong masses of epithelial cells. These epithelial cells are columnar, pyramidal, or polyhedral, each with an oval or spherical nucleus. Between the epithelial cells of the same group are found here and there small branched or spindle-shaped cells, with a small flattened nucleus. In some of the groups or alveoli of epithelial cells is a cavity, a sort of lumen, filled with a homogeneous gelatinous substance.

The interalveolar connective tissue contains a network of capillaries. Between the alveoli and the interalveolar tissue there are lymph sinuses, like those around the alveoli of other glands—*e.g.* the salivary glands.

497. II. **The thyroid gland** (Fig. 288).—The framework of this gland is in many respects similar to that of other glands, there being an outer fibrous capsule, thicker and thinner septa, and finally the fine trabeculæ forming the septa between the gland alveoli. These are *closed vesicles* of a spherical or oval shape, and of various sizes. Each vesicle is lined with a

single layer of polyhedral or columnar epithelial cells, each with a spherical or oval nucleus. There is a cavity, which differs in size according to the size of the vesicle. It contains, and is more or less filled with, a homogeneous, viscid, albuminous fluid—the so-called colloid. In this often occur degenerating nucleated lymph corpuscles and coloured blood corpuscles (Baber).

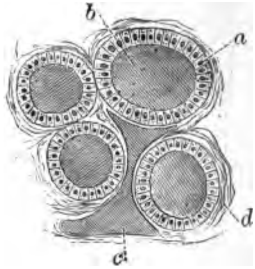


Fig. 288.—From a Section through the Thyroid Gland of Dog.

a, Epithelium lining the vesicles; *b*, colloid contents of the vesicles; *c*, lymphatic filled with the same material as the vesicles; *d*, fibrous tissue between the gland vesicles.

498. The vesicles are surrounded by networks of blood capillaries. In the connective-tissue framework lie networks of lymphatics; between the framework and the surface of the vesicles are lymph sinuses lined with endothelium (Baber). The large and small lymphatics are often filled with the same colloid material as the vesicles, and it is probable that this colloid material is produced in the vesicles and carried away by the lymphatics, to be finally discharged into the circulating blood.

499. Its formation in the vesicles is probably due to an active secretion by the epithelial cells of the vesicles, and to a mixture with it, or maceration by it, of the effused blood mentioned above. In some instances Baber found the amount of blood effused into the cavity of the vesicles very considerable, and hence it is justifiable to assume that the destruction of red blood corpuscles forms one of the functions of the thyroid gland.

500. III. **The supra-renal bodies** (Fig. 289).—The supra-renal body is enveloped in a fibrous cap-

sule ; in connection with this are septa and trabeculæ passing inwards, and they are arranged differently in the cortex and in the medulla of the gland, as will be seen presently.

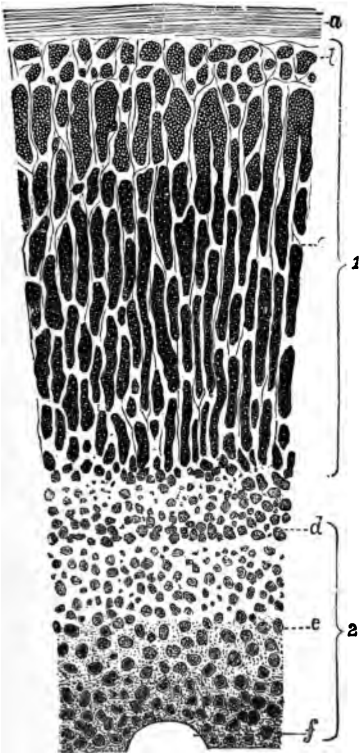


Fig. 289.—From a Vertical Section through the Supra-renal Body of Man. (*Eberth, in Stricker's Manual.*)

1, Cortical substance ; 2, medullary part ; *a*, outer capsule ; *b*, zona glomerulosa ; *c*, zona fasciculata ; *d*, zona reticularis ; *e*, medulla ; *f*, large vein.

The *cortex* of the gland consists of an outer, middle, and inner zone, all three being directly continuous with one another. The outer one is the *zona glomerulosa ;* it contains numerous spherical, or, more commonly, elongated, masses of epithelial cells. The cells are polyhedral or cylindrical, each with a spherical or oval nucleus. In some animals—as the dog, horse—the cells are thin and columnar, and arranged in a transverse manner. Occasionally a sort of lumen can be discerned in some of these cell masses.

501. Next follows the middle zone, or *zona fasciculata.* This is the most conspicuous and broadest part of the whole gland. It consists of vertical columns of polygonal epithelial cells, each with a spherical nucleus. The cell substance is transparent, and often contains an oil globule. The columns anastomose with their neighbours. Between the columns are fine septa of connective tissue carrying blood capillaries.

Between the cell columns and the connective septa are seen here and there lymph spaces, into which lead fine channels, grooved out between some of the cells of the columns.

502. Next follows the inner zone, or *zona reticularis,* composed of smaller or larger groups of polyhedral cells, with more or less rounded edges. These cell groups anastomose with one another. The individual cells are slightly larger, and their substance is less transparent than those of the zona fasciculata. In the human subject they are slightly pigmented.

503. In the *medulla* we find cylindrical streaks of very transparent cells ; the streaks are separated by vascular connective tissue. The cells are polyhedral, columnar, or branched. These cell streaks anastomose with one another and are directly continuous with the cell groups of the zona reticularis of the cortex.

504. The cortex is richly supplied with dense networks of capillary blood-vessels ; their meshes are polyhedral in the outer and inner zone, elongated in the middle zone, or zona fasciculata. In the medulla numerous plexuses of veins are met with. In the centre of the supra-renal body lie the large efferent venous trunks. In the capsule (Kölliker, Arnold), and in the connective tissue around the central veins, are plexuses of lymphatic tubes with valves. The nerves are very numerous and composed of non-

medullated fibres; in the medulla they form rich plexuses. In connection with these and with those of the outer capsule are small ganglia (Holm, Eberth).

505. IV. **The glandula coccygea and inter-carotica.**—The first of these is a minute corpuscle situated in front of the apex of the os coccygis, and was discovered by Luschka. The glandula carotica of Luschka (ganglion inter-caroticum) is of exactly the same structure as the glandula coccygea.

506. Its framework is of about the same nature as that of other glands—a fibrous capsule and inner fibrous septa and trabeculæ. The septa and trabeculæ contain in some places bundles of non-striped muscular tissue (Sertoli).

507. The spaces of the framework are occupied by the parenchyma. This consists of spherical or cylindrical masses of cells connected into networks. The individual cells are polyhedral epithelial cells, each with a spherical nucleus. According to Luschka, in the newly-born child they are ciliated. In the centre of each of the cell masses lies a capillary blood-vessel, much convoluted and wavy.

Numerous non-medullated nerve fibres forming a plexus are situated in the framework of the gland.

INDEX.

Abducens, 222
Absorption (*see* Lymphatics)
Accessory nucleus, 210
Achromatin, 11
Acini of glands, 292
—— of liver, 333
—— of pancreas, 330
Acoustic ganglion, 219
Adenoid reticulum, 62, 126
—— tissue, 126
Admaxillary glands, 289
Adventitia of arteries, 108
—— of capillaries, 111
—— of veins, 110
—— lymphatic vessels, 118
Agminated glands, 130
Air cells, 345
Alæ nasi, 63
Albuginea of ovary, 387
—— of testis, 372
Albumin membrane of Ascherson, 402
Albuminous cells, 293
Alloplasmatic organs, 6
Alveolar cavity, 275
—— ducts, 345
Alveoli of glands, 292
—— of lung, 345
—— of pancreas, 330
Alveus, 249
Amacrines, 450
Amitotic division, 12
Amœboid corpuscles, 4
—— movement, 4, 5, 24, 58
Amphophile cells, 27
Ampulla, 460
Anterior column of cord, 176
—— corpus quadrigeminum, 231
—— grey commissure, 174
—— horn of cord, 173
—— lateral tract, 179
—— nerve-roots from cord, 187
—— white commissure, 187
Aorta, 109
Aponeurosis, 47
Aqueductus Sylvii, 226
—— vestibuli, 461
Arachnoid membrane of spinal cord, 170
—— —— of brain, 235
Arachnoidal villi, 235
Arborisation, 151
Arenate fibres of medulla, 213
Areolar tissue, 48
Arrector pili, 419
Arteriæ ciliares breves, 440
—— —— recurrentes, 440
—— helicinæ, 385
—— rectæ, 369
Arteries, 108
Arterioles, Afferent, 55
—— of uterus, 397
Articular cartilage, 63, 82
—— nerve-corpuscles, 161
Arytenoid cartilage, 339
Ascending degeneration, 180
—— loop-tube, 364
—— root of glosso-pharyngeal nerve, 210
—— of the eighth nerve, 215
—— of the fifth nerve, 224
Aster stage in nucleus, 15
Attraction sphere, 9
Auditory hairs, 464
—— nerve, Origin of, 217
—— ——, Division of, 219
—— teeth, 469
Auerbach's plexus, 326
Auricle of heart, 107
Auriculo-ventricular valves, 106
Axilemma, 145
Axis cylinder, 144
—— —— process of sympathetic ganglion cell, 263
Axon, 144

Bartholin's glands, 399
Basement membranes of skin, 405

Basilar membrane of cochlea, 469
Basket cells of cerebellum, 241
Basophile cells, 27
Bellini's ducts, 365
Bile-ducts, 336
Bile capillaries, 336
Bilirubin, 23
Bioblasts, 9
Bladder, 87, 371
Blastoderm of chick, 2
Blood, 19
—— corpuscles, 19
—— ——, their origin, 28
—— cysts, 115
—— islets, 115
—— -glands of His, 126
—— -platelets of Bizzozero, 27
—— -vessels, 105
Bone, 68
—— cartilage, 68
—— cells, 71
—— corpuscles, 71
——, Development of, 74
—— trabeculæ, 74
Bowman's capsule, 360
—— elastica anterior, 429
—— glands, 481
—— membrane, 429
—— sarcous elements, 94
Brachia, 233
Brain membranes, 235
—— structure, 243
Bronchi, 343
Brownian molecular movement, 300
Bruch, Glands of, 427
Brücke's elementary organisms, 5
—— oikoid and zooid, 22
—— tunica nervea, 456
Brunner's glands, 328
Buccal glands, 298
Bulbus olfactorius, 250
Bütschli's nuclear spindle, 15

Calcification of bone, 85
—— of cartilage, 65
—— of dentine, 283
Calices of kidney, 356
Canal of Schlemm, 434
—— of Stenson, 482
—— of Stilling, 444
Canalis hyaloideus, 322, 444
—— Petiti, 443
—— reuniens, 461
Canaliculi in bone, 70
—— in cartilage, 65
Capillaries of marrow-bone, 111
Capillaries of nerve system, 111
Capillary bile-ducts, 336
—— blood-vessels, 111
—— lymphatics, 119
—— network in mucosa, 301
—— sheaths, 354
Capsule of Bowman, 360
—— of ganglion cells, 255
—— of Glisson, 333
—— of kidney, 356
—— of the spleen, 351
Cartilage, 63
——, Articular, 64
—— capsule, 64
—— cells, 63
——, Elastic, 67
——, Fibrous, 66
——, Hyaline, 63
——, Lacunæ, 63
—— of Jacobson, 482
—— of Luschka, 339
Cavernous tissue in tactile hairs, 418
—— —— in organ of Jacobson, 483
—— tissues in genital organs, 384
Cavities of tendon sheaths, 121
Cavum tympani, 459
Cell enclosures, 9
—— protoplasm, 7
Cells, 5
——, Muscular, of blood-vessels, 88
—— ——, of intestine, 88
—— ——, of respiratory organs, 88
—— ——, of stomach, 88
—— ——, of urinary organs, 88
—— in tadpole's tail, 50
—— of Claudius, 468
—— of Corti, 471
—— of Deiters, 236, 471
—— of Golgi, 242
—— of Martinotti, 246
—— of Purkinje, 239
Cellulæ mastoideæ, 459
Cellular tissue, 48
Cement of teeth, 279
—— substance, 30
—— —— of endothelium, 40
—— —— of epithelium, 30
—— —— of fibrous tissue, 47
Central canal, 185
—— grey nucleus, 185
Centroacinous cells, 331
Centrosome, 9
Cerebellum, 237
Cerebrum, 243
Ceruminous glands, 409
Cervix of uterus, 395
Chalice cells, 36
Chondrin, 46, 63

Chondroclasts, 85
Choroidal portion of ciliary muscle, 87
Choroid membrane, 440
Chromatic granules in ganglion cells, 194
Chromatin, 11
Chromosomes, 11
Chyle, 324
—— vessels, 319
Ciliary muscle, 435
—— nerves, 438
—— processes, 438
Cilia, 404
Ciliated cells, 35
Circulus arteriosus in iris, 438
Circumanal glands, 409
Circumcellular plexus, 265
Cisterna lymphatica magna, 121
Clarke's columns, 192
Cleavage of ovum, 2
—— of white blood corpuscles, 25
Clitoris, 399
Cochlea, 465
Cohnheim's areas, 93
Colloid, 485
Colostrum corpuscles, 403
Coloured blood corpuscles, 19
Colourless blood corpuscles, 23
Columnar epithelial cells, 30
Commatract, 179
Commissure, Grey, of spinal cord, 173
——, White, of spinal cord, 187
Compound lymphatic glands, 134
Concentric bodies of Hassall, 132
—— lamellæ, 72
Cone fibre, 451
Cones of retina, 452
Coni vasculosi, 379
Conjunctiva, 424
—— blood-vessels, 426
—— bulbi, 426
—— lymphatics, 427
—— nerves, 427
—— palpebræ, 424
Connective tissue, 46
Contractility of corneal corpuscles, 52
—— of pigment cells, 54
Contraction of muscle, 99
—— wave, 99
Convolution of brain, 243
—— in nucleus, 13
Cordæ tendineæ, 106
Cords of adenoid tissue, 127
Corium, 404
Cornea, 50, 429
—— nerves in, 431
Corneal cells, 50
—— corpuscles, 50, 430
Cornuain cord, 173
Cornua uteri, 396
Corpora cavernosa, 384
—— geniculata, 270
—— quadrigemina, 226
—— striata, 249
Corpus callosum, 249
—— Highmori, 372
—— luteum, 391
—— restiforme, 209
—— spongiosum, 384
Corpuscles, Malpighian, 353, 359
—— of blood, 20, 23
—— of bone, 71
—— of connective tissue, 48
—— of Grandry, 160
—— of Herbst, 158
—— of lymph, 123
—— of Meissner, 158
—— of muscle, 94
—— of nerve, 145
—— of Pacini, 155, 423
—— of Vater, 155
——, Tactile, 158, 423
Corti's arch, 470
—— cells, 471
—— ganglion, 465
—— organ, 469
—— rods, 469
Cortical layer of ovary, 387
—— lymph-sinus, 136
Costal cartilages, 63
—— pleura, 122
Cowper's glands, 383
Cremaster internus, 381
Crenate blood corpuscles, 21
Crescents of Gianuzzi, 294
Cricoid cartilage, 339
Crista acustica, 338
—— spiralis, 342, 347
Crus cerebri, 229
—— ——, Crusta of, 233
Crusta petrosa, 463
Crypts, 129
—— of Lieberkühn, 318
Cuticle of Nasmyth, 284
Cutis anserina, 420
—— vera, 404
Cystic duct, 88
Cytogenous tissue, 126
Cytoplasm, 7

Deiters' cells, 236, 471
—— phalanges, 473
Demilunes of Heidenhain, 294

Dendrite, 197
Dendron, 151
Dentinal canals, 277
—— fibres, 277
—— sheaths, 277
—— tubes, 85
Dentine, 85
Descemet's membrane, 61, 430
Diapedesis, 113
Diaphragm, 44, 122
Diaster stage in nucleus, 16
Diffuse adenoid tissue, 127
Dilatator pupillæ, 437
Direct division, 12
"Disc tactil," 161
Discus proligerus, 390
Disdiaclasts, 104
Dispireme, 16
Distal convoluted tubes, 365
Division, Remak's mode of, 12
Doyère's nerve-mount, 165
Ductless glands, 484
Ducts of pancreatic gland, 330
—— of salivary gland, 291
Ductus ejaculatorii, 381
Dura mater, 170
Dural sheath, 457

Ear, External, 458
——, Internal, 460
Ectoplasm, 8
Eosinophile cells, 27
Efferent lymphatics, 138
—— medullated nerve-fibres, 188
—— veins, 56
Elastic fenestrated membrane of Henle, 61
Elastin, 60
Electric nerve, 148
Eleidin, 33
Elementary fibrillæ, 145
—— fibrils, 47
—— organisms, 5
Enamel, 275
—— cap, 281
—— cells, 281
—— organ, 280
—— prisms, 275
End-bulbs of Krause, 159
Endocardium, 105
Endochondral formation of bone, 75
Endolymph, 461
Endolymphangial nodules, 128
Endomysium, 91
Endoneurium, 142
Endoplasm, 8
Endothelial cells, structure, 40
—— membrane, 40
Endothelium, 40
Endotheloid cell-plates, 126
Energid, 6
Engelmann's intermediate disc, 95
Ependyma, 211
Epidermis, 33, 404
Epididymis, 379
Epiglottis, 67, 339
Epineurium, 141
Epithelial cells, 30
—— ——, Division of, 38
—— ——, Regeneration of, 38
Epithelium, 30
Ergastic structures, 6
Erythroblasts, 28
Eustachian tube, 459
External arcuate fibres, 213
Eyeball, 426
—— -lashes, 424
—— -lids, 424

Fasciæ, 48, 49
Fascia dentata, 249
Fascicles, 91
Fasciculus cuneatus, 178
—— of Goll, 179
—— of Lissauer, 179
—— pyramidal, 177
Fat cells, 55
—— —— and starvation, 58
Fenestra ovalis, 460
—— rotunda, 460
Fenestrated membrane, 45, 48
—— —— of Henle, 61
Fertilisation of ovum, 2
Fibræ arcuatæ, 213
Fibres, Connective tissue, 46
——, Elastic tissue, 60
—— of muscle, 86, 91
—— of nerves, 140
—— of Purkinje, 106
Fibrillæ of connective tissue, 47
—— of muscle, 92
—— of nerve, 145
Fibro-cartilage, 66
Fibrous tissue development, 59
Fillet, 225
Fissura orbitalis, 88
Fissure of Rolando, 243
Fissures of spinal cord, 175
—— of medulla, 202
Fœtal tooth papilla, 280
Follicles, Hair, 409
——, Lieberkühn's, 318

Follicles, Lymph, 126
——, Sebaceous, 418
——, Thymus, 131
Fornix conjunctivæ, 426
—— vaginæ, 398
Fossa glenoidalis, 66
—— navicularis, 383
—— patellaris, 443
Fovea centralis, 455
—— hemielliptica, 460
—— hemispherica, 460
Fundus of peptic gland, 312
Funiculus cuneatus, 202
—— gracilis, 202

Gall-bladder, 336
Ganglia, Cerebro-spinal, 253
——, Sympathetic, 259
Ganglion cells, 191, 239, 243, 253
Gasserian ganglion, 253
Gelatinous tissue, 62
Geniculate ganglion, 270
Genital corpuscles of Krause, 160
—— end-corpuscles, 155
—— organs (male), 372
—— —— (female), 386
Germ reticulum of von Ebner, 377
Germinating cells, 44
—— endothelial cells, 43
—— epithelium, 387
—— spots, 1, 388
—— vesicle, 1, 388
Giraldé's organ, 380
Gland, Prostate, 382
Glands, agminated, 130, 321
——, Bartholini, 399
——, Bronchial, 349
——, Brunner, 328
——, Buccal, 298
——, Carotic, 488
——, Ceruminous, 409
——, Coccygeal, 488
——, Harder, 428
——, Krause, 426
——, Lachrymal, 427
——, Lieberkühn's, 318
——, Littré's, 383
——, Lymphatic, 126, 134
——, Meibomian, 424
——, Mohl, 425
——, Mucous, 287, 298
——, Peptic, 312
——, Peyer, 321
——, Pyloric, 313
——, Salivary, 286
——, Sebaceous, 418
——, Serous, 286, 299
Glands, Solitary, 130
——, Submaxillary, 286
——, Sweat, 407
——, Thymus, 131
——, Thyroid, 484
Glandulæ agminatæ, 130
—— lenticulares, 315
—— Pacchioni, 235
—— uterinæ, 396
Glans clitoridis, 399
—— penis, 384
Glassy membrane, 411
Glisson's capsule, 333
Globulin, 21
Globus major, 380
Glomeruli, 251, 360
Glycogen, 9, 23, 335
Goblet cells, 36
Golgi's cells, 242
—— method, 182
—— tendon spindles, 167
Goll's tract, 179
Graafian follicles, 388
Grandry's corpuscles, 160
Granular leucocytes, 26, 58
Granules in blood, 27
Granulosa, membrana, 388
Grey commissure, 174
Ground lamellæ, 73
—— plexus of Arnold, 162
—— substance, 46
Growing capillaries, 113

Habenula perforata, 473
Hæmatin, 23
Hæmatoidin, 23
Hæmatoplasts, 27
Hæmin crystals, 23
Hæmoglobin, 22
—— crystals, 23
Hair, 414
—— bulb, 412
——, Development of, 416
—— fibres, 413
—— follicles, 409
—— knob, 416
——, Marrow of, 413
——, New formation of, 415
—— papilla, 411
——, Root of, 413
—— —— -sheath of, 412
—— sac, 411
——, Shaft of, 414
Harder's gland, 428
Haversian canals, 72
—— lamellæ, 72
—— spaces, 74

Heart and blood-vessels, 105
Helicotrema, 469
Henle, Fenestrated membranes of, 61, 108
——, Fibres of, 62
——, Sheath of, 142
——, Stratum nerveum of, 456
——, Tubes of, 364
Hensen's cells, 472
—— median disc, 98
Hepatic cells, 335
—— duct, 336
—— lobules, 333
—— veins, 335
Herbst, Corpuscles of, 158
Hilum of lymph glands, 134
—— of salivary glands, 291
—— of spleen, 352
Hippocampus, 249
Homogeneous elastic membranes, 61
Howship's lacunæ, 85
Huxley's layer, 414
Hyaline cartilage, 63
—— leucocyte, 26
Hyaloid membrane, 443
Hyaloplasm, 7
Hypophysis, 484

Ileum, 321
Incremental lines of Salter, 278
Incus, 459
Indirect division, 13
Infundibula, 88
—— of bronchiole, 345
—— of gland, 299
Inner molecular layer, 449
—— nuclear layer, 449
Interarticular cartilages, 66
Interfascicular spaces, 49
Interglobular spaces of Czermak, 278
Interlobar ducts, 291
Interlobular bile-ducts, 336
—— connective tissue of liver, 333
—— ducts, 291
Intermediate cartilage, 66
—— disc, 96
—— plexus, 162
—— zone, 315
Intermembranous formation of bone, 83
Intermuscular fibrils, 163
Internal arcuate fibres, 213
—— capsule of brain, 233
Intervertebral discs, 66
Intestine, Large, 317
Intestine, Small, 317
Intima of arteries, 108
Intralobular bile-capillaries, 336
—— veins, 335
Intranuclear network, 11
Iris, 436
——, Blood-vessels of, 438
——, Lymph-clefts of, 438
——, Lymph-sinuses of, 438
——, Nerve-fibres of, 438

Jacobson's organ, 482

Karyokinesis, 13
Karyomitosis, 13
Karyoplasm, 11
Keratin, 33
Kidney, 356
——, Afferent arterioles of, 368
—— blood-vessels, 367
—— glomerulus, 360
—— lymphatics, 370
—— parenchyma, 357
—— vessels, 367
Kölliker's muscle buds, 102, 166
—— muscle spindle, 102
—— osteoclasts, 85
—— tract cells, 197
Kühne's nerve-ending in muscle, 164
—— rhabdia, 92
—— rhodopsin, 453
—— sarcoglia, 100

Labia pudendi majora, 420
Labium tympanicum, 467
—— vestibulare, 467
Labyrinth, Osseous, 460
Lachrymal glands, 427
Lacunæ Morgagni, 383
—— of bone, 70
—— of cartilage, 63
—— of lymphatics, 51
Lamellæ of bone, 70
—— of cornea, 429
—— of lens, 442
Lamina cribrosa, 456
—— elastica of cornea, 429
—— fusca, 434
—— reticularis, 473
—— spiralis ossea, 460
—— vitrea, 438
Langerhans' granular layer, 34

Larynx, 339
Lateral fillet, 228
—— horn, 174
—— nucleus, 211
—— tract, 175
Lemniscus, 214
Lens, 442
—— fibres, 442
—— stars, 443
Lenticular glands, 130
Leucæmia, 20
Leucocyte, 23
Leucocytosis, 20
Leucopenia, 20
Ligamentum denticulatum, 171
—— latum, 386
—— pectinatum, 434
—— pulmonis, 347
—— spirale, 467
—— suspensory of lens, 443
Limitans, externa, 451
—— interna, 447
Lines of Salter, 278
—— of Schreger, 279
Liquor folliculi, 390
—— sanguinis, 19
Littré's glands, 383
Liver, 333
——, Vessels of, 335
Lobes of pancreas, 330
—— of salivary gland, 290
—— of thymus gland, 131
—— of lung, 346
Lobules of liver, 333
—— of lung, 346
—— of salivary glands, 290
—— of thymus gland, 131
Locus cœruleus, 228
Lung, 346
—— blood-vessels, 349
—— lymphatics, 349
Lymph, 123
Lymphatic capillaries, 119
—— clefts, 119
—— glands, 126, 134
—— rootlets, 119
—— sinuses, 120
—— tissue, 62, 126
—— vessels, 117
Lymphatics, 117
—— in mucosa, 302
Lymph-canal system in cornea, 51
—— -canalicular system, 119
—— cavities, 120
—— corpuscles, 123
—— follicles, 126
—— hearts, 123
Lymphocyte, 25, 58, 123
Lymphoid cells, 25
Macula acustica, 463
—— lutea, 454
Malleus, 459
Malpighian corpuscles of kidney, 359
—— —— of spleen, 353
—— pyramids of kidney, 357
—— stratum of skin, 33
Mammary gland, 401
Manubrium mallei, 459
Marchi's method, 182
Marrow of bone, 68
Matrix of osseous substance, 70
Meatus auditorius externus, 458
Meckel's ganglion, 253
Media of arteries, 108
Median fillet, 228
—— lateral fissure, 176
Mediastinum testis, 372
Medulla oblongata, 202
—— of gland, 134
Medullary cylinders, 135
—— lymph-sinus, 136
—— ray, 359
—— sheath of nerve-fibres, 145
Medullated nerve-fibres, 143
Meibomian glands, 424
Meissner's corpuscles, 158, 423
—— plexus, 261, 266, 326
Membrana basilaris, 469
—— chorio capillaris, 441
—— Descemeti, 430
—— granulosa, 388
—— hyaloidea, 443
—— reticularis, 473
—— secundaria, 460
—— supra-choroidea, 434
—— tectoria, 474
—— tympani, 458
Membrane of Krause, 96
Mesencephalon, 229
Mesentery, 122
Mesogastrium, 45
Metakinesis, 15
Microcytes, 20
Microsomes, 9
Migratory cells, 44
Milk, 403
—— globules, 402
—— tooth, 283
Mitoma, 11
Mitral cells, 251
Modiolus, 465
Monaster, 15
Motor ganglion cells, 197
Moss fibres, 243
Movement of cilia, 35
Mucin, 37
Mucosa, 300

Mucosa, Lymph follicles of, 128
Mucous cells, 293
—— glands, 287, 298
—— membrane, 300
Muco-salivary glands, 288
Mucus, Formation of, 36
Müller's fibres, 447
—— muscle, 435
Muscle bundles, 87, 91
—— buds, 102
—— cells, 86
—— column, 92
—— corpuscles, 94
—— fibres, 86, 90
—— fibrillæ, 92
—— sheath, 87
—— spindle, 102
—— tissue, Striped, 90
—— ——. Non-striped, 86
Muscular compartments, 98
Muscularis externa, 308
—— mucosæ, 308
Musculus ciliaris Riolani, 424
Myeloplax, 7, 85
Myeloplaxes of Robin, 85

Nail, 420
—— cells, 420
—— groove 420
—— substance, 420
Nasal mucous membrane, 475
—— septum, 63
Nerve bundles, 141
—— corpuscles, 145
—— end plate, 165
—— endings, 155
—— fibres, 140
—— plexus, 143, 150
—— unit, 268
Network of fibrillæ, 153, 167
Neurilemma, 145
Neuroglia, 182
—— cells, 184
—— fibrils, 183
—— of Virchow, 182
—— tissue, 62
Neuraxon, 144
Neuron, 268
Neurokeratin, 146
Neutrophile cells, 27
Nipple, 401
Non-medullated nerve-fibres, 148
Nuclear layer in bulbus olfactorius, 251
—— membrane, 11
—— substance, 11
—— *zone*, 442
Nucleoli, 11
Nucleoplasm, 11
Nucleus, Structure of, 11
Nucleus ambiguus, 215
—— arciformis, 213
—— cuneatus, 206
—— gracilis, 206
Nuclei, Inner, of retina, 449
——, Outer, of retina, 451
Nymphæ, 399

Odontoblasts, 277, 280
Œsophagus, 307
Olfactory bulb, 250
—— cells, 478
—— glomeruli, 251
—— nerves, 148, 480
Olivary bodies, 206, 207
—— nucleus, 207
Omentum of cat, 44
—— of frog, 122
—— of guinea-pig, 45
—— of rat, 45
——, Structure of, 48
Optic chiasma, 270
—— lobes, 231
—— nerve, 456
—— nerve-fibres, 447
—— tract, 270
—— vesicle, 455
Ora serrata, 447
Organ of Corti, 469
—— of Giraldé, 380
—— of Jacobson, 482
Ossein, 70
Osseous labyrinth of ear, 460
—— lamellæ, 70
—— substance from osteoblasts, 85
Ossicula auditus, 459
Ossifying cartilage, 77
Osteoblasts forming bone, 84
Osteoclasts, 85
Osteogenetic layer, 68
Otoliths, 339
Oval nucleus, 41
Ovary, 386
——, Development of, 392
——, Lymphatics of, 282
——, Nerves of, 282
Oviduct, 394
Ovum, 1, 388
Oxyntic cells, 312
Oxyphile cells, 27

Pacinian corpuscles, 155
Palate, 298

Palmæ plicatæ, 395
Palpebræ, 424
Pancreas, 330
Papilla circumvallata, 305
—— filiformis, 302
—— foliata, 305
—— fungiformis, 302
—— nervi optici, 446
Papillary hair of Unna, 410
—— muscle, 106
Paraglobulin, 22
Paranuclei, 18
Paraplasm, 51
Parenchyma of kidney, 357
Parenchymatous cartilage, 66
Parietal cells, 312
Pars ciliaris retinæ, 439
—— membranacea, 383
—— prostatica, 383
Pedunculated hydatid of Morgagni, 380
Pedunculus cerebelli, 238
Penis, 384
—— corpora cavernosa, 384
—— nerve-endings, 160
Peptic glands, 312
Peribronchial lymphatics, 349
Pericardial cavity, 121
Pericellular space, 201
Perichondrium, 63
Perilymph, 461
Perilymphangial nodules, 128
Perimysium, 91
Perineurium, 141
Periosteal bone, 75
—— formation, 84
—— processes of Virchow, 75
Periosteum, 68
Peripheral nerve-endings, 155
Peritoneal cavity, 121
Peritoneum, 41
Perivascular lymphatics, 119
—— lymph spaces, 201
Peyer's glands, 321
—— patch, 130
Phagocytes, 25, 59
Pharynx, 298
—— tonsil, 302
Pia mater, 170, 235
Pial sheath, 456
Pigment cells, 52
Plasma, 19
—— cells, 59
Pleura pulmonalis, 347
Pleural cavities, 121
Plexus choroideus, 235
—— myentericus, 326
—— Meissner, 326
—— venosus vaginalis, 398
Plicæ villosæ, 311
Polar bodies, 18
Pons Varolii, 226
Porta hepatis, 333
Portio Mülleri, 435
—— vaginalis uteri, 395
Posterior nerve roots from spinal cord, 188
Postganglionic fibres, 264
Præganglionic fibres, 265
Prickle cells, 37
Primitive dental groove, 280
—— fibrillæ, 150
—— fibrils, 92
—— ova, 393
Prostate, 382
Protoblast, 6
Protoplasm, 1, 7
——, Structure of, 7
Protoplasmic membrane, 55
Proximal convoluted tubule, 362
Pulp tissue, 279
Purkinje's ganglion cells, 239
Pyloric glands, 313
Pyramid of Ferrein, 359
Pyramidal decussation, 204
—— tracts, 177

Rami capsulares, 337
Rámón y Cajal's discoveries, 182, 189, 449, 450
Ranvier's constrictions, 146
—— nodes, 146
Raphe, 209
Red blood corpuscles, 20
Red nucleus, 230
Reissner's membrane, 46
Remak's fibrous layer, 108
—— nerve-fibre, 148
Rete Malpighii, 33
—— mucosum, 33
—— testis, 379
Reticular cartilage, 67
—— formation, 209
Restiform body, 209
Retina, 445
——, Blind spot of, 446
——, Blood-vessels of, 456
——, Ganglion cells of, 448
——, Lymphatics of, 456
Rhabdia of Kühne, 92
Rhodopsin of Kühne, 453
Rods and cones, 452
Rollett's secondary substance, 93
Rosette stage in nucleus, 13
Rugæ, 398

Rutherford's scheme of muscle contraction, 99

Saccules, 462
Saccus endolymphaticus, 461
Saliva, 300
Salivary cells, 293
—— glands, 286
—— ——, Blood-vessels of, 297
—— ——, Ducts of, 291
—— ——, Lobes of, 290
—— ——, Lobules of, 290
—— ——, Lymphatics of, 297
—— ——, Nerves of, 297
Sarcode of Dujardin, 5
Sarcoglia, 100
Sarcolemma, 91
Sarcoplasma, 92
Sarcoplasts, 101
Sarcous elements, 94
Scala tympani, 465
—— vestibuli, 335, 465
Schultze's protoplasm, 5
Schwann's cells, 5
Sclerotic, 432
Scrotum, 87
Sebaceous follicles, 418
Semicircular canals, 462
Seminal cells, 375
—— tubules, 374
Sensory decussation, 207
—— end-organs in muscle, 166
—— —— in tendon, 168
—— ganglion cells, 197
Septum cisternæ lymphaticæ, 45
Serous glands, 286, 299
—— membranes, 122
Sesamoid cartilages, 66
Sharpey's perforating fibres, 74
Sheath of Henle, 142
—— of Schwann, 145
Simple axis cylinders, 153
—— lymphatic glands, 126
Skin, 404
——, Blood-vessels of, 421
——, Lymphatics of, 422
——, Nerves of, 423
Solitary glands, 130
—— lymph follicles, 321
Spaces of Fontana, 434
Spermatoblasts, 377
Spermatozoa, 378
Sphincter pupillæ, 437
Sphincters, 88
Spinal accessory, 203
—— cord, 170
—— —— grey matter, 191
Spinal cord white matter, 186
Spiral fibre, 267
—— tubule, 363
Spireme, convolution, 13
Spleen, 351
——, Capsule of, 351
——, Lymphatics of, 355
——, Nerve-fibres of, 242, 355
——, Parenchyma of, 352
——, Pulp of, 353
——, Red blood corpuscles of, 28
——, Trabeculæ of, 352
Spongioblast, 450
Spongioplasm, 7
Spongy bone substance, 74
Squamous epithelial cells, 32
Sternal cartilage, 63
Stigmata, 112
Stomach, 310
Stomata, 112, 121, 349
Stratified columnar epithelium, 35
—— pavement epithelium, 32
Stratum adiposum, 406
—— cinereum, 231
—— corneum, 33
—— glomerulosum, 251
—— granulosum, 34, 250
—— lacunosum, 249
—— lemnisci, 231
—— lucidum, 33
—— Malpighii, 33
—— opticum, 232
—— radiatum, 249
—— zonale, 231
Striæ acusticæ 220
Stria vascularis, 468
Stroma, 22
Subarachnoidal spaces, 121, 170
—— tissue, 171
Subcutaneous lymphatics, 422
—— tissue, 406
Subdural spaces, 121, 170
Subendocardial tissue, 105
Subepithelial endothelium of Debove, 51
Subhyaloid cells, 443
Submaxillary ganglion, 253
Submucosa, 300
Submucous lymphatics, 121
Subpericardial nerve branches, 107
—— tissue, 106
Substantia ferruginea, 225
—— gelatinosa, 186
—— nigra, 229
Subvaginal space, 457
Sudoriferous canal, 407
Sulcus hippocampi, 249
—— spiralis, 467
Superior pedunculus cerebelli, 228

Suprachoroidal tissue, 434
Suprarenal bodies, 485
Supravaginal space, 457
Suspensory ligament, 443
Sweat glands, 407
Sympathetic system, 258
Synapsis, 199
Synovial cavities, 121

Tactile corpuscles, 158, 423
—— hairs, 417
Tapetum nigrum, 439, 454
Tarsal plate, 424
Taste buds, 305
—— cells, 305
—— goblets, 305
Teeth, 275
—— cement, 279
—— development, 280
—— pulp, 279
Tegmental cells, 305
Tegmentum, 231
Teichmann's crystals, 23
Tendon cells, 49
—— spindles, 167
Tendons, 49
Tendril fibres, 243
Tenonian capsule, 457
—— space, 457
Tensor choroideæ, 435
Terminal bronchi, 347
Testis, 372
Thoracic duct, 117
Thymus follicles, 131
—— gland, 131
Thyroid cartilage, 63
—— gland, 484
Tongue, 302
——, Serous glands of, 304
Tonsils, 129
Touch-cells of Merkel, 161
—— -corpuscles of Merkel, 160
Trabeculæ carneæ, 106
—— of lymphatics, 134
—— of spleen, 352
Trachea, 343
Tracts of white matter in cord, 177
Tract cells, 197
Transitional epithelium, 35
Transverse disc, 95
Trapezoid nucleus, 218
Trapezium, 218, 226
Tuba Eustachii, 459
Tubercle of Rolando, 202
Tuberculum acusticum, 219
Tubes of epididymis, 379
Tunica adnata, 372
Tunica albuginea, 372
—— dartos, 88
—— fibrosa, 390
—— propria, 469
—— vaginalis, 372
Tyson's glands, 384

Ureter, 371
Urethra, Female, 399
——, Male, 383
Urinary tubules, 361
Uterus, 395
Utricle, 462
Uvea, 437

Vagina, 397
Varicose nerve-fibres, 147
Vas deferens, 381
—— rectum, 378
Vasa efferentia, 379
Vascularisation of cartilage, 75
Vater's corpuscles, 155
Veins, 110
——, Intima of, 110
——, Media of, 110
—— of the bones, 110
Veins of the brain, cord, gravid uterus, membranes, and retina, 110
——, Valves of, 110
Vena axillaris, azygos, cava, cruralis, hepatica, intima, iliaca, mesenterica, poplitea, renalis, spermatica, and umbilicalis, 110
—— jugularis, and subclavia, 110
Venæ rectæ, 369
—— stellatæ, 370
—— vorticosæ, 441
Venous radicles, 353
—— sinuses, 353
Ventricle, Fourth, 211
Ventricles, 106
Vesiculæ seminales, 381
Vestibulum of labyrinth, 460
Virchow's crystals, 23
Visceral pericardium, 105
—— peritoneum, 333
Visual purple, 453
Vitreous body, 443

Wandering cells, 58
Weigert's method, 182
White blood corpuscles, 23

White commissure, 187
—— fibrous tissue, 46
—— substance of brain, 237
—— —— of cord, 186
—— —— of Schwann, 145
Wolffian body, 374, 387
Wreath arrangement of nucleus, 14

Yellow elastic cartilage, 76
Yellow elastic tissue, 60

Zona fasciculata, 487
—— glomerulosa, 486
—— pellucida, 1, 388
—— reticularis, 487
—— vasculosa, 386
Zonula ciliaris, 443
—— Zinnii, 443

Printed by CASSELL & COMPANY, LIMITED. La Belle Sauvage, London, E.C.

Published by Cassell & Company.

COMPLETE IN TWO VOLUMES, price 48s.

A System of Surgery.

Edited by FREDERICK TREVES, F.R.C.S.

Surgeon to, and Lecturer on Surgery at, the London Hospital; Examiner in Surgery at the University of Cambridge. Each Vol. contains Two Coloured Plates and Several Hundred Original Woodcut Illustrations by CHARLES BERJEAU, F.L.S., and others.

A List of Contributors, with Contents, will be forwarded on application.

Diseases of Women. A Clinical Guide to their Diagnosis and Treatment. By GEORGE ERNEST HERMAN, M.B. LOND., F.R.C.P., Obstetric Physician to, and Lecturer on Midwifery at, the London Hospital; Examiner in Midwifery to the Universities of London and Oxford; and Examiner in Midwifery to the Royal College of Surgeons, etc. etc. With 252 Illustrations. 25s.

Ringworm. In the light of Recent Research. Pathology — Treatment — Prophylaxis. By MALCOLM MORRIS, F.R.C.S. Edin. Surgeon to the Skin Department, St. Mary's Hospital, London. With 22 Micro-photographs and a Coloured Plate. 7s. 6d.

Medical Diseases of Infancy and Childhood. By DAWSON WILLIAMS, M.D. Lond., Fellow of the Royal College of Physicians of London, and of University College, London; Physician to the East London Hospital for Children, Shadwell. With 52 Illustrations. 10s. 6d.

Tropical Diseases. A Manual of the Diseases of Warm Climates. By PATRICK MANSON, M.D., LL.D. Aberd., Fellow of the Royal College of Physicians, London; Lecturer on Tropical Diseases at St. George's Hospital and Charing Cross Hospital Medical Schools; Medical Adviser to the Colonial Office and Crown Agents for the Colonies. With 88 Illustrations and Two Coloured Plates. 10s. 6d.

Diseases of the Skin. An Outline of the Principles and Practice of Dermatology. By MALCOLM MORRIS, F.R.C.S. Ed., Surgeon to the Skin Department, St. Mary's Hospital, London. *New and Revised Edition.* With Two New Coloured Plates and a number of New Engravings. 10s. 6d.

Gout, Its Pathology and Treatment. By ARTHUR P. LUFF, M.D. LOND., B.Sc., F.R.C.P. Crown 8vo, 256 pages, 5s.

CASSELL & COMPANY, LIMITED, *London; Paris, New York & Melbourne.*

M.M.—9

MANUALS FOR

Students of Medicine

Published by CASSELL & COMPANY.

Consisting of compact and authoritative Manuals embodying the most recent discoveries, and containing all the information required for the Medical Examinations of the various Colleges, Halls, and Universities in the United Kingdom and the Colonies.

A Manual of Chemistry: Inorganic and Organic, with an Introduction to the Study of Chemistry. For the Use of Students of Medicine. By ARTHUR P. LUFF, M.D., B.Sc. Lond., M.R.C.P.; Fellow of the Institute of Chemistry, &c. &c. With numerous Engravings. *Third Thousand.* ***7s. 6d.***

The author is evidently a master of his subject, and the work is one which may be confidently recommended to the student of chemistry."—*Hospital Gazette.*

First Lines in Midwifery. A Guide to Attendance on Natural Labour. By G. E. HERMAN, M.B. Lond., F.R.C.P., F.R.C.S., Obstetric Physician and Lecturer on Midwifery, London Hospital. With 81 Illustrations. *Sixth Thousand.* ***5s.***

"This manual is of considerable merit, and is likely to prove highly popular in London schools and lying-in hospitals."—*British Medical Journal.*

Hygiene and Public Health. By B. ARTHUR WHITELEGGE, M.D., B.Sc. Lond., D.P.H. Camb., Medical Officer of Health to the West Riding County Council. With 23 Illustrations. *Fifth Edition.* ***7s. 6d.***

"It is in every way perfectly reliable, and in accordance with the most recently acquired knowledge."—*British Medical Journal.*

Elements of Histology. By E. KLEIN, M.D., F.R.S., Lecturer on General Anatomy and Physiology in the Medical School of St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London; and J. S. EDKINS, M.A., M.B., Joint Lecturer and Demonstrator of Physiology in the Medical School of St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London. *Revised and Enlarged Edition,* with 296 Illustrations. ***7s. 6d.***

"A work which must of necessity command a universal success. It is just exactly what has long been a desideratum among students."—*Medical Press and Circular.*

Elements of Surgical Pathology. By A. J. PEPPER, M.S., M.B., F.R.C.S., Surgeon and Teacher of Practical Surgery at St. Mary's Hospital. Illustrated with 99 Engravings. *Fourth Edition,* rewritten and enlarged. ***8s. 6d.***

A student engaged in surgical work will find Mr. Pepper's 'Surgical Pathology' to *be an invaluable* guide, leading him on to that correct comprehension of the duties of a *practical* and scientific surgeon which is the groundwork of the highest type of British *Surgery."—British Medical Journal.*

Manuals for Students of Medicine (*continued*).

Surgical Applied Anatomy. By FREDERICK TREVES, F.R.C.S., Surgeon to, and Lecturer on Anatomy at, the London Hospital. With 61 Engravings. *16th Thousand.* ***7s. 6d.***

"The author of 'Surgical Applied Anatomy' is an able writer, and is also an authority on purely anatomical questions. There are excellent paragraphs on the anatomy of certain well-known surgical affections, such as hip-joint diseases, constituting a feature quite original in a work of this class, yet in no way beyond its proper scope."—*London Medical Recorder.*

Clinical Chemistry. By CHARLES H. RALFE, M.D., F.R.C.P., Physician at the London Hospital. With numerous Engravings. ***5s.***

"The volume deals with a subject of great and increasing importance, which does not generally receive so much attention from students as it deserves. The text is concise and lucid, the chemical processes are stated in chemical formulæ, and wherever they could aid the reader suitable illustrations have been introduced."—*The Lancet.*

Human Physiology. By HENRY POWER, M.B., F.R.C.S., late Examiner in Physiology, Royal College of Surgeons of England. *Fourth and Enlarged Edition.* ***7s. 6d.***

"The author has brought to the elucidation of his subject the knowledge gained by many years of teaching and examining, and has communicated his thoughts in easy, clear, and forcible language, so that the work is entirely brought within the compass of every student. It supplies a want that has long been felt."—*The Lancet.*

Materia Medica and Therapeutics. By J. MITCHELL BRUCE, M.D., F.R.C.P., Lecturer on Materia Medica at Charing Cross Medical School, and Physician to the Hospital. A full account of the many important drugs contained in the Addendum to the British Pharmacopœia, recently issued, will be found in the New Edition. *31st Thousand.* ***7s. 6d.***

"We welcome its appearance with much pleasure, and feel sure that it will be received on all sides with that favour which it richly deserves."—*British Medical Journal.*

Physiological Physics. By J. MCGREGOR-ROBERTSON, M.A., M.B., Muirhead Demonstrator of Physiology, University of Glasgow. With 219 Engravings. ***7s. 6d.***

"Mr. McGregor-Robertson has done the student the greatest service in collecting together in a handy volume descriptions of the experiments usually performed, and of the apparatus concerned in performing them."—*The Lancet.*

Elements of Surgical Diagnosis: A Manual for the Wards. By A. PEARCE GOULD, M.S., M.B., F.R.C.S., Senior Assistant Surgeon to Middlesex Hospital. ***7s. 6d.***

"We do not hesitate to say that Mr. Gould's work is unique in its excellence."—*The Lancet.*

Comparative Anatomy and Physiology. By F. JEFFREY BELL, M.A., Professor of Comparative Anatomy at King's College. With 229 Engravings. ***7s. 6d.***

"The book has evidently been prepared with very great care and accuracy, and is well up to date. The woodcuts are abundant and good."—*Athenæum.*

Cassell & Company, Limited, Ludgate Hill, London.

Clinical Manuals

For Practitioners and Students of Medicine. Complete Monographs on Special Subjects.

Published by CASSELL & COMPANY.

"A valuable series, which is likely to form, when completed, perhaps the most important Encyclopædia of Medicine and Surgery in the English language."—*British Medical Journal.*

On Gall-Stones and Their Treatment. By A. W. Mayo Robson, F.R.C.S., Professor of Surgery in the Yorkshire College of the Victoria University, &c. &c. Illustrated. **9s.**

"There can be no question that this book well repays perusal, and will be the work to which all practitioners and students will turn for information on the surgery of the gall-bladder."—*Provincial Medical Journal.*

The Pulse. By Sir W. H. Broadbent, Bart., M.D., F.R.C.P., Senior Physician to, and Lecturer on Clinical Medicine at St. Mary's Hospital. Illustrated with 52 Sphygmographic Tracings. **9s.**

"There is so much that is interesting and well done, that it is hard to emphasize any."—*Hospital.*

Ophthalmic Surgery. By R. Brudenell Carter, F.R.C.S., Ophthalmic Surgeon to, and Lecturer on Ophthalmic Surgery at St. George's Hospital; and W. Adams Frost, F.R.C.S., Assistant Ophthalmic Surgeon to, and Joint-Lecturer on Ophthalmic Surgery at St. George's Hospital. With Chromo Frontispiece and 91 Engravings. *Second Edition.* **9s.**

"Its clearness and conciseness will cause it to be welcomed by students and young practitioners as an agreeable and useful guide to the modern practice of eye diseases."—*British Medical Journal.*

Diseases of the Rectum and Anus. By Charles B. Ball, M.Ch. (Dublin), F.R.C.S.I., Surgeon and Clinical Teacher at Sir P. Dun's Hospital. With Chromo Plates and 61 Engravings. *Second Edition.* **9s.**

"As a full, clear, and trustworthy description of the diseases which it deals with, it is certainly second to none in the language. The author is evidently well read in the literature of the subject, and has nowhere failed to describe what is best up to date. The model of what such a work should be."—*Bristol Medico-Chirurgical Journal.*

Diseases of the Breast. By Thomas Bryant, F.R.C.S., Surgeon to, and Lecturer on Surgery at Guy's Hospital. With 8 Chromo Plates and numerous Engravings. **9s.**

"Mr. Bryant is so well known, both as an author and a surgeon, that we are absolved from the necessity of speaking fully or critically of his work."—*The Lancet.*

List of Clinical Manuals (*continued*).

Syphilis. By **Jonathan Hutchinson**, F.R.S., F.R.C.S., Consulting Surgeon to the London Hospital and to the Royal London Ophthalmic Hospital. With 8 Chromo Plates. *Seventh Thousand.* **9s.**

"The student, no matter what may be his age, will find in this compact treatise a valuable presentation of a vastly important subject. We know of no better or more comprehensive treatise on syphilis."—*Medical News, Philadelphia.*

Surgical Diseases of the Kidney. By **Henry Morris**, M.B., F.R.C.S., Surgeon to, and Lecturer on Surgery at, Middlesex Hospital. With 6 Chromo Plates and numerous Engravings. **9s.**

"It would be difficult to find these subjects treated more carefully and thoroughly."—*British Medical Journal.*

Insanity and Allied Neuroses. By **George H. Savage**, M.D., Medical Superintendent and Resident Physician to Bethlem Royal Hospital, and Lecturer on Mental Diseases at Guy's Hospital. With numerous Illustrations. *Seventh Thousand.* **9s.**

"Dr. Savage's grouping of insanity is practical and convenient, and the observations in each group are acute, extensive, and well arranged."—*The Lancet.*

Diseases of the Tongue. By **H. T. Butlin**, F.R.C.S., Assistant Surgeon to St. Bartholomew's Hospital. With 8 Chromo Plates. **9s.**

"Mr. Butlin may be congratulated upon having written an excellent manual, scientific in tone, practical in aim, and elegant in literary form. The coloured plates rival, if not excel, some of the most careful specimens of art to be found in the pages of European medical publications."—*British Medical Journal.*

Surgical Diseases of Children. By **Edmund Owen**, M.B., F.R.C.S. With 5 Chromo Plates and 120 Engravings. *Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged,* **21s.**

Food in Health and Disease. By **I. Burney Yeo**, M.D., F.R.C.P., Professor of the Principles and Practice of Medicine in King's College. *New and Enlarged Edition,* **10s. 6d.**

Clinical Methods. A Guide to the Practical Study of Medicine. By **Robert Hutchison**, M.D., M.R.C.P., and **Harry Rainy** F.R.C.P. With 137 Illustrations and 8 Coloured Plates. **9s.**

Clinical Papers on Surgical Subjects. By **Herbert W. Page**, F.R.C.S. **5s.**

The Year-Book of Treatment: A Critical Review for Practitioners of Medicine and Surgery. **7s. 6d.**

Cassell & Company, Limited, Ludgate Hill, London.

Published by Cassell & Company.

Medical Handbook of Life Assurance. For the use of Medical and other Officers of Companies. By JAMES EDWARD POLLOCK, M.D., F.R.C.P., and JAMES CHISHOLM (Fellow of the Institute of Actuaries, London, and of the Faculty of Actuaries, Scotland). *New and Revised Edition.* **7s. 6d.**

A Guide to the Instruments and Appliances Required in Various Operations. By A. W. MAYO ROBSON, F.R.C.S. Eng., Professor of Surgery in the Yorkshire College of the Victoria University, &c. &c. **1s. 6d.**

The Uric Acid Diathesis. By Dr. F. LEVISON. Translated from the German and Edited by LINDLEY SCOTT, M.A., M.D. Being a Compendium of Recent Investigations on the Pathology and Treatment of Gout, Sand, and Gravel. **3s. 6d.**

Vaccination Vindicated: Being an Answer to the Leading Anti-Vaccinators. By JOHN C. MCVAIL, M.D., D.P.H. Camb.; President of the Sanitary Association of Scotland, &c. **5s.**

Authoritative Work on Health by Eminent Physicians and Surgeons.

The Book of Health: A Systematic Treatise for the Professional and General Reader upon the Science and the Preservation of Health. **21s.** Roxburgh, **25s.**

"Is what it aims to be—authoritative, and must become *a standard work of reference* not only with those who are responsible for the health of schools, workshops, and other establishments where there is a large concourse of individuals, but to *every member of the community.*"—*Lancet.*

Advice to Women on the Care of their Health, Before, During, and After Confinement. By FLORENCE STACPOOLE, Diplomée of the London Obstetrical Society, &c. &c. Paper covers, **1s.**; or cloth, **1s. 6d.**

Our Sick, and How to Take Care of Them; or, Plain Teaching on Sick Nursing at Home. By FLORENCE STACPOOLE. Paper covers, **1s.**; or cloth, **1s. 6d.**

A Handbook of Nursing for the Home and for the Hospital. By CATHERINE J. WOOD, Lady Superintendent of the Hospital for Sick Children, Great Ormond Street. Tenth and Cheap Edition. **1s. 6d.**; cloth, **2s.**

A Handbook for the Nursing of Sick Children. By CATHERINE J. WOOD. **2s. 6d.**

Cookery for Common Ailments. By A FELLOW OF THE ROYAL COLLEGE OF PHYSICIANS, and PHYLLIS BROWNE. Limp cloth. **1s.**

School Hygiene, An Address in. By CLEMENT DUKES, M.D. **1s.**

Cassell & Company, Limited, Ludgate Hill, London.

Injuries and Diseases of the Genital and Urinary Organs. By HENRY MORRIS, M.A., M.B. Lond., F.R.C.S. Eng., Surgeon to, and Lecturer on Surgery at, the Middlesex Hospital, &c. &c. With 97 Illustrations. **21s.**

Diseases of the Joints and Spine. By HOWARD MARSH, F.R.C.S., Surgeon to, and Lecturer on Surgery at, St. Bartholomew's Hospital, &c. *New and Revised Edition.* With 79 Illustrations. **12s. 6d.**

Diseases of the Ear. By A. MARMADUKE SHEILD, M.B. Cantab., F.R.C.S. Eng. With Four Coloured Plates and Thirty-four Woodcut Illustrations. **10s. 6d.**

Difficult Labour. A Guide to its Management. For Students and Practitioners. By G. ERNEST HERMAN, M.B. Lond., F.R.C.P. With 162 Illustrations. *Fifth Thousand.* **12s. 6d.**

Tumours, Innocent and Malignant: Their Clinical Characters and Appropriate Treatment. By J. BLAND SUTTON, F.R.C.S. With 250 Engravings and 9 Plates. **21s.**

A Manual of Medical Treatment or Clinical Therapeutics. By I. BURNEY YEO, M.D., F.R.C.P. With Illustrations. *Fifth Edition.* Two Vols. **21s.**

Operative Surgery, A Manual of. By FREDERICK TREVES, F.R.C.S. With 422 Illustrations by C. BERJEAU. Two Volumes. **£2 2s.**

Surgical Diseases of the Ovaries and Fallopian Tubes, including Tubal Pregnancy. By J. BLAND SUTTON, F.R.C.S. With 146 Illustrations. *New and Enlarged Edition.* **21s.**

The Student's Handbook of Surgical Operations. By FREDERICK TREVES, F.R.C.S. With 94 Illustrations. *Sixth Thousand.* **1s. 6d.**

Cassell & Company, Limited, Ludgate Hill, London.

Clinical Methods. A Guide to the Practical Study of Medicine. By ROBERT HUTCHISON, M.D., M.R.C.P., Demonstrator in Physiology, London Hospital Medical College; and HARRY RAINY, M.A., F.R.C.P.Ed., F.R.S.E., University Tutor in Clinical Medicine, Royal Infirmary, Edinburgh. With 137 Illustrations and 8 Coloured Plates. **9s.**

Surgical Diseases of Children. By EDMUND OWEN, M.B., F.R.C.S., Senior Surgeon to the Hospital for Sick Children, Great Ormond Street; Surgeon to, and Lecturer on Surgery at, St. Mary's Hospital. With 5 Chromo Plates and 120 Engravings. *Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged*, **21s.**

Intestinal Obstruction. By FREDERICK TREVES, F.R.C.S., Surgeon to, and Lecturer on Anatomy at, the London Hospital. *New and Enlarged Edition.* 21s. [*In Preparation.*

ENLARGED SERIES, in MONTHLY PARTS,
price ***2s.***, of the

Annals of Surgery.

A Monthly Review of Surgical Science and Practice.

"Annals of Surgery" is **the only high-class Journal published in the English language,** devoted exclusively to presenting current work in the science and art of surgery.

A subscription of One Guinea, paid in advance, will secure the Journal being sent post free for one year.

NEW SERIES.

The Practitioner.

A JOURNAL OF PRACTICAL MEDICINE.

Edited by MALCOLM MORRIS, F.R.C.S., Edin.

Monthly, ***1s.***; Yearly Subscription, ***10s. 6d.*** Half-Yearly Volumes, ***7s. 6d.*** each.

The chief features of THE PRACTITIONER in its new form are:—

1. Decrease in Price.
2. Increase in Number of Pages.
3. Enlargement of Scope.
4. Greater Variety of Contents.

A Copy of CASSELL & COMPANY'S COMPLETE CATALOGUE *will be sent post free on application.*

CASSELL & COMPANY, LIMITED, *Ludgate Hill, London;*
Paris, New York & Melbourne.

LANE MEDICAL LIBRARY

This book should be returned on or before
the date last stamped below.

E555 Klein, E.E. 74940
K64 Elements of histology
1898

NAME	DATE DUE